

**ARTEP 5-026-11-MTP**

**Mission Training Plan  
for the  
Assault and Obstacle  
Platoon, Headquarters  
Company, Engineer Combat  
Battalion (Light)**

**MAY 2005**

DISTRIBUTION RESTRICTION: Approved for public release; distribution is unlimited.

**HEADQUARTERS,  
DEPARTMENT OF THE ARMY**

**This publication is available at  
Army Knowledge Online ([www.us.army.mil](http://www.us.army.mil)) and  
General Dennis J. Reimer Training and Doctrine  
Digital Library at (<http://www.train.army.mil>)**

# Mission Training Plan for the Assault and Obstacle Platoon, Headquarters Company, Engineer Combat Battalion (Light)

## TABLE OF CONTENTS

	<u>PAGE</u>
Table of Contents .....	i
Preface .....	ii
Chapter 1. Unit Training .....	1-1
Chapter 2. Training Matrixes .....	2-1
Chapter 3. Mission Outlines and Training Plans .....	3-1
Chapter 4. Training Exercise .....	4-1
Chapter 5. Training and Evaluation Outlines .....	5-1
Chapter 6. External Evaluation .....	6-1
Appendix A - Sample Operation Order .....	A-1
Appendix B - Threat Analysis .....	B-1
Appendix C - Metric Conversion Chart .....	C-1
Glossary .....	Glossary-1
References .....	References-1

---

DISTRIBUTION RESTRICTION: Approved for public release; distribution is unlimited.

\*This publication supersedes ARTEP 5-053-11-MTP, 20 June 2001 and ARTEP 5-113-11-MTP, 11 October 2002.

## PREFACE

This mission training plan (MTP) provides Active Army and Reserve Component (RC) training managers with a descriptive, mission-oriented training program to train the unit to perform its critical wartime operations. This MTP aligns with and is part of the United States (U.S.) Army Training and Tactical Doctrine Program. While missions and deployment assignments impact on the priorities, the operations described here are expected to be executed with a high level of proficiency. Each unit is expected to train, as a minimum, to the standards of the training and evaluation outlines (T&EOs) in this MTP. Standards for training may be raised, but they may not be lowered.

This MTP applies to the assault and obstacle platoon, headquarters company and engineer combat battalion (light) table(s) of organization and equipment (TOE) 05026A, 05026L, 05156A, 05156L, 05216A, 05216L, 05426L, 05446L1, and 05446L2.

This publication applies to the Active Army, the Army National Guard (ARNG), and the U.S. Army Reserve (USAR).

The proponent for this publication is U.S. Army Training and Doctrine Command (TRADOC). Send comments and recommendations on Department of the Army (DA) Form 2028 (Recommended Changes to Publications and Blank Forms) directly to Commandant, U.S. Army Engineer School, ATTN: ATSE-DT, Collective Training Division, 320 MANSCEN Loop, Fort Leonard Wood, MO 65473-8929.

Unless this publication states otherwise, masculine nouns and pronouns do not refer exclusively to men.

## CHAPTER 1

### Unit Training

1-1. General. This MTP provides the commander and leaders with guidance on how to train the key missions of the unit. The specific details of the unit training program will depend on the—

- Unit mission-essential task list (METL).
- Chain-of-command training directives and guidance.
- Unit training priorities.
- Availability of training resources and areas.

1-2. Supporting Material. This MTP describes a critical wartime mission-oriented training program that is part of the next higher-echelon training program. This relationship is illustrated in Figure 1-1. The unit training program consists of the following publications:

a. Army Training and Evaluation Program (ARTEP) 5-500-68-MTP for the engineer staff (revised, to be published within 6 months). This MTP indicates the relationship of the battalion training program to the next higher-level training program.

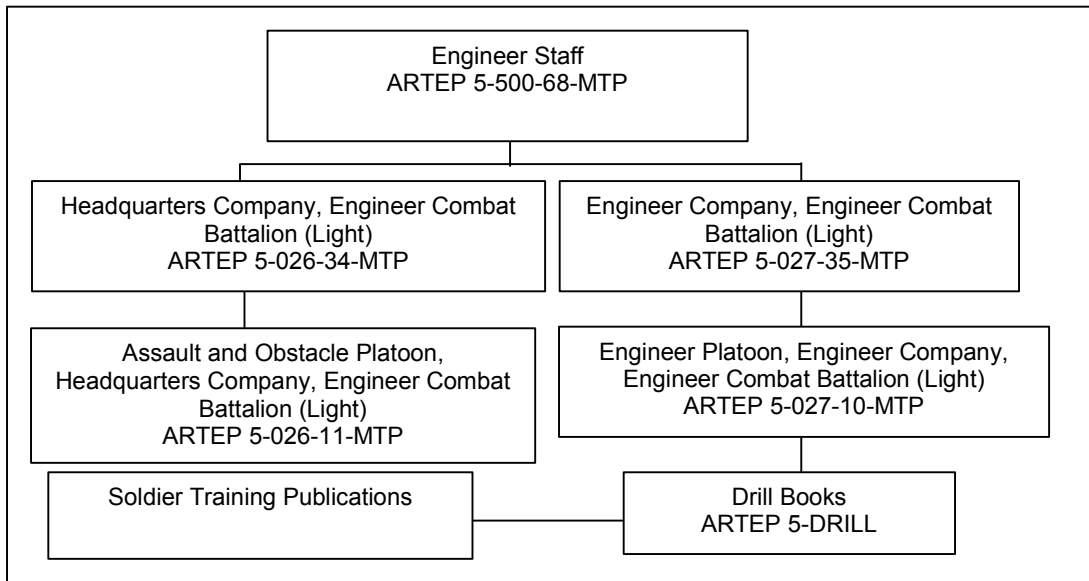
b. ARTEP 5-026-34-MTP for the headquarters company, engineer combat battalion (light). This MTP indicates the relationship of the company training program to the battalion training program.

c. ARTEP 5-027-35-MTP for the engineer company, engineer combat battalion (light) (revised, to be published within 6 months). This MTP indicates the relationship of the company training program to the battalion training program.

d. ARTEP 5-026-11-MTP for the assault and obstacle platoon, headquarters company, engineer combat battalion (light) (revised, to be published within 6 months) and ARTEP 5-027-10-MTP for the engineer platoon, engineer company, engineer combat battalion (light) (revised, to be published within 6 months). These MTPs indicate the relationship of the platoon training programs to the company training program.

e. ARTEP 5-DRILL for the engineer drills. The unit must sustain drills. They are US Army standard and may not be modified.

f. Soldier training publications (STPs) for the appropriate military occupational specialties (MOSSs) and skill levels.



**Figure 1-1. MTP Echelon Relationship**

1-3. Contents. This MTP is organized into six chapters and three appendices.

a. Chapter 1, Unit Training, provides the explanation and organization of an MTP. This chapter explains how to use an MTP in establishing an effective training program.

b. Chapter 2, Training Matrixes, shows the relationship between the mission and the collective tasks.

c. Chapter 3, Mission Outlines and Training Plans, presents a graphic portrayal of the relationship between missions and their subordinate tasks.

d. Chapter 4, Training Exercise, consists of a sample training exercise. This exercise provides training information and a preconstructed sample scenario. It can serve as a part of an internal or external evaluation. This exercise may be modified to suit the training needs of the unit.

e. Chapter 5, Training and Evaluation Outlines, contains the T&EOs for the unit. T&EOs are the foundation of the MTP and the collective training of the unit. Each task is a T&EO that identifies task steps, performance measures, individual and leader tasks, and opposing forces (OPFOR) countertasks. The unit must master designated collective tasks to perform its critical wartime operations. T&EOs can be trained separately, in a situational training exercise (STX), in a field training exercise (FTX), or in a live-fire exercise. For collective live-fire standards, the trainer needs to refer to the applicable gunnery manual for the appropriate course of fire. Those standards and courses of fire need to be integrated into the training exercise. Each T&EO is part of a mission and, in various combinations, are used to develop training exercises.

(1) Format. T&EOs are prepared for every collective task that supports critical wartime operation accomplishment. Each T&EO contains the following items:

(a) Elements. This identifies the unit or unit element(s) that perform the task.

(b) Task. This describes the action to be performed by the unit and provides the task number.

(c) **Reference.** This identifies the publication used to develop the task and is in parenthesis following the task number. If more than one reference is used, the reference that contains the most information (primary reference) about the task is listed first and underlined. If there is only one reference, it is not underlined.

(d) **Iteration.** This is used to identify how many times the task is performed and evaluated during training. The M identifies when the task is performed in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

(e) **Commander/leader assessment.** This is used by the unit leadership to assess the proficiency of the unit in performing the task to standard. Assessments are subjective in nature. Therefore, use all available evaluation data and subunit-leader input to assess the overall capability of the organization to accomplish the task. Use the following ratings:

- **T - Trained.** The unit is trained and has demonstrated its proficiency in accomplishing the task to wartime standards.
- **P - Needs practice.** The unit needs to practice the task. Performance has demonstrated that the unit does not achieve the task to standard without some difficulty or has failed to perform some task steps to standard.
- **U - Untrained.** The unit cannot demonstrate an ability to achieve wartime proficiency.

(f) **Conditions.** This describes the situation or environment in which the unit is to perform the collective task.

(g) **Task standards.** This states the performance criteria that a unit must achieve to successfully execute the task. This overall standard should be the focus of training and should be understood by every soldier. The trainer or evaluator determines the unit training status by using performance observation measurements (where applicable) and his judgment. The unit must be evaluated in the context of the mission, enemy, terrain, troops, time available, and civilian considerations (METT-TC). The conditions should be as similar as possible for all evaluated elements. This will establish a common baseline for unit performance.

(h) **Task steps and performance measures.** This is a list of actions that the unit is to perform to complete the task. These actions are stated in terms of observable performance for evaluating training proficiency. The task steps are arranged sequentially along with any supporting individual tasks and their references. An asterisk (\*) to the left of the step number indicates the leader tasks within each T&EO. If the unit fails to correctly perform one of the task steps to standard, it has failed to achieve the overall task standard. The task step may contain performance measures that must be accomplished to correctly perform the task step.

(i) **GO/NO-GO column.** This column is provided for annotating the performance of the task steps. Evaluate each performance measure for a task step and place an X in the appropriate column. A major portion of the performance measures must be marked a GO for the task step to be successfully performed.

(j) **Task performance/evaluation summary block.** This block provides the trainer with a means of recording the total number of task steps and performance measures evaluated and those evaluated as GO. It also provides the evaluator with a means to rate the unit demonstrated performance as a GO or NO-GO. It also provides the leader with a historical record for five training iterations.

(k) Supporting individual tasks. This is a listing of all supporting individual tasks required to correctly perform the task. The task number and task title for each individual task are listed.

(l) Supporting collective tasks. This is a listing of all supporting collective tasks required to correctly perform the task. The task number and task title for each collective task are listed.

(m) Opposing forces tasks. These standards specify overall OPFOR performance for each collective task. The standards ensure that the OPFOR soldiers accomplish meaningful training and force the training unit to perform its task to standard or lose to the OPFOR. The OPFOR standards specify what must be accomplished—not how it must be accomplished. The OPFOR must always attain its task standards, using tactics consistent with the type of enemy being portrayed.

(2) Usage. T&EOs can be used to train or evaluate a single task. Several T&EOs can be used to train or evaluate a group of tasks such as an STX or FTX.

f. Chapter 6, External Evaluation, provides instructions for the planning, preparation, and execution of an external evaluation.

g. Appendix A, Sample Operation Order, contains a sample operation order (OPORD) to be used with the sample exercise in Chapter 4.

h. Appendix B, Threat Analysis, describes local, regional, and global threats and special situations that impact operations.

i. Appendix C, Metric Conversion Chart, contains a metric measurement conversion chart.

#### 1-4. Missions and Tasks.

a. This MTP concerns specific missions found in the TOE and an implied mission that the unit must perform in order to accomplish the specified missions. The critical missions are the focus for the unit. The commander may supplement these missions with his own. The following is a listing of the missions for the unit:

- Provide engineer support to countermobility operations.
- Fight as infantry.
- Conduct general engineer operations.
- Provide engineer support to mobility operations.
- Perform survivability construction.
- Sustain unit operations.
- Defend the unit.
- Conduct unit survivability operations.

b. Each of these tasks may be trained individually or jointly. Training is based on the criteria described in the T&EOs. Several T&EOs can be trained as an STX. Various combinations of STXs can be used to develop an FTX for the unit to practice its entire mission responsibility. Several STXs can be developed into an external evaluation that is designed by the next higher echelon to evaluate the ability of the unit to perform multiple missions under stress in a realistic environment.



c. Squad tasks are trained in much the same way as described above. However, the squad leader must also train the drills provided in the drill book.

d. Leader tasks that support unit missions are trained through STP training, battle simulations, and execution of unit missions.

e. Individual tasks that support unit tasks are mastered by training to the standards outlined in the appropriate STPs. The T&EOs in Chapter 5 show the individual tasks that support collective-task training.

1-5. Training Principles. This MTP is based on the training principles explained in Field Manual (FM) 7-0.

1-6. Training Strategy. The training program, developed and executed by the engineer battalion to train to standards in its critical wartime missions, will be a component of the Army Combined Arms Training Strategy (CATS). The purpose of CATS is to provide direction and guidance on how the total Army will train and identify the resources required to support that training. CATS provides the tools that enable the Army to focus and manage training in an integrated manner. Central to CATS is a series of proponent-generated unit and institutional strategies that describe the training events and resources required to facilitate training to standard. The information is located on the Army Knowledge Online (AKO) Web site at <<http://www.us.army.mil>>.

a. The unit training strategies central to CATS provide the commander with a descriptive menu for training. These strategies reflect that while there is an optimal way to train to standard, it is unlikely that all units in the Army will have the exact mix of resources required to execute an optimal training strategy.

b. The unit training strategy is a descriptive training strategy that provides a means for training the battalion to standard by listing required training events, critical training gates, training event frequencies, and training resources. The commander selects those tasks required to train his METL from this MTP.

c. The unit training strategy will be comprised of three separate training strategies. When integrated with the training tasks found in this MTP, they form a comprehensive and focused training strategy that allows the unit to train to standard. The elements of the unit training strategy are discussed below.

(1) Maneuver- and collective-training strategy. The maneuver- and collective-training strategy is intended to provide a set of recommended training frequencies for key training events in a unit and depicts those resources that are required to support the training events.

(2) Gunnery strategy. The gunnery strategy is based on weapons systems found in the unit and is intended to provide an annual training plan and to depict resources required to support weapons training. Data for the gunnery strategy comes from the Standards in Training Commission (STRAC) manual or the appropriate FMs.

(3) Soldier strategy. The soldier strategy provides an annual plan for training and maintaining skills at the individual level and lists the resources required to train a soldier.

d. A vital element in the unit training strategy is the identification of critical training gates. Critical training gates are defined as training events that must be conducted to standard before moving on to a more difficult or resource-intensive training event or task. Training gates follow the crawl, walk, run training methodology. For instance, if the unit training strategy calls for conducting an FTX, and an STX has been identified as a critical training gate for the FTX, the training tasks in the STX must be trained to standard before conducting the FTX. Standards for all tasks must be clearly defined so that the trainer

can assess the preparedness of the soldiers, or units, to move on to more complex training events. The provision for critical training gates is made recognizing that the unit METL and the commander's assessment of his unit training status will determine the selection and timing of the collective-training exercises in a specific unit training strategy.

e. When developing the unit training plan, the commander identifies from the MTP the training tasks required to train his METL.

1-7. Training Conduct. This MTP is designed to facilitate planning, preparing, and conducting unit training as explained in FMs 7-0 and 7-1. The commander performs the following:

a. Assigns the missions and supporting tasks for training based on his METL and guidance from the next higher headquarters (HQ). Trainers must plan and execute training to support this guidance.

b. Reviews the mission outline in Chapter 3 to determine whether the STXs and the FTXs provided will support, or can be modified to support, the command guidance. If they do not support the guidance or if they need to be modified, refer to the matrix in Chapter 2. This matrix provides a list of all critical collective tasks, drills, and individual tasks that must be mastered to perform the mission.

c. Prioritizes the tasks that need training. There is never time to train everything. Orient the training toward the greatest challenges and the most difficult sustainment skills.

d. Integrates training tasks into the training schedule, using the following procedures:

- (1) List the tasks in the priority and frequency that they need to be trained.
- (2) Determine the amount of time required and how to use multiechelon training for the best results.
- (3) Determine where the training can take place.
- (4) Determine who will be responsible for what. The leader of the element being trained must always be involved.
- (5) Organize needs into blocks of time and training vehicles.

e. Approves the list of tasks to be trained and schedules them on the unit training schedule.

f. Determines the equipment and supplies needed to conduct the training.

g. Keeps subordinate leaders informed and oversees their training. The standards must be rigidly enforced.

1-8. Force Protection.

a. Safety. Safety is a component of force protection. Commanders, leaders, and soldiers use risk assessment and risk management to tie force protection into the military around the mission. Risk management assigns responsibility, institutionalizes the commander review of operational safety, and leads to decision making at a level of command that is appropriate to the risk. The objective of safety is to help units protect combat power through accident prevention, which enables units to win quickly and decisively, with minimum losses. Safety is an integral part of all combat operations. Safety begins with readiness that determines the ability of the unit to perform its METL to standard. Readiness standards addressed during METL assessment are as follows:

- (1) Soldiers with the self-discipline to consistently perform tasks to standard.

- (2) Leaders who are ready, willing, and able to enforce standards.
- (3) Training that provides skills needed to perform standards.
- (4) Standards and procedures for task preferences that are clear and practical.
- (5) Support for task preference, including equipment, personnel, maintenance, facilities, and services.

b. **Risk Management.** Risk management addresses the root causes (readiness shortcomings) of accidents. It helps commanders and leaders identify and predict the next accident. Risk management is a way to put more realism into training without paying the price in deaths, injuries, or damaged equipment. Risk management is a five-step, cyclic process that is easily integrated into the decision-making process outlined in FM 5-0.

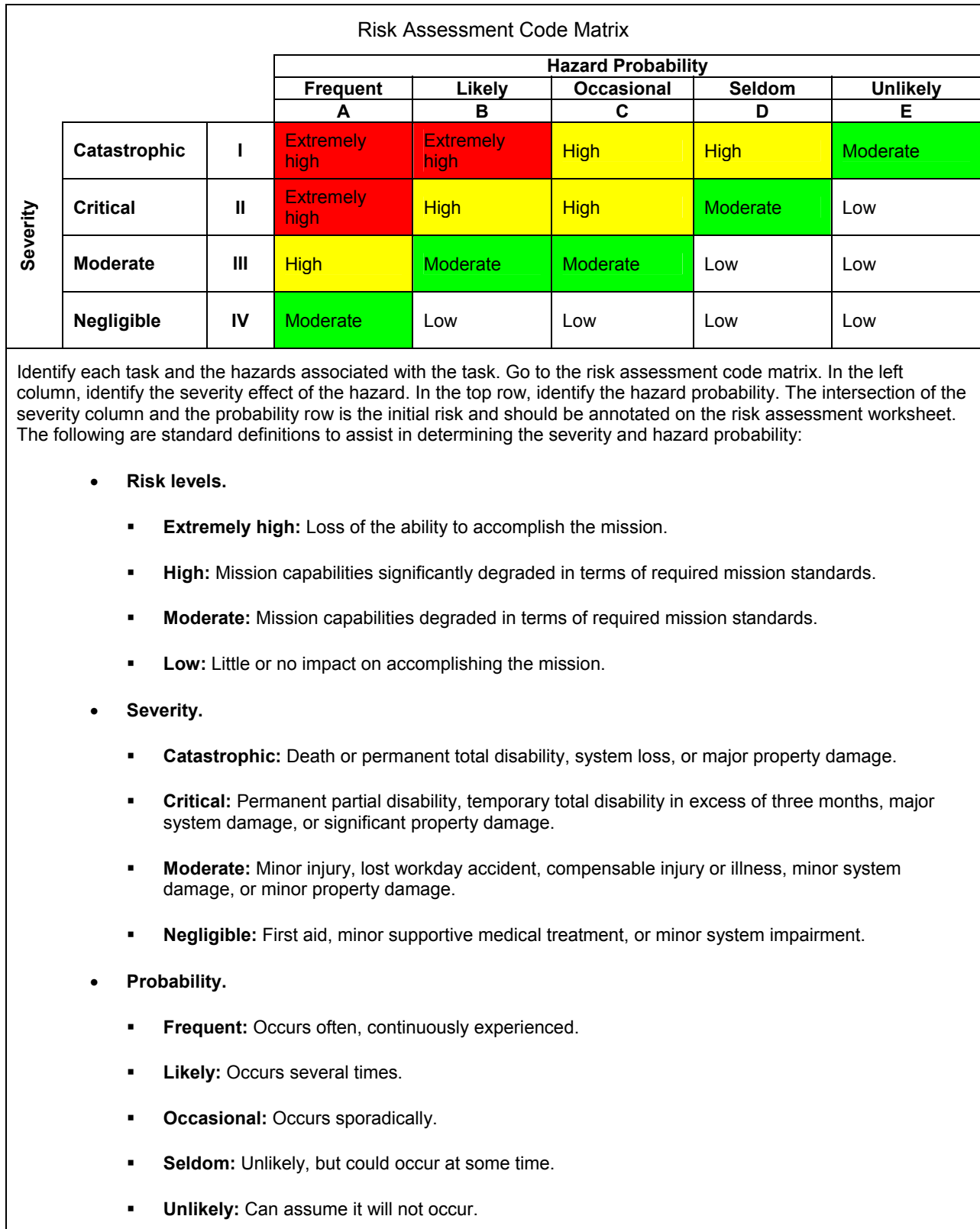
**Step 1.** Identify Any Hazards. Identify the most probable hazards for the mission.

**Step 2.** Assess the Hazards. Analyze each hazard to determine the probability of it causing an accident and the probable effect of the accident. Identify control options to eliminate or reduce the hazard. The Army standard risk assessment matrix in Figure 1-2 is a tool to use for assessing hazards.

**Step 3.** Make Risk Decisions. Weigh the risk against the benefits of performing the operation. Accept no unnecessary risks, and make any remaining risk decisions at the proper level of command.

**Step 4.** Implement Controls. Integrate specific controls into operation plans (OPLANs), OPODs, standing operating procedures (SOPs), and rehearsals. Communicate controls to the individual soldier.

**Step 5.** Supervise. Determine the effectiveness of controls in reducing the probability and effect of identified hazards, to include a follow-up and an after-action review (AAR). Develop lessons learned.



**Figure 1-2. Risk Assessment Matrix**

c. Chain of Command. Safety demands total chain-of-command involvement in planning, preparing, executing, and evaluating training. Responsibilities of the chain of command include—

- (1) Commanders.
  - (a) Seek optimum, not adequate, performance.
  - (b) Specify the risk you will accept to accomplish the mission.
  - (c) Select risk reductions provided by the staff.
  - (d) Accept or reject residual risk, based on the benefit to be derived.
  - (e) Train and motivate leaders at all levels to effectively use risk management concepts.
- (2) Staff.
  - (a) Assist the commander in assessing risks and developing risk reduction options for training.
  - (b) Integrate risk controls in plans, orders, METL standards, and performance measures.
  - (c) Eliminate unnecessary safety restrictions that diminish training effectiveness.
  - (d) Assess safety performance during training.
  - (e) Evaluate safety performance during AARs.
- (3) Subordinate leaders.
  - (a) Apply effective risk management concepts and methods consistently to the operations they lead.
  - (b) Report risk issues beyond their control or authority to their superiors.
- (4) Individual soldiers.
  - (a) Report unsafe conditions and acts, and correct these situations when possible.
  - (b) Establish a buddy system to keep a safety watch on one another.
  - (c) Take responsibility for personal safety.
  - (d) Work as a team member.
  - (e) Modify your own risk behavior.

d. Fratricide. Fratricide is the employment of weapons, with the intent to kill the enemy or destroy its equipment, that results in unforeseen and unintentional death, injury, or damage to friendly personnel or equipment. Fratricide prevention is a component of force protection and is closely related to safety. Fratricide is, by definition, an accident. Risk assessment and risk management are mechanisms used to control the incidence of fratricide.

(1) Causes. The primary causes of fratricide are—

(a) Direct-fire control plan failures. These failures result when units fail to develop defensive and, particularly, offensive-fire control plans.

(b) Land navigation failures. These failures result when units stray out of the sector, report incorrect locations, or become disoriented.

(c) Combat identification failures. These failures include gunners or pilots being unable to distinguish thermal and optical signatures near the maximum range of their sighting systems and units in proximity mistaking each other for the enemy under limited-visibility conditions.

(d) Inadequate control measures. These occur when units fail to disseminate the minimum maneuver and fire support control measures that are necessary to tie control measures to recognizable terrain or events.

(e) Reporting communication failures. Units at all levels face problems in generating timely, accurate, and complete reports as locations and tactical situations change.

(f) Weapons errors. Lapses in individual discipline lead to charge errors, accidental discharges, mistakes with explosives or hand grenades, and similar incidents.

(g) Battlefield hazards. Unexploded ordnance (UXO), unmarked or unrecorded minefields, scatterable mines (SCATMINES), and booby traps litter the battlefield. Failure to mark, record, remove, or anticipate these hazards increases the risk of friendly casualties.

(2) Results. Fratricide results in unacceptable losses and increases the risk of mission failure. Fratricide undermines the ability of the unit to survive and function. Units experiencing fratricide observe these consequences:

(a) Loss of confidence in unit leadership.

(b) Increase of self-doubt among leaders.

(c) Hesitation to use supporting combat systems.

(d) Oversupervision of units.

(e) Hesitation to conduct night operations.

(f) Loss of aggressiveness during fire and maneuver.

(g) Loss of initiative.

(h) Disrupted operations.

(i) General degradation of cohesiveness, morale, and combat power.

1-9. Environmental Risk and Protection. Protection of natural resources has become an ever-increasing concern in Army training programs. It is the responsibility of all unit leaders to minimize and, if possible, eliminate damage to the environment when conducting training exercises. Environmental protection is a critical part of the overall risk management process. It is based on the same philosophy and principles that guide the unit in controlling operational hazards, including the use of the five steps of risk management. The following discussion focuses on specific environmental considerations for each step of the risk management process. See FM 3-100.4 for more detailed information.

**Step 1. Identify Hazards.** Identify potential sources of environmental degradation during the analysis of METT-TC factors. This requires the identification of environmental hazards, which are conditions with the potential for polluting air, soil, or water and/or destroying significant natural, cultural, or historical resources.

**Step 2. Assess Hazards to Determine Risks.** Analyze the potential severity of environmental degradation for each training activity. The risk impact value of operations indicates the severity of environmental degradation. Quantify the risk to the environment resulting from the operation as extremely high, high, medium, or low.

**Step 3. Develop Controls and Make Risk Decisions.** Based on the results of the risk assessment, make decisions and develop measures to eliminate or reduce significant environmental risks. Risk decisions are made at a level of command that corresponds to the degree of risk. It is critical to brief the chain of command and all other responsible individuals and agencies (to include the installation environmental office, if applicable) on proposed plans and pertinent high-risk environmental factors.

**Step 4. Implement Controls.** Implement the necessary environmental-protection measures by integrating them into plans, orders, SOPs, training performance standards, and rehearsals.

**Step 5. Supervise and Evaluate.** Enforce environmental-protection standards during supervision and evaluation of all training activities.

1-10. Evaluation. The T&EOs in Chapter 5 describe the standards that must be met for each task.

a. Evaluations can be either internal or external. Internal evaluations are conducted at all levels, and they must be inherent in all training. External evaluations are usually more formal and are normally conducted by a HQ that is two levels above the evaluated unit. See Chapter 6 for more information on external evaluations.

b. A critical weakness in training is the failure to evaluate each task every time it is executed. The ARTEP concept is based on simultaneous training and evaluation. Too often, leaders do not practice continuous evaluation. Soldiers or small units are trained to perform a task to standard, and then later, when they execute that task as part of a training exercise, they execute it poorly or incorrectly and are not corrected. For this program to work, trainers and leaders must continually evaluate training as it is being executed.

c. Leaders should emphasize direct, on-the-spot evaluations. Correcting poor performance during individual or small-group training is easy to do. In higher-level exercises, it is usually not feasible to do this with outside evaluators, but evaluations should not be totally eliminated. Plan AARs at frequent, logical intervals during the exercises (usually after the completion of a major subordinate task). This is a proven technique that allows the correction of performance shortcomings while they are still fresh in everyone's mind. Also, it gets everyone involved and prevents the reinforcement of bad habits.

d. FM 7-1 provides detailed instructions for conducting an AAR. It also provides detailed guidance on coaching and critiquing during training.

1-11. Feedback. Recommendations for improvement of this MTP are requested. Feedback will help to ensure that this MTP answers the training needs of units in the field. Please make your comments on DA Form 2028 or DA Form 7507 (ARTEP Mission Training Plan User Feedback) and send it to the address provided in the preface.

**This page intentionally left blank.**



## CHAPTER 2

### Training Matrixes

2-1. General. The training matrix assists the commander in planning the training of his unit personnel. Figure 2-1 provides mission identification for the unit.

<b>Mission Identification Table</b>
<b><u>Mission Title</u></b>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Provide Engineer Support To Countermobility Operations <b>(COUNTERMOBILITY)</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Fight As Infantry <b>(FIGHT AS INFANTRY)</b></li> </ul> </li> <li>• Conduct General Engineer Operations <b>(GENERAL ENGINEERING)</b></li> <li>• Provide Engineer Support to Mobility Operations <b>(MOBILITY)</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Perform Survivability Construction <b>(SURVIVABILITY CONSTRUCTION)</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Sustain Unit Operations <b>(SUSTAIN OPERATIONS)</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Defend the Unit <b>(UNIT DEFENSE)</b></li> </ul> </li> </ul> </li> </ul> </li> <li>• Conduct Unit Survivability Operations <b>(UNIT SURVIVABILITY)</b></li> </ul>

**Figure 2-1. Mission Identification Table**

2-2. Mission-to-Collective Task Matrix. This matrix (Figure 2-2) identifies the mission and its supporting collective tasks. The tasks are listed under the appropriate battlefield operating system (BOS), indicated by an X in the matrix. The BOSs that are used in this matrix are defined in United States Army Training and Doctrine Command (TRADOC) Pamphlet (Pam) 11-9. A specific mission is trained by using the collective tasks in the vertical column for the mission. Based on the proficiency of the unit, training is focused on operational weaknesses. The training matrix assists the commander in planning the training of his unit's personnel.

Collective Tasks		Countermobility	Fight as Infantry	General Engineering	Mobility
<b>Develop Intelligence</b>					
05-2-0018	Conduct Report Procedures	<b>X</b>			<b>X</b>
05-2-1013	Conduct a Water Crossing Site Reconnaissance				<b>X</b>
05-3-0407	Perform an Engineer Reconnaissance	<b>X</b>		<b>X</b>	<b>X</b>
05-3-1004	Perform an Obstacle and Restriction Reconnaissance	<b>X</b>			<b>X</b>
05-3-1016	Perform a Route Classification				<b>X</b>
05-3-1019	Perform a Target Reconnaissance	<b>X</b>			<b>X</b>

Collective Tasks		Countermobility	Fight as Infantry	General Engineering	Mobility
05-3-1020	Perform a Technical Reconnaissance	X		X	X
05-3-1022	Support a Tactical Reconnaissance	X		X	X
19-3-3105.05-T01A	Process Captured Documents and Equipment				
71-2-0332.05-T01A	Maintain Operations Security (OPSEC)				
<b>Deploy/Conduct Maneuver</b>					
05-1-0011	Reorganize as Infantry		X		
05-1-0015	Fight as Infantry		X		
05-2-3007	Conduct Quarters Party Operations				
05-3-0202	Disable a Bridge With Explosives	X			
05-3-1000	Create a Lane Through an Obstacle Using Explosive Techniques				X
05-3-1001	Create a Lane Through an Obstacle Using Mechanical Techniques				X
05-3-1003	Create a Lane Through an Obstacle Using Manual Techniques				X
05-3-1050	Prepare an Expedient Ford			X	X
05-3-2001	Emplace Situational Obstacles	X			X
05-3-2011	Emplace a Volcano Minefield	X			
05-3-2012	Emplace a Modular-Pack Mine System (MOPMS) Disrupt or Fix Minefield	X			
05-3-2015	Construct a Tank Ditch	X			
05-3-2017	Create a Crater Obstacle Using Explosives	X			
05-3-2018	Prepare Preconstructed Obstacles	X		X	X
05-3-2019	Construct Wire Obstacles	X			X
05-3-2020	Construct a Log Obstacle	X			
05-3-3011	Establish a Hasty Position		X		
05-3-5101	Construct Combat Roads and Trails			X	X

Collective Tasks		Countermobility	Fight as Infantry	General Engineering	Mobility
07-1-1923.05-T01A	React to Indirect Fire		X		
07-2-1125.05-T01A	Conduct Passage of Lines (Passing/Stationary)		X		
07-2-1136.05-T02A	Occupy an Assembly Area (AA)		X		
07-2-1301.05-T01A	Conduct a Convoy				
07-3-0219.05-T01A	Establish Unit Defense		X		
07-3-1000.05-T01A	Assault a Building (Infantry Platoon/Squad)		X		
07-3-1123.05-T01A	Conduct a Tactical Road March		X		
07-3-1135.05-T01A	Conduct Actions at Danger Areas		X		
07-3-C211.05-T01A	Move Tactically		X		
<b>Protect the Force</b>					
03-2-3008.05-T01A	Conduct a Radiological, Chemical, or Biological Reconnaissance or Survey				
03-3-C201.05-T01A	Prepare for Operations Under Nuclear, Biological, and Chemical (NBC) Conditions				
03-3-C202.05-T01A	Prepare for a Chemical Attack				
03-3-C203.05-T01A	Respond to a Chemical Attack				
03-3-C205.05-T01A	Prepare for a Friendly Nuclear Strike				
03-3-C206.05-T01A	Prepare for a Nuclear Attack				
03-3-C208.05-T01A	Cross a Radiologically Contaminated Area				X
03-3-C209.05-T01A	React to Smoke Operations				
03-3-C222.05-T01A	Respond to the Residual Effects of a Nuclear Attack				
03-3-C223.05-T01A	Respond to the Initial Effects of a Nuclear Attack				
03-3-C224.05-T01A	Conduct Operational Decontamination				
03-3-C226.05-T01A	Cross a Chemically Contaminated Area				X
05-2-3002	Camouflage Vehicles and Equipment			X	

Collective Tasks		Countermobility	Fight as Infantry	General Engineering	Mobility
05-2-3003	Defend a Convoy Against a Ground Attack				
05-2-3005	Conduct an Extraction From a Minefield				
05-2-3008	Emplace a Hasty Protective Row Minefield	X			
05-3-3000	Construct Bunkers and Shelters				
05-3-3002	Construct Protective Earthen Walls and Berms				X
05-3-3006	Establish Job Site Security				
05-3-3007	Remove a Hasty Protective Row Minefield				X
05-3-3013	Construct Vehicle Fighting Positions	X			
05-3-3014	Construct Vehicle Protective Positions	X		X	
05-3-7005	Disable Critical Equipment and Material				
05-5-3009	Prepare Crew-Served Weapons Fighting Positions		X		
07-3-1112.05-T01A	React to an Ambush		X		
09-2-0337.05-T01A	React to Unexploded Ordnance (UXO)				
44-1-C220.05-T01A	Use Passive Air Defense Measures				
44-1-C221.05-T01A	Take Active Combined Arms Air Defense Measures Against Hostile Aerial Platforms				
71-2-0326.05-T01A	Perform Risk Management Procedures				
<b>Perform CSS and Sustainment</b>					
05-2-9001	Provide Opposing Forces (OPFOR) Support to Training Exercises		X		
05-3-1010	Construct an Expedient Landing Zone (LZ) for Helicopters			X	X
05-3-5100	Place Airfield Matting on Prepared Surfaces			X	X
05-3-7004	Receive a Logistics Package (LOGPAC)				

<b>Collective Tasks</b>	<b>Countermobility</b>	<b>Fight as Infantry</b>	<b>General Engineering</b>	<b>Mobility</b>
08-2-C316.05-T01A Transport Casualties (for Units Without Medical Treatment Personnel)				
08-2-R303.05-T01A Conduct Battlefield Stress Reduction and Stress Prevention Procedures				
08-2-R315.05-T01A Perform Field Sanitation Functions				
10-2-0318.05-T01A Perform Unit Graves Registration (GRREG) Operations				
10-2-0319.05-T01A Receive Airdrop Resupply				
11-5-0121.05-T01A Provide a Field Cable or Wire System				
19-3-3106.05-T01A Handle Enemy Prisoners of War (EPWs)		<b>X</b>		
<b>Exercise Command and Control</b>				
05-1-0017 Integrate Augmentation Support				
05-2-2013 Plan and Control Tactical Obstacles	<b>X</b>			<b>X</b>
05-2-7008 Prepare an Operation Order (OPORD) (Company/Platoon)				
11-3-0214.05-T01A Establish and Operate a Single-Channel Voice Radio Net				
11-5-1102.05-T01A Install, Operate, and Maintain a Single-Channel, Ground and Airborne Radio System (SINGARS) Frequency Hopping (FH) Net				
12-3-0001.05-T01A Maintain Platoon Strength				

Collective Tasks		Survivability Construction	Sustain Operations	Unit Defense	Unit Survivability
<b>Develop Intelligence</b>					
05-2-0018	Conduct Report Procedures		X		
05-2-1013	Conduct a Water Crossing Site Reconnaissance		X		
05-3-0407	Perform an Engineer Reconnaissance		X		X
05-3-1004	Perform an Obstacle and Restriction Reconnaissance				
05-3-1016	Perform a Route Classification		X		
05-3-1019	Perform a Target Reconnaissance				
05-3-1020	Perform a Technical Reconnaissance	X	X		
05-3-1022	Support a Tactical Reconnaissance	X			
19-3-3105.05-T01A	Process Captured Documents and Equipment		X	X	X
71-2-0332.05-T01A	Maintain Operations Security (OPSEC)		X	X	
<b>Deploy/Conduct Maneuver</b>					
05-1-0011	Reorganize as Infantry				
05-1-0015	Fight as Infantry				
05-2-3007	Conduct Quartering Party Operations		X	X	X
05-3-0202	Disable a Bridge With Explosives				
05-3-1000	Create a Lane Through an Obstacle Using Explosive Techniques				
05-3-1001	Create a Lane Through an Obstacle Using Mechanical Techniques				
05-3-1003	Create a Lane Through an Obstacle Using Manual Techniques				
05-3-1050	Prepare an Expedient Ford	X			
05-3-2001	Emplace Situational Obstacles				
05-3-2011	Emplace a Volcano Minefield			X	
05-3-2012	Emplace a Modular-Pack Mine System (MOPMS) Disrupt or Fix Minefield				

Collective Tasks		Survivability Construction	Sustain Operations	Unit Defense	Unit Survivability
05-3-2015	Construct a Tank Ditch				
05-3-2017	Create a Crater Obstacle Using Explosives				
05-3-2018	Prepare Preconstructed Obstacles				
05-3-2019	Construct Wire Obstacles	X	X	X	X
05-3-2020	Construct a Log Obstacle			X	
05-3-3011	Establish a Hasty Position			X	X
05-3-5101	Construct Combat Roads and Trails				
07-1-1923.05-T01A	React to Indirect Fire		X	X	X
07-2-1125.05-T01A	Conduct Passage of Lines (Passing/Stationary)		X	X	
07-2-1136.05-T02A	Occupy an Assembly Area (AA)		X	X	X
07-2-1301.05-T01A	Conduct a Convoy		X		
07-3-0219.05-T01A	Establish Unit Defense			X	
07-3-1000.05-T01A	Assault a Building (Infantry Platoon/Squad)				
07-3-1123.05-T01A	Conduct a Tactical Road March		X	X	
07-3-1135.05-T01A	Conduct Actions at Danger Areas		X	X	X
07-3-C211.05-T01A	Move Tactically		X	X	X
<b>Protect the Force</b>					
03-2-3008.05-T01A	Conduct a Radiological, Chemical, or Biological Reconnaissance or Survey		X	X	X
03-3-C201.05-T01A	Prepare for Operations Under Nuclear, Biological, and Chemical (NBC) Conditions		X	X	X
03-3-C202.05-T01A	Prepare for a Chemical Attack		X	X	X
03-3-C203.05-T01A	Respond to a Chemical Attack				X
03-3-C205.05-T01A	Prepare for a Friendly Nuclear Strike		X	X	X
03-3-C206.05-T01A	Prepare for a Nuclear Attack		X	X	X

<b>Collective Tasks</b>	<b>Survivability Construction</b>	<b>Sustain Operations</b>	<b>Unit Defense</b>	<b>Unit Survivability</b>
03-3-C208.05-T01A Cross a Radiologically Contaminated Area		X		X
03-3-C209.05-T01A React to Smoke Operations				X
03-3-C222.05-T01A Respond to the Residual Effects of a Nuclear Attack				X
03-3-C223.05-T01A Respond to the Initial Effects of a Nuclear Attack				X
03-3-C224.05-T01A Conduct Operational Decontamination		X		X
03-3-C226.05-T01A Cross a Chemically Contaminated Area		X		X
05-2-3002 Camouflage Vehicles and Equipment		X	X	X
05-2-3003 Defend a Convoy Against a Ground Attack		X	X	
05-2-3005 Conduct an Extraction From a Minefield				X
05-2-3008 Emplace a Hasty Protective Row Minefield			X	
05-3-3000 Construct Bunkers and Shelters	X		X	X
05-3-3002 Construct Protective Earthen Walls and Berms	X		X	X
05-3-3006 Establish Job Site Security		X	X	
05-3-3007 Remove a Hasty Protective Row Minefield		X	X	X
05-3-3013 Construct Vehicle Fighting Positions	X		X	X
05-3-3014 Construct Vehicle Protective Positions	X		X	X
05-3-7005 Disable Critical Equipment and Material		X	X	X
05-5-3009 Prepare Crew-Served Weapons Fighting Positions	X		X	X
07-3-1112.05-T01A React to an Ambush				X
09-2-0337.05-T01A React to Unexploded Ordnance (UXO)		X		X
44-1-C220.05-T01A Use Passive Air Defense Measures		X	X	X
44-1-C221.05-T01A Take Active Combined Arms Air Defense Measures Against Hostile Aerial Platforms		X	X	X



Collective Tasks		Survivability Construction	Sustain Operations	Unit Defense	Unit Survivability
71-2-0326.05-T01A	Perform Risk Management Procedures		X		X
<b>Perform CSS and Sustainment</b>					
05-2-9001	Provide Opposing Forces (OPFOR) Support to Training Exercises		X		
05-3-1010	Construct an Expedient Landing Zone (LZ) for Helicopters		X		
05-3-5100	Place Airfield Matting on Prepared Surfaces	X			
05-3-7004	Receive a Logistics Package (LOGPAC)		X		
08-2-C316.05-T01A	Transport Casualties (for Units Without Medical Treatment Personnel)		X		X
08-2-R303.05-T01A	Conduct Battlefield Stress Reduction and Stress Prevention Procedures		X		X
08-2-R315.05-T01A	Perform Field Sanitation Functions		X		X
10-2-0318.05-T01A	Perform Unit Graves Registration (GRREG) Operations		X		
10-2-0319.05-T01A	Receive Airdrop Resupply		X		X
11-5-0121.05-T01A	Provide a Field Cable or Wire System		X		
19-3-3106.05-T01A	Handle Enemy Prisoners of War (EPWs)		X	X	
<b>Exercise Command and Control</b>					
05-1-0017	Integrate Augmentation Support		X		
05-2-2013	Plan and Control Tactical Obstacles				
05-2-7008	Prepare an Operation Order (OPORD) (Company/Platoon)		X		
11-3-0214.05-T01A	Establish and Operate a Single-Channel Voice Radio Net		X		

Collective Tasks	Survivability Construction	Sustain Operations	Unit Defense	Unit Survivability
11-5-1102.05-T01A Install, Operate, and Maintain a Single-Channel, Ground and Airborne Radio System (SINCGARS) Frequency Hopping (FH) Net		<b>X</b>		
12-3-0001.05-T01A Maintain Platoon Strength		<b>X</b>		

**Figure 2-2. Collective Task to Missions**

## CHAPTER 3

### Mission Outlines and Training Plans

3-1. General. The mission outline illustrates the relationship between the missions and their support tasks. Each outline provides the trainer with a diagram of the unit mission, FTXs and/or STXs, and the collective tasks that comprise them.

3-2. Mission Outlines. Since unit training is mission-oriented, the mission outline shows how task training contributes to the unit ability to perform its missions. The following sample mission outlines, Tables 3-1 through 3-5, provide the commander with a visual sample of his unit missions in a format that facilitates the planning and management of training.

**Table 3-1. Sample Countermobility Mission Outline**

<b>ENGINEER PLATOON COUNTERMOBILITY</b>	
Task Number	Task Title
03-3-C201.05-T01A	Prepare for Operations Under Nuclear, Biological, and Chemical (NBC) Conditions
05-3-2019	Construct Wire Obstacles
05-3-2015	Construct a Tank Ditch
05-3-2020	Construct a Log Obstacle
05-3-3006	Establish Jobsite Security
05-3-0013	Conduct Troop-Leading Procedures
07-1-1923.05-T01A	React to Indirect Fire
10-2-0319.05-T01A	Receive Airdrop Resupply
71-2-0326.05-T01A	Perform Risk Management Procedures

**Table 3-2. Sample General Engineering Mission Outline**

<b>ENGINEER COMPANY GENERAL ENGINEERING</b>	
Task Number	Task Title
05-3-5144	Conduct Dump Truck Hauling Operations
05-3-0313	Construct Revetments
05-3-5201	Construct or Repair a Bridge Abutment
05-3-5106	Install Culverts
05-3-5210	Construct or Repair a Sewerage System
05-3-5222	Construct or Repair a Steel Frame Pre-engineered Structure
05-3-5221	Construct or Repair Headwalls
05-3-5220	Construct or Repair a Wood Frame Structure
05-3-5223	Construct or Repair a Concrete Structure
05-3-5212	Construct or Repair Electrical Utilities
05-3-5211	Construct or Repair a Water Distribution System
05-3-5215	Install Coupled Pipeline
05-3-3006	Establish Jobsite Security
08-2-0314.05-T01A	Treat Unit Casualties (for Units With Medical Treatment Personnel)

**Table 3-3. Sample Mobility Mission Outline**

<b>ENGINEER PLATOON MOBILITY</b>	
<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
05-2-0114	Provide Engineer Support to Breaching Operations
05-3-1017	Conduct a River Crossing Site Reconnaissance
05-3-1008	Conduct Minesweeping Operations
05-2-1013	Conduct a Water Crossing Site Reconnaissance
05-3-1050	Prepare an Expedient Ford
05-3-5109	Clear Obstacles Using Engineer Equipment
03-2-3008.05-T01A	Conduct a Radiological, Chemical, or Biological Reconnaissance or Survey
03-3-C208.05-T01A	Cross a Radiologically Contaminated Area

**Table 3-4. Sample Perform Survivability Construction Mission Outline**

<b>ENGINEER PLATOON PERFORM SURVIVABILITY CONSTRUCTION</b>	
<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
05-3-3013	Construct Vehicle Fighting Positions
05-3-3014	Construct Vehicle Protective Positions
05-3-2015	Construct a Tank Ditch
05-3-3000	Construct Bunkers and Shelters

**Table 3-5. Sample Unit Survivability/Unit Defense Mission Outline**

<b>ENGINEER COMPANY UNIT SURVIVABILITY/UNIT DEFENSE</b>	
<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
03-3-C203.05-T01A	Respond to a Chemical Attack
03-3-C205.05-T01A	Prepare for a Friendly Nuclear Strike
05-2-3002	Camouflage Vehicles and Equipment
11-5-0121.05-T01A	Provide a Field Cable or Wire System
44-1-C220.05-T01A	Use Passive Air Defense Measures
44-1-C221.05-T01A	Take Active Combined Arms Air Defense Measures Against Hostile Aircraft

## CHAPTER 4

### Training Exercise

4-1. General. Training exercises are used to train and practice the performance of collective tasks. This MTP contains a sample STX. It is designed to assist in developing, sustaining, and evaluating the unit mission proficiency. Table 4-1 lists the STX by exercise number, title, and page number.

**Table 4-1. STX Exercise**

Exercise Number	Exercise Title	Page
STX 5-2-E0001	Breaching Obstacles	4-1

4-2. Situational Training Exercise. STXs are short, scenario-driven, mission-oriented, tactical exercises used to train a group of closely related collective tasks. STXs provide the information for training the missions that make up the critical wartime mission. STXs—

- Provide repetitive training of missions.
- Allow the training to focus on identified weaknesses.
- Allow the unit to practice the mission STX before conducting a higher-echelon FTX.
- Save time by providing most of the information needed to develop a vehicle for training.

### ENGINEER PLATOON STX 5-2-E0001 BREACHING OBSTACLES

1. Objective. This sample STX trains collective, leader, and individual tasks in the platoon operation (breaching obstacles).

2. Interface. This STX supports the company FTX 5-2-E0001 requirement to conduct combat operations.

3. Training.

a. Individual Training. This training should be based on the soldier's manual tasks required to support this STX. Individual training is based on the tasks, conditions, and standards in the 12B and the soldier's common tasks manuals. Training should be hands-on and performance-oriented. During training, leaders assess soldier proficiency by evaluating task performance against the soldier's manual standards then providing feedback to the soldiers. The individual training and evaluation program includes common task tests and the commander's evaluations.

b. Collective Training. This training should be based on the collective tasks required for the STX. Battle drills and STXs are key tools for squad and platoon collective training. As with individual tasks, drills should be trained to standard with feedback provided. Collective tasks that could support this STX and mission (as well as other missions) are in the mission-to-collective task matrix in Chapter 2.

c. Leader Training. This training should be based on the leader tasks required for the exercises as well as the individual tasks. Leader tasks are trained in the same manner as stated in paragraph 3a or by one or all of the following methods. When material and facilities are not available, innovation is the answer. Do not limit training to the methods listed below.

- (1) Classroom discussions on how to plan the exercise and how to implement the unit SOP.
- (2) A map reconnaissance assists in terrain analysis and war gaming. Use a map of the area where the STX is to be conducted.
- (3) Terrain board or sand table exercises permit simulations or miniatures to be used to gain three-dimensional perspectives in war gaming or rehearsals. Model the terrain board or the sand table to match the terrain where the exercise will be conducted.
- (4) Tactical exercises without troops (TEWTs) allow leaders to train on the ground, practicing land-navigation movement, reporting, and other leader actions.
- (5) Simulations and games teach leaders as part of a continuing officer and noncommissioned officer (NCO) development program.
- (6) Training extension courses use audiovisual equipment to present information and demonstrate how tasks are performed to standard.

d. Training Tips and Instructions. The following are training tips and general instructions on how to prepare for and accomplish the STX:

- (1) Know the requirements for breaching obstacles, marking obstacles, and tactical movement.
- (2) Conduct a leader's reconnaissance of the training area with squad leaders to ensure that you do not make time-consuming mistakes.
- (3) Review the standards for the T&EO that supports this exercise.
- (4) Conduct STXs using one of the following options:
  - (a) With ammunition, without ammunition, or using live fire. The use of ammunition is encouraged to add more realism to the exercise.
  - (b) With or without the Multiple Integrated Laser Equipment System (MILES). The MILES provides better feedback and should be used if it is available.
  - (c) Under all environmental conditions, both day and night and with or without an NBC environment. These scenarios should involve an active NBC environment.
- (5) Ensure that STXs are initially trained and rehearsed slowly, on open terrain, during good visibility, and with frequent explanations and critiques by leaders. This simple execution, combined with a thorough prebrief and "chalk talks" constitutes the "crawl" stage of STX training. The "walk" phase of STXs entail conducting the training at closer to normal rates, on more difficult terrain, and with stops for explanation and critique only when problems occur (expect for planned AARs). During the "run" phase, the STX is executed under conditions as close as possible to those expected in combat (including full operations security [OPSEC] and camouflage, realistic time frames and distances, challenging terrain, and aggressive OPFOR, NBC environment, and movement distance). The exercises are conducted at full speed after conducting building block training (individual training and drills) to reach the run level of execution.
- (6) Ensure that T&EO standards for exercises (from Chapter 5) are met to obtain the maximum benefits from the training.

(7) Conduct this exercise on a recurring basis to sustain proficiency; however, since many of the T&EOs in this STX will be trained in other STXs, practice may occur through integration rather than retraining the STX.

(8) Ensure that the OPFOR replicates enemy forces in size and strength to portray threat activities realistically.

(9) Assign at least one evaluator to control OPFOR activities. The evaluator evaluates OPFOR actions, ensures realism, stresses safety, and assesses loss and damage. If the OPFOR are in groups for several simultaneous actions, additional OPFOR evaluators or controllers are necessary.

(10) Ensure that OPFOR units look and fight like a potential enemy. This will help soldiers understand threat tactics, doctrine, and weapons systems.

e. Training Enhancers. This STX requires the platoon to breach an obstacle, move tactically, support by fire, and mark an obstacle.

(1) When basic proficiency is attained for the tasks in this STX, the STX may be conducted under limited visibility conditions, both with and without night vision devices (NVDs).

(2) This STX can be conducted under increasing MOPP levels as proficiency increases.

#### 4. General Situation.

a. Contact with the enemy obstacle has been established. Initial reports indicate that the obstacle is overwatched by a company-sized element. The enemy defensive positions are not well established; it has the capability for indirect fire and close air support (CAS). It has used chemical weapons and will probably do so again. A breach of the obstacle has been ordered to allow maneuver forces to move through to attack the enemy. Figure 4-1 illustrates the graphic scenario of task performance in this exercise.

b. This exercise begins with the receipt of a company fragmentary order (FRAGO) by the platoon and ends after the obstacle is marked. An AAR should be held after the obstacle has been breached and marked. A final AAR should be conducted once all evaluation notes are compiled. If necessary, run portions of the exercise again until you are satisfied with your platoon performance. Table 4-2 provides a recommended sequence of T&EOs and a recommended time for each portion of the STX.

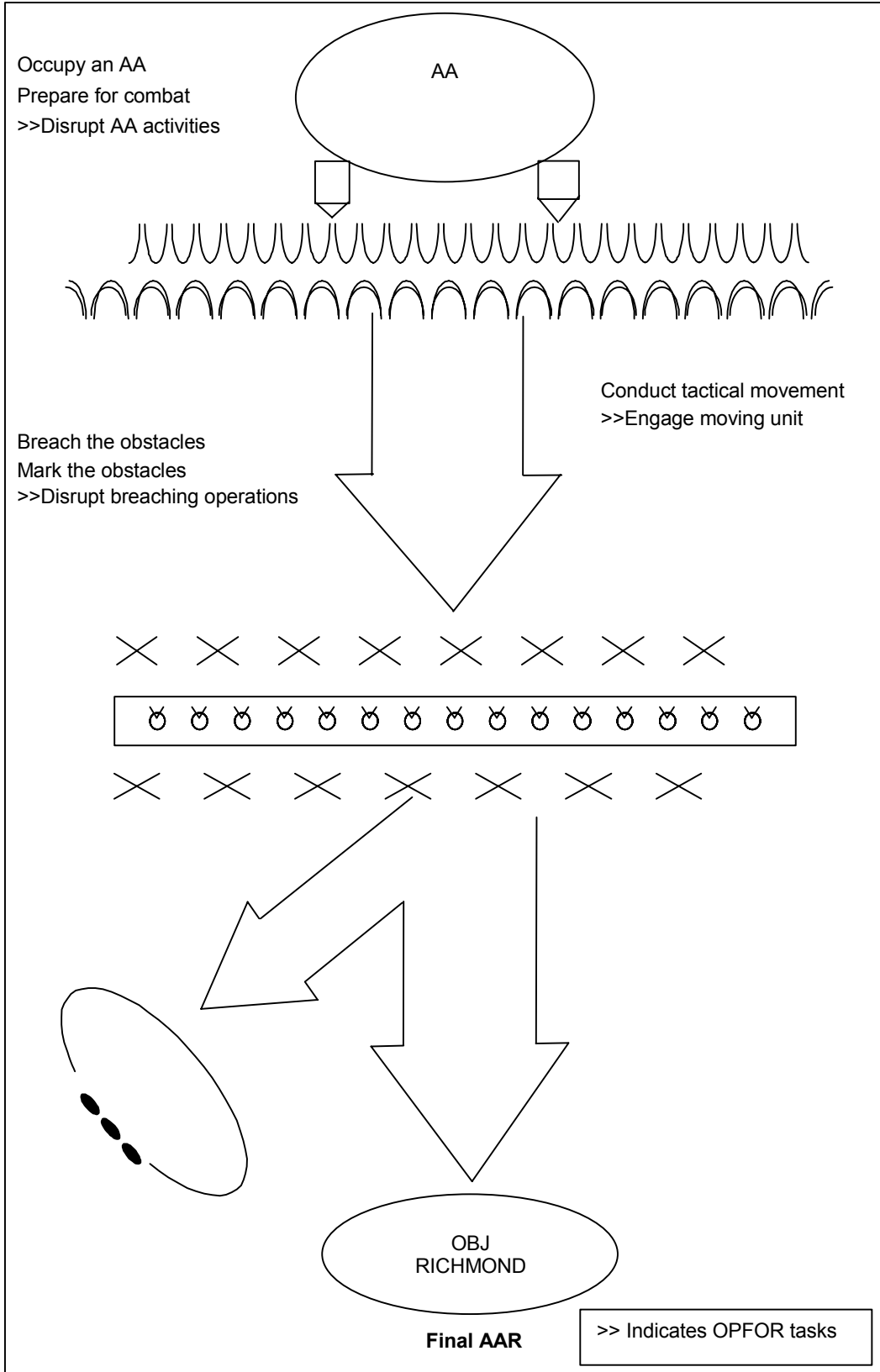


Figure 4-1. General Scenario STX



**Table 4-2. Sample Suggested Scenario**

<b>Event</b>	<b>Action</b>	<b>Estimated Time</b>
<b>Module 1</b>		
1	Occupy an AA	4 hours
2	Receive a FRAGO	15 minutes
3	Plan Breaching Operations	3 hours
4	Issue a FRAGO	2 hours
5	Conduct an AAR	1 hour
6	Conduct Precombat Operations	2 hours
7	Conduct Tactical Movement	1 hour
8	Breach the Obstacle	1 hour
9	Conduct an AAR	1 hour
10	Mark the Obstacle	1 hour
11	Conduct an AAR	1 hour
<b>Total time:</b>		<b>17.25 hours</b>
<b>NOTES:</b>		
1. These tasks are integrated and evaluated throughout the exercise.		
2. Events will be trained to standards, not time limitations. The time required to train an event will vary based on METT-TC factors and the unit training proficiency.		
3. Additional time may be required if great portions of the exercise are conducted at night or during other limited visibility.		

5. Special Situation.

a. Your platoon is part of a company in a secure assembly area (AA). The platoon receives a FRAGO to breach obstacles (Figure 4-2).

b. The company commander has ordered your platoon to lift your supporting fires. A sister platoon is prepare to provide support for the breach and marking of the obstacle. The company commander orders your platoon to breach the obstacle.

6. Support Requirements.

a. Minimum Trainers and Observers/Controllers. The company commander or the platoon leader can conduct this exercise and will be the trainer and primary evaluator. At least one other observer/controller (O/C) is required with the OPFOR. Another platoon being trained or evaluated should be used as the platoon supporting the breach operations. This platoon will need an additional trainer or O/C.

b. Vehicles/Communications. Those organic to the platoon are needed for this exercise. Two or three vehicles or trailers should be in the OPFOR supply site.

c. Opposing Forces. The OPFOR ground force should at least be a reinforced squad.

<b>FRAGMENTARY ORDER</b>	Copy ____ of ____ copies 25 <sup>th</sup> Engr Bn
FRAGMENTARY ORDER _____	
References:	
1. SITUATION.	
a. Enemy Forces. The enemy forces are at 60 to 70 percent strength. They are preparing to counterattack and are expected to use air-delivered or artillery-delivered nonpersistent nerve agent.	
b. Friendly Force. ( <u>Element designation</u> ) attack ( <u>date-time group</u> ) to destroy the enemy force at Objective _____ to disrupt the enemy counterattack.	
2. MISSION. ( <u>Element destination</u> ) is to provide breach support for ( <u>supported elements designation</u> ) to breach obstacles along the main avenue of approach.	
3. EXECUTION.	
a. Concept of the Operations. (See overlay.)	
(1) Intent. Breach obstacles and destroy the enemy preparing to counterattack.	
(2) Fire Support. Priority of fire to ( <u>another</u> ) platoon.	
b. ( <u>Another</u> ) Platoon.	
(1) Provide breach support for ( <u>evaluated</u> ) platoon.	
(2) Prepare to replace ( <u>evaluated</u> ) platoon in case they become combat ineffective.	
c. ( <u>Evaluated</u> ) Platoon.	
(1) Provide local support by fire ( <u>initially</u> ).	
(2) Breach obstacles.	
(3) Mark obstacles according to the tactical standing operating procedure (TACSOP).	
d. Coordinating Instructions.	
(1) Company release point (RP) is ( <u>grid coordinate</u> ).	
(2) Company linkup point is ( <u>grid coordinate</u> ).	

**Figure 4-2. Sample FRAGO for STX 5-2-E0001**

d. Maneuver Area. A 15- x 4-kilometer training area is desired. This area should provide for infiltration, cross-country movement, locations for supply sites, and a complex obstacle. The terrain should offer multiple covered and concealed approaches to the objective area. Using terrain that limits the

leader to a geographical or school solution does not allow evaluation of the unit ability to conduct a terrain analysis and select and conceal positions.

- e. Consolidated Support Requirements. This exercise requires the items listed in Table 4-3.

**Table 4-3. Sample Consolidated Support Requirements for STX 5-2-E0001**

<b>Ammunition</b>	<b>DODIC</b>	<b>Estimated Basic Load</b>	
5.56 mm	A080	150 rounds per rifle	
7.62 mm	A111	400 rounds per M60	
5.56 mm	A075	250 rounds per SAW	
Caliber .50	A598	250 rounds per M2	
ATWESS (AT-4)	L367	15 each per company (inert)	
Hand grenade, body, M69	G811	2 per man	
Hand grenade, fuse (practice)	G878	2 per man	
Simulators, projectile, ground burst	L598	50 per exercise	
Simulator, hand grenade, M116 series	L601	20 per squad (without live demolitions to simulate demolitions) or 6 per squad	
<b>Demolitions (See the note below.)</b>			
MICLIC		4 per company with 2 reloads	
Bangalore torpedo kit		1 per squad	
Charge, block TNT		50 per squad	
MDI M11, 12, 13, 14		15 each (total 60) per platoon	
MDI igniters		60 per platoon	
Time fuse		500 feet per platoon	
Satchel charge, M183		30 per platoon	
40-pound shape charge		12 per platoon	
Smoke grenades, white		60 per platoon	
Smoke pot, ground		10 per platoon	
Mines			
<b>Other Items</b>			
Batteries, BA 200 (6-volt)		50 each	
Batteries, BA 3090 (9-volt)		400 each	
<b>Class IV</b>			
Concertina wire			
Pickets			
Staples			
Barbed wire			
<b>MILES Equipment</b>	<b>Company</b>	<b>Evaluators</b>	<b>OPFOR</b>
APC	13		13/4
Caliber .50 system	15		13/4
M240 system	2		
M19 blank firing adapter	15		13/4
M16 system	120		120/28
M60 machine gun system	13		13/2
Controller guns		8	
Small arms alignment fixture		2	
<b>NOTE: Ammunition and demolitions are basic loads and should be restocked (according to use) during the exercise.</b>			

f. Regulations and Requirements. Commanders should consult local regulations and range-control requirements during coordination to ensure compliance with restrictions such as constraints on pyrotechnics.

7. Training and Evaluation Outline Sequence. Table 4-4 lists sample T&EOs that are used to evaluate this STX.

**Table 4-4. T&EOs Used in Evaluating STX 5-2-E0001**

<b>Task Title</b>	<b>Task Number</b>
Conduct Troop-Leading Procedures	05-3-0013
Conduct a Radiological, Chemical, or Biological Reconnaissance or Survey	03-2-3008.05-T01A
Cross a Radiologically Contaminated Area	03-3-C208.05-T01A
Support Breaching Operations	05-2-0114
Reorganize as Infantry	05-1-0011
Fight as Infantry	05-1-0015

## CHAPTER 5

### Training and Evaluation Outlines

The T&EOs for the unit are listed in Figure 5-1. The mission-to-collective task matrix in Chapter 2 lists the T&EOs required to train the critical wartime missions according to their specific BOS.

<b>Develop Intelligence</b>	
Conduct Report Procedures (05-2-0018) .....	5-3
Conduct a Water Crossing Site Reconnaissance (05-2-1013).....	5-7
Perform an Engineer Reconnaissance (05-3-0407).....	5-10
Perform an Obstacle and Restriction Reconnaissance (05-3-1004).....	5-13
Perform a Route Classification (05-3-1016).....	5-16
Perform a Target Reconnaissance (05-3-1019).....	5-19
Perform a Technical Reconnaissance (05-3-1020).....	5-22
Support a Tactical Reconnaissance (05-3-1022).....	5-25
Process Captured Documents and Equipment (19-3-3105.05-T01A).....	5-28
Maintain Operations Security (OPSEC) (71-2-0332.05-T01A).....	5-30
<b>Deploy/Conduct Maneuver</b>	
Reorganize as Infantry (05-1-0011).....	5-33
Fight as Infantry (05-1-0015).....	5-35
Conduct Quartering Party Operations (05-2-3007).....	5-41
Disable a Bridge With Explosives (05-3-0202).....	5-44
Create a Lane Through an Obstacle Using Explosive Techniques (05-3-1000).....	5-47
Create a Lane Through an Obstacle Using Mechanical Techniques (05-3-1001).....	5-51
Create a Lane Through an Obstacle Using Manual Techniques (05-3-1003).....	5-55
Prepare an Expedient Ford (05-3-1050).....	5-59
Emplace Situational Obstacles (05-3-2001).....	5-61
Emplace a Volcano Minefield (05-3-2011).....	5-63
Emplace a Modular-Pack Mine System (MOPMS) Disrupt or Fix Minefield (05-3-2012).....	5-66
Construct a Tank Ditch (05-3-2015).....	5-69
Create a Crater Obstacle Using Explosives (05-3-2017).....	5-72
Prepare Preconstructed Obstacles (05-3-2018).....	5-76
Construct Wire Obstacles (05-3-2019).....	5-79
Construct a Log Obstacle (05-3-2020).....	5-82
Establish a Hasty Position (05-3-3011).....	5-85
Construct Combat Roads and Trails (05-3-5101).....	5-87
React to Indirect Fire (07-1-1923.05-T01A).....	5-91
Conduct Passage of Lines (Passing/Stationary) (07-2-1125.05-T01A).....	5-93
Occupy an Assembly Area (AA) (07-2-1136.05-T02A).....	5-98
Conduct a Convoy (07-2-1301.05-T01A).....	5-101
Establish Unit Defense (07-3-0219.05-T01A).....	5-105
Assault a Building (Infantry Platoon/Squad) (07-3-1000.05-T01A).....	5-110
Conduct a Tactical Road March (07-3-1123.05-T01A).....	5-114
Conduct Actions at Danger Areas (07-3-1135.05-T01A).....	5-118
Move Tactically (07-3-C211.05-T01A).....	5-121
<b>Protect the Force</b>	
Conduct a Radiological, Chemical, or Biological Reconnaissance or Survey (03-2-3008.05-T01A).....	5-125
Prepare for Operations Under Nuclear, Biological, and Chemical (NBC) Conditions (03-3-C201.05-T01A).....	5-128
Prepare for a Chemical Attack (03-3-C202.05-T01A).....	5-131
Respond to a Chemical Attack (03-3-C203.05-T01A).....	5-133
Prepare for a Friendly Nuclear Strike (03-3-C205.05-T01A).....	5-136

Prepare for a Nuclear Attack (03-3-C206.05-T01A)	5-138
Cross a Radiologically Contaminated Area (03-3-C208.05-T01A)	5-140
React to Smoke Operations (03-3-C209.05-T01A)	5-143
Respond to the Residual Effects of a Nuclear Attack (03-3-C222.05-T01A)	5-146
Respond to the Initial Effects of a Nuclear Attack (03-3-C223.05-T01A)	5-148
Conduct Operational Decontamination (03-3-C224.05-T01A)	5-151
Cross a Chemically Contaminated Area (03-3-C226.05-T01A)	5-155
Camouflage Vehicles and Equipment (05-2-3002)	5-158
Defend a Convoy Against a Ground Attack (05-2-3003)	5-161
Conduct an Extraction From a Minefield (05-2-3005)	5-165
Emplace a Hasty Protective Row Minefield (05-2-3008)	5-168
Construct Bunkers and Shelters (05-3-3000)	5-173
Construct Protective Earthen Walls and Berms (05-3-3002)	5-176
Establish Jobsite Security (05-3-3006)	5-179
Remove a Hasty Protective Row Minefield (05-3-3007)	5-182
Construct Vehicle Fighting Positions (05-3-3013)	5-185
Construct Vehicle Protective Positions (05-3-3014)	5-188
Disable Critical Equipment and Material (05-3-7005)	5-191
Prepare Crew-Served Weapons Fighting Positions (05-5-3009)	5-193
React to an Ambush (07-3-1112.05-T01A)	5-196
React to Unexploded Ordnance (UXO) (09-2-0337.05-T01A)	5-199
Use Passive Air Defense Measures (44-1-C220.05-T01A)	5-201
Take Active Combined Arms Air Defense Measures Against Hostile Aerial Platforms (44-1-C221.05-T01A)	5-204
Perform Risk Management Procedures (71-2-0326.05-T01A)	5-208
<b>Perform CSS and Sustainment</b>	
Provide Opposing Forces (OPFOR) Support to Training Exercises (05-2-9001)	5-211
Construct an Expedient Landing Zone (LZ) for Helicopters (05-3-1010)	5-227
Place Airfield Matting on Prepared Surfaces (05-3-5100)	5-229
Receive a Logistics Package (LOGPAC) (05-3-7004)	5-231
Transport Casualties (for Units Without Medical Treatment Personnel) (08-2-C316.05-T01A)	5-234
Conduct Battlefield Stress Reduction and Stress Prevention Procedures (08-2-R303.05-T01A)	5-238
Perform Field Sanitation Functions (08-2-R315.05-T01A)	5-241
Perform Unit Graves Registration (GRREG) Operations (10-2-0318.05-T01A)	5-244
Receive Airdrop Resupply (10-2-0319.05-T01A)	5-247
Provide a Field Cable or Wire System (11-5-0121.05-T01A)	5-249
Handle Enemy Prisoners of War (EPWs) (19-3-3106.05-T01A)	5-252
<b>Exercise Command and Control</b>	
Integrate Augmentation Support (05-1-0017)	5-255
Plan and Control Tactical Obstacles (05-2-2013)	5-257
Prepare an Operation Order (OPORD) (Company/Platoon) (05-2-7008)	5-259
Establish and Operate a Single-Channel Voice Radio Net (11-3-0214.05-T01A)	5-264
Install, Operate, and Maintain a Single-Channel, Ground and Airborne Radio System (SINCGARS) Frequency Hopping (FH) Net (11-5-1102.05-T01A)	5-267
Maintain Platoon Strength (12-3-0001.05-T01A)	5-271

Figure 5-1. List of T&EOs

- ELEMENTS:** Battalion Headquarters  
 Company Headquarters  
 S1 Section  
 S2 Section  
 S3 Section  
 S4 Section  
 Division Engineer Section  
 Communications Section  
 Battalion Maintenance Section  
 Assault and Barrier Platoon Headquarters  
 Survivability Section  
 Mobility and Countermobility Section  
 Combat Medical Section  
 Three Brigade Engineer Sections  
 Unit Ministry Section  
 Food Services Section  
 Maintenance Section  
 Food Service Section  
 Unit Ministry Team  
 Command Section  
 Combat Medic Section  
 Maintenance Platoon Headquarters  
 Headquarters and Headquarters Company Maintenance Section  
 The Army Maintenance Management System and Prescribed Load List Section  
 Three Company Maintenance Teams  
 Support Platoon Headquarters  
 Unit Maintenance Section  
 Direct-Support Maintenance Section  
 Direct-Support Maintenance Supply Section  
 Treatment Team  
 Ambulance Team  
 Combat Medic Team  
 Direct Support Maintenance Supply Section  
 Two Engineer Platoons  
 Six Engineer Squads  
 Equipment Section

**TASK:** Conduct Report Procedures (05-2-0018)  
 (FM 34-45) (FM 24-18) (FM 24-19)  
 (FM 24-33) (FM 24-35) (FM 3-11)  
 (FM 3-11.11) (FM 7-7)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)  
**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** An element is conducting operations and has all the required organic communications systems. The element is required to report according to the unit standing operating procedures (SOPs). Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The element submits reports (such as operational occurrence reports, spot reports [SPOTREPs], and shelling reports [SHELREPs]) to higher headquarters (HQ) in a timely manner. Reports should be in the correct format according to the appropriate field manual or the unit SOP. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The leader submits the SPOTREP to higher HQ as required by the unit SOP or the situation.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensured that the SPOTREP included the size, activity, location, unit, time, and equipment (SALUTE).</li> <li>b. Dispatched the SPOTREP by the fastest means available. (When necessary, the leader submitted a partial report within the time constraints and updated it as additional information became available).</li> </ul> <p>* 2. The leader submits the SHELREP, the mortar bombing report (MORTREP), and the bombing report (BOMREP) to the next higher HQ.</p> <p><b>NOTE: The reports should include the following: the originating unit; the observer position; the direction; the time that the shelling began; the time that the shelling ended; the area that was bombed, shelled, rocketed, or mortared; the number and the nature of weapons and aircraft; the nature of fire (direct or indirect); the number, type, and caliber of shells, rockets, bombs, or mortar rounds; and the flash-to-bang time, damage, and angle of the fall or descent, as time and conditions permit.</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Submitted the report within 30 minutes following the activity or consistent with the tactical situation.</li> <li>b. Submitted the report, even if it contained incomplete information.</li> </ul> <p>3. The radiotelephone operator (RATELO) submits a meaconing, intrusion, jamming, and interference (MIJI) report to the net control station (NCS) within 10 minutes of notification of the activity.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Encrypted the numerals 022 when transmitting the MIJI over nonsecure communications.</li> <li>b. Encrypted the following numerals for interference when transmitting over nonsecure communications: 1 (meaconing), 2 (intrusion), 3 (jamming), and 4 (interference).</li> <li>c. Encrypted the following numerals for the affected instrument when transmitting over nonsecure communications: 1 (radio), 2 (radar), 3 (navigational aid), 4 (satellite), and 5 (electro-optics).</li> <li>d. Encrypted the affected frequency when transmitting over nonsecure communications.</li> <li>e. Completed the call sign of the affected station operator (for secure and nonsecure communications).</li> <li>f. Completed the grid coordinates of the affected station. Encrypted the coordinates when transmitting by nonsecure means.</li> </ul> <p>* 4. The leader submits all operational occurrence reports as soon as the tactical situation permits. The information included the—</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Line of departure (LD) crossing.</li> <li>b. Checkpoint arrival times.</li> <li>c. Rally point (RP) arrival time.</li> <li>d. Logistics report.</li> <li>e. Intelligence report.</li> </ul> <p>* 5. The leader submits both verbal and written patrol reports as required by the unit SOP.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Included the designation of the patrol.</li> <li>b. Documented the date.</li> <li>c. Included the unit receiving the report.</li> <li>d. Documented the name of the person submitting the report.</li> <li>e. Included the size and composition of the patrol.</li> </ul>		



TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>f. Included the mission.</p> <p>g. Included the departure and return times.</p> <p>h. Documented the routes out and back.</p> <p>i. Submitted a terrain description, including the—</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Type of terrain (such as dry, swamp, jungle, thickly wooded, high brush, or rocky).</li> <li>(2) Deepness of the ravines and draws.</li> <li>(3) Size, type, strength, and condition of the bridges.</li> <li>(4) Effect on armored and wheeled vehicles.</li> </ol> <p>j. Documented data on the enemy to include the following:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Strength</li> <li>(2) Disposition</li> <li>(3) Condition of the defense</li> <li>(4) Equipment and weapons.</li> <li>(5) Morale of personnel.</li> <li>(6) Exact location.</li> <li>(7) A shift in disposition.</li> <li>(8) Time that the activity was observed and the coordinates where the activity occurred.</li> </ol> <p>k. Included any map corrections.</p> <p>l. Documented any miscellaneous information, such as aspects of nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) warfare.</p> <p>m. Submitted the outcome of previous enemy encounters, including—</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Enemy prisoners and their disposition.</li> <li>(2) The identification of enemy personnel.</li> <li>(3) Enemy casualties.</li> <li>(4) Captured documents and equipment.</li> </ol> <p>n. Included the condition of the patrol, such as the disposition of the dead or wounded soldiers.</p> <p>o. Submitted conclusions and recommendations, such as accomplishments and any recommendations regarding the patrol equipment and tactics.</p> <p>p. Documented the signature, grade or rank, and organization or unit of the patrol leader.</p> <p>q. Included any additional remarks by the interrogator and the signature of the interrogator.</p> <p>6. The element submits an NBC 1 report.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Submitted the initial NBC 1 report (within 5 minutes of the activity) and follow-up reports to the unit HQ.</li> <li>b. Documented the most accurate information possible, using the most secure means available (by flash precedence for the initial burst and immediate precedence for subsequent attacks).</li> </ol> <p>* 7. The leader submits an NBC 4 report.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Sent the report to the unit HQ.</li> <li>b. Submitted the most accurate information possible by using the most secure means available.</li> </ol> <p>8. The element submits a generic report.</p> <p><b>NOTE: A generic report is considered to be any report not covered in the outline above.</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Submitted reports according to the unit SOPs.</li> <li>b. Sent reports in the correct formats.</li> <li>c. Reported information to the appropriate levels by the fastest means possible.</li> </ol>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
031-503-3005	Submit an NBC 1 Report
052-196-3030	Prepare a Road Reconnaissance Report
052-196-3031	Prepare a Tunnel Reconnaissance Report
052-196-3032	Prepare a Ford Reconnaissance Report
052-196-3033	Prepare a Bridge Reconnaissance Report
052-196-3035	Prepare an Engineer Reconnaissance Report
071-326-5505	Issue an Oral Operation Order
113-587-2072	Operate SINCGARS Frequency Hopping (FH) Net Control Station (NCS)

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
05-2-6007	Identify Terrain Information Requirements
05-4-1372	Disseminate Terrain Information Product

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** Six Engineer Squads  
 Two Engineer Platoons  
 Equipment Section

**TASK:** Conduct a Water Crossing Site Reconnaissance (05-2-1013)  
 (FM 5-170) (FM 5-34) (FM 90-13)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The company receives an operation order (OPORD) to conduct a water crossing site reconnaissance. Personnel and equipment are available. All necessary equipment is available. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The element performs the reconnaissance and identifies all missions that are required to support the operation within the time specified in the OPORD. Locations are accurate within 10 meters. Measurements and dimensions are accurate within plus or minus 10 percent. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* 1. The element leader plans the site reconnaissance.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Performed a map reconnaissance of the site (digital or analog).</li> <li>b. Selected routes for movement to and from the site.</li> <li>c. Selected rally points.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 2. The element leader issues the OPORD.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Assigned responsibilities and designated far- and near-bank reconnaissance teams.</li> <li>b. Designated the movement methods and routes to and from the site.</li> <li>c. Described the action to take in the event of enemy contact.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 3. The element leader directs the movement to the site.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensured that the team dismounted before arriving at the site, as required by the tactical situation.</li> <li>b. Ensured that the team displaced tactically.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 4. The element leader observes and records access route conditions.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Recorded overhead obstructions with clearances of less than 4.3 meters.</li> <li>b. Recorded reductions in the travel-way width that were less than 8 meters.</li> <li>c. Recorded gradients (slopes) of 7 percent or greater.</li> <li>d. Recorded curves having a radius of 25 meters or less.</li> <li>e. Recorded road surface conditions.</li> <li>f. Recorded obstacles, such as road craters, mined areas, felled trees, or rubble.</li> </ul> </li> <li>5. The far-bank team performs a far-bank reconnaissance.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Determined the condition of various points identified during the map reconnaissance, to include the—                                     <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Bank heights.</li> <li>(2) Bank slopes.</li> <li>(3) Soil conditions.</li> <li>(4) Bank obstacles (natural or man-made).</li> </ul> </li> <li>b. Estimated the gap width at the site.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>c. Determined the gap (wet) conditions in the vicinity of the crossing site, to include the—</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) River depth at 3-meter intervals along the site.</li> <li>(2) Sandbars or other water obstacles.</li> <li>(3) Conditions on the bottom.</li> <li>(4) Fluctuations in the current of the river.</li> </ul> <p>d. Collected any other information requested in the OPORD.</p> <p>e. Returned to the rally point designated by the reconnaissance element leader.</p> <p>6. The near-bank team performs a near-bank reconnaissance.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Determined the condition of the near bank along various points. (See performance measure 5a.)</li> <li>b. Estimated the gap width at the site.</li> <li>c. Measured the current velocity at the site.</li> <li>d. Collected any other information requested in the OPORD.</li> <li>e. Returned to the designated rally point.</li> </ul> <p>* 7. The element leader receives the reconnaissance information from the team leader.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensured that all required information was obtained.</li> <li>b. Disseminated the required information to the team members.</li> </ul> <p>* 8. The element leader directs the movement from the site.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensured that the team displaced tactically.</li> <li>b. Directed the movement to subsequent sites as required by the OPORD.</li> <li>c. Repeated performance steps 2 through 7 until the mission was completed.</li> <li>d. Directed the team to return to the squad assembly area (AA).</li> </ul> <p>* 9. The element leader submits his report to the command element.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Provided a sketch of each site, to include the— <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Bank heights and slopes.</li> <li>(2) River bottom profile.</li> <li>(3) Estimated river width.</li> </ul> </li> <li>b. Provided other information, to include the— <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Current velocity.</li> <li>(2) Soil conditions.</li> <li>(3) Route conditions leading to and from the site.</li> <li>(4) Obstacles.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
052-196-2002	Determine the Radius of Curves
052-196-2004	Determine Stream Velocity
052-196-3032	Prepare a Ford Reconnaissance Report
052-196-3150	Conduct Route Reconnaissance
052-238-1532	Perform a River Reconnaissance

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
05-1-6001	Request a Standard Geospatial Product
05-2-0018	Conduct Report Procedures
05-2-7008	Prepare an Operation Order (OPORD) (Company/Platoon)
05-3-3006	Establish Jobsite Security
19-1-2203	Direct Site Security Operations

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** Two Engineer Platoons  
Six Engineer Squads  
Equipment Section

**TASK:** Perform an Engineer Reconnaissance (05-3-0407)  
(FM 5-170) (DA FORM 1711-R) (FM 5-34)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The element leader receives a fragmentary order (FRAGO) or an operation order (OPORD) to conduct an engineer reconnaissance for possible assets and obstructions along a proposed movement route. The reconnaissance checklist is completed based on the commander's intent. The area is secured, but enemy contact is possible. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The element identifies engineer resources in the designated area. The element uses the correct symbols to prepare and submit an overlay, all required reports, and Department of the Army (DA) Form 1711-R (Engineer Reconnaissance Report). Locations are accurate within plus or minus 10 meters. The measurements, dimensions, and quantities are accurate within plus or minus 10 percent. The element completes the reconnaissance within the time specified in the OPORD. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The element leader receives a FRAGO or an OPORD to conduct an engineer reconnaissance.</p> <p><b>NOTE: Digital units request intelligence information by requesting All-Source Analysis System (ASAS) information and Digital Topographic Support System (DTSS) products from higher headquarters (HQ).</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Coordinated through the Operations and Training Officer (US Army) (S3) or the task force (TF) engineer for ground-security forces or aviation-security forces.</li> <li>b. Requested an enemy situation brief from the Intelligence Officer (US Army) (S2).</li> <li>c. Conducted a thorough map reconnaissance including the start points (SPs), the release points (RPs), the route, and the terrain.</li> <li>d. Reviewed the unit tactical standing operating procedure (TACSOP) or the standing operating procedure (SOP).</li> <li>e. Ensured that the area or the target for the reconnaissance met the commander's intent and requirements (such as the materials, equipment, bivouac, terrain, barriers, and errors or omissions on the map).</li> </ul> <p>* 2. The element leader prepares an overlay of the designated area.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Drew routes to scale on the overlay and showed the limit of sector symbols and terrain features (bridges, water, and so on).</li> <li>b. Plotted at least two grid reference points and a grid or magnetic north arrow.</li> <li>c. Prepared a title block. As a minimum, included a name, social security number (SSN), unit, map sheet, series, scale, downgrade information, and any remarks (such as security classification) placed at the top and bottom.</li> </ul> <p>* 3. The element leader briefs the subunit leaders on the reconnaissance mission.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Used the five-paragraph order format, to include the— <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Area to reconnoiter.</li> <li>(2) Method of reconnaissance as either hasty or deliberate.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>(3) Objectives of the reconnaissance.                      (4) Time and distance factors.                      (5) Noise and light discipline.</p> <p>b. Conducted troop-leading procedures.                      c. Conducted precombat checks (PCCs) and precombat inspections (PCIs).                      d. Drew the required equipment, forms, and material for reconnaissance.</p> <p><b>NOTE: The engineer reconnaissance checklist can be used to identify information requirements along a route.</b></p> <p>4. The reconnaissance team reconnoiters the designated area and provides detailed information.</p> <p>a. Provided information about the special features and structures of the area (such as the bivouac, equipment, materials, water points, terrain, construction sites, obstacles and barriers to movement, and any errors or omissions on the map).                      b. Reconnoitered the designated area.                      c. Provided information about the geographical locations using the critical-point symbol with engineer resource symbols.</p> <p>* 5. The element leader reviews the overlay and fills out DA Form(s) 1711-R.</p> <p>a. Checked the overlay for completeness to critical points and engineer resource symbols.                      b. Ensured that a DA Form 1711-R was completed for all engineer resources identified by a critical symbol.                      c. Recorded all measurements in meters.                      d. Signed DA Form(s) 1711-R.</p> <p>* 6. The element leader briefs the commander on the reconnaissance mission and submits the overlay, reports, and DA Form(s) 1711-R to the commander within the prescribed time on the OPORD.</p> <p>a. Submitted completed DA Form(s) 1711-R.                      b. Submitted completed overlay and reports.</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title
052-192-1242	Locate Mine and Booby Trap Indicators by Visual Means
052-196-3010	Conduct an Engineer Reconnaissance
052-196-3030	Prepare a Road Reconnaissance Report
052-196-3031	Prepare a Tunnel Reconnaissance Report
052-196-3032	Prepare a Ford Reconnaissance Report
052-196-3033	Prepare a Bridge Reconnaissance Report
052-196-3035	Prepare an Engineer Reconnaissance Report

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
052-196-3065	Prepare a Route Reconnaissance Overlay
052-196-3150	Conduct Route Reconnaissance
052-196-4012	Conduct Platoon Reconnaissance Missions
052-196-4022	Determine the Rapid Field Classification of a Fixed Bridge
052-238-1532	Perform a River Reconnaissance
052-238-3430	Supervise a River Reconnaissance Team
052-238-4507	Coordinate River Reconnaissance Missions
052-243-1506	Classify a Soil Using the Unified Soil Classification System
052-243-3011	Conduct an Engineer Construction Reconnaissance
071-326-5505	Issue an Oral Operation Order
091-CLT-4023	Conduct a Route Reconnaissance for a Maintenance Mission

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
05-2-7008	Prepare an Operation Order (OPORD) (Company/Platoon)
05-3-1022	Support a Tactical Reconnaissance

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**



**ELEMENTS:** Six Engineer Squads  
 Two Engineer Platoons  
 Equipment Section

**TASK:** Perform an Obstacle and Restriction Reconnaissance (05-3-1004)  
 (FM 5-170) (FM 20-32) (FM 3-21.71)  
 (FM 3-34.2) (FM 3-34.230) (FM 5-34)  
 (FM 7-7) (FM 7-8)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The element leader receives a fragmentary order (FRAGO) or an operation order (OPORD) to conduct an obstacle and restriction reconnaissance of a suspected or reported enemy obstacle location. The area is unsecured, and enemy contact is possible. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The element identifies and reports all enemy obstacle information critical to the tactical operation. The obstruction locations are identified using 8-digit grid coordinates and are accurate within 20 meters. The measurements, dimensions, and quantities are accurate within 10 percent. Enemy forces do not detect the element. The reconnaissance is completed within the time specified in the FRAGO or the OPORD. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The element leader receives a FRAGO or an OPORD to conduct an obstacle and restriction reconnaissance.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Conducted troop-leading procedures.</li> <li>b. Conducted precombat checks (PCCs) and precombat inspections (PCIs).</li> <li>c. Drew the required equipment, forms, and material for the reconnaissance.</li> </ul> <p>* 2. The unit leader directs the subordinate leader(s) to gather information based on the intelligence preparation of the battlefield (IPB), an intelligence report, or a tasking in the intelligence collection plan.</p> <p><b>NOTE: Digital units request intelligence information from higher headquarters (HQ) by requesting All-Source Analysis System (ASAS) information and Digital Topographic Support System (DTSS) products.</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Gathered known information about the obstacle from the IPB, the engineer battlefield assessment (EBA), or previous reports, to include maps and graphics.</li> <li>b. Obtained the location of the named area of interest (NAI) or reconnaissance route from higher HQ.</li> <li>c. Received a not later than report time from the unit leader.</li> <li>d. Briefed subelement leaders on the reconnaissance mission using the five-paragraph order format. The information included—                         <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) The route to reconnoiter.</li> <li>(2) The method of reconnaissance as either hasty or deliberate.</li> <li>(3) Reconnaissance objectives (such as the obstacle location, trafficability, and water points).</li> <li>(4) Radio communications for the progress report, any requested assistance, and the communications check.</li> <li>(5) Actions that the security team and element members are to take upon enemy contact.</li> <li>(6) Time and distance factors.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>(7) Noise and light discipline.</p> <p>3. The element moves tactically to a covered and concealed position in overwatch and has visual contact with the obstacle or the NAI.  <b>NOTE: Physical contact with the obstacle is not required; however, dismounted movement to the obstacle is required to obtain some information. The vehicle remains covered and concealed during the dismounted movement.</b></p> <p>4. The element gathers information on the obstacle.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Used the required reconnaissance forms.</li> <li>b. Gathered pertinent information on the obstacle, to include the—                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Location.</li> <li>(2) Orientation and depth.</li> <li>(3) Conditions of the soil (to determine the ability to use mechanical reduction assets on a minefield).</li> <li>(4) Presence, location, and type of wire.</li> <li>(5) Gaps and bypasses.</li> <li>(6) Composition of the minefield (such as the buried or surface-laid antitank [AT] and antipersonnel [AP] mines, antihandling devices [AHDs], and mine depth).</li> <li>(7) Mine type.</li> <li>(8) Location of enemy direct-fire weapons.</li> <li>(9) Location of enemy indirect-fire systems capable of firing into the reduction area.</li> <li>(10) Composition of complex obstacles.</li> <li>(11) Gaps between successive obstacle belts.</li> </ul> </li> </ul> <p>5. The element organizes and submits information in the obstacle intelligence (OBSTINTEL) report to higher HQs according to the unit tactical standing operating procedures (TACSOP).</p> <p>* 6. The element leader (along with the entire reconnaissance team) is debriefed by the commander, the Operations and Training Officer (US Army) (S3), the Intelligence Officer (US Army) (S2), or the task force (TF) engineer.  <b>NOTE: The unit standing operating procedure (SOP) or TACSOP will determine the requirements for the debriefing.</b></p> <p>* 7. The element leader submits the completed reconnaissance forms and overlays.</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
052-192-1021	Locate Mines by Visual Means
052-192-1127	Prepare an AN/PSS-12 Mine Detector for Operation
052-192-1128	Locate Mines With the AN/PSS-12 Mine Detector
052-192-1230	Identify Mines and Firing Devices, Friendly and Enemy
052-194-3500	Conduct a Patrol
052-196-4012	Conduct Platoon Reconnaissance Missions

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
05-1-0081	Prepare an Operation Order (OPORD)
05-2-0018	Conduct Report Procedures
05-3-1004	Perform an Obstacle and Restriction Reconnaissance
05-6-0002	Prepare an Engineer Estimate
07-3-1126	Conduct a Raid (Infantry Platoon/Squad)

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

- ELEMENTS:** Assault and Barrier Platoon Headquarters  
 Survivability Section  
 Mobility and Countermobility Section  
 Assault and Obstacle Platoon  
 Equipment Platoon Headquarters  
 Support Platoon Headquarters  
 Transportation Section  
 Construction Platoon Headquarters  
 Two General Construction Sections  
 Two Engineer Platoons  
 Six Engineer Squads  
 Equipment Section

**TASK:** Perform a Route Classification (05-3-1016)  
 (FM 5-170) (DA FORM 1711-R) (FM 3-21.71)  
 (FM 5-34) (FM 7-8) (STP 5-12B1-SM)  
 (STP 5-12B24-SM-TG)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The element receives a fragmentary order (FRAGO) or an operation order (OPORD) to conduct a route reconnaissance over a specified route. All organic tools and equipment are available. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The element uses the correct symbols to prepare and submit an overlay identifying the obstacles. Obstructions, terrain features, critical points, and route conditions will be reported. The locations are accurate within 10 meters. The measurements, dimensions, and classifications are accurate within 10 percent. The element completes the reconnaissance within the time specified in the FRAGO or the OPORD. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The element leader receives a FRAGO or an OPORD to conduct a route reconnaissance.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Coordinated through the Operations and Training Officer (US Army) (S3) or the task force (TF) engineer for ground security forces or aviation security forces.</li> <li>b. Requested an enemy situation brief from the Intelligence Officer (US Army) (S2).</li> <li>c. Conducted a thorough map reconnaissance including the start points (SPs), release points (RPs), route, and terrain.</li> <li>d. Reviewed the unit tactical standing operating procedure (TACSOP) or standing operating procedure (SOP).</li> <li>e. Ensured that the reconnaissance mission met the commander's intent and requirements (such as the route classification, double-flow traffic, obstructions, barriers, and bypasses).</li> </ul> <p>* 2. The element leader prepares an overlay of the specified route.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensured that the route was to scale on the overlay and showed the limit of sector symbols (one each at the start and end points).</li> <li>b. Plotted at least two grid reference points and a grid or a magnetic north arrow.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>c. Prepared the title block with the following information:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) The route classification formula.</li> <li>(2) The name, rank, and social security number (SSN) of the person in charge of performing the classification.</li> <li>(3) The unit conducting the classification.</li> <li>(4) The date-time group (DTG).</li> <li>(5) The map name, edition, and scale.</li> <li>(6) Any remarks necessary to ensure complete understanding of the information on the overlay.</li> </ol> <p>d. Ensured that digitally capable units submitted reports electronically and followed-up with a hard copy.</p> <p>* 3. The element leader prepares the subunit leaders for the reconnaissance mission.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Used the five-paragraph order format, to include— <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) The route to reconnoiter.</li> <li>(2) The method of reconnaissance, which was either the hasty method or the deliberate method.</li> <li>(3) The reconnaissance objectives (such as the obstacle location, trafficability, and water points).</li> <li>(4) Radio communications for the progress report, requests for assistance, and communications check.</li> <li>(5) The actions that the security team and the squad members took upon enemy contact.</li> <li>(6) Time and distance factors.</li> <li>(7) Noise and light discipline.</li> </ol> </li> <li>b. Planned for a double flow of tracked vehicles unless otherwise directed by the commander.</li> <li>c. Conducted troop-leading procedures.</li> <li>d. Conducted precombat checks (PCCs) and precombat inspections (PCIs).</li> </ol> <p>4. The element reconnoiters the specific route, measuring and recording information along the route.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Determined the travel-way width for trafficability.</li> </ol> <p><b>NOTE: Single-flow wheeled traffic is 5.5 to 7.3 meters wide and single-flow tracked traffic is 6 to 8 meters wide. Double-flow wheeled traffic is 7.3 meters wide and double-flow tracked traffic is 8 meters wide. In the absence of any guidance, the element reconnoiters for double-flow tracked traffic.</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>b. Determined the route type (X, Y, or Z).</li> </ol> <p><b>NOTE: X = all weather, Y = limited all weather, and Z = fair-weather route.</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>c. Determined the military load classification (MLC). The element classified the entire route according to the lowest load classification of any section of the route.</li> <li>d. Identified the underwater structures that were not sound or capable of holding the desired MLC.</li> <li>e. Recorded on the overlay the terrain features that were seen along the route (such as fords, ferries, bridges, slopes, curves, constrictions, man-made obstacles, and overhead clearances).</li> <li>f. Identified any of the critical points spotted on the route (such as terrain features or obstacles) for a detailed explanation on the engineer reconnaissance report.</li> <li>g. Recorded all the measurements (in meters) on the engineer reconnaissance report.</li> </ol>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 5. The S3, S2, or TF engineer debriefs the element leader (with the entire reconnaissance team) and submits a Department of the Army (DA) Form 1711-R (Engineer Reconnaissance Report) and the completed overlays.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Completed the overlay with all the appropriate symbols recorded at their geographical location.</li> <li>b. Ensured that the route classification formula was present and located over the title block.</li> <li>c. Filled out DA Form 1711-R as required by the commander.</li> <li>d. Recorded the measurements on the overlay in meters.</li> </ul> <p>* 6. The element leader briefed the commander, S2, S3, or TF engineer on the reconnaissance mission and submitted the overlays, reports, and engineer reconnaissance report to the commander within the prescribed time on the OPORD.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Provided the required reconnaissance forms to the commander within the time specified in the FRAGO or OPORD.</li> <li>b. Provided the required overlays to the commander within the time specified in the FRAGO or OPORD.</li> </ul>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title
052-196-3010	Conduct an Engineer Reconnaissance
071-311-2007	Engage Targets With an M16-Series Rifle
071-326-5505	Issue an Oral Operation Order

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title
05-1-0014	Conduct Engineer Intelligence Collection
05-2-0005	Plan and Direct an Engineer Reconnaissance
05-2-0410	Manage Engineer Reconnaissance Operations
05-2-7008	Prepare an Operation Order (OPORD) (Company/Platoon)

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** Mobility and Countermobility Section  
Assault and Barrier Platoon Headquarters

**TASK:** Perform a Target Reconnaissance (05-3-1019)  
(FM 5-170) (DA FORM 2203-R) (FM 5-250)  
(FM 5-34)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The element receives an order containing the grid coordinates of a potential demolition target and the depth of the obstacle. The area is secured, but enemy contact with squad-size elements is possible. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The element prepares and submits the demolition reconnaissance record, including all information to successfully execute the target. Locations are accurate within 10 meters. The measurements, dimensions, and explosive calculations are accurate within 10 percent. The squad completes the reconnaissance within the timeline specified in the operation order (OPORD). The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The element leader prepares for the reconnaissance.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Issued a warning order (WO) to ensure that subordinates knew the mission, the time and place to receive their orders, the departure time, and the preparatory actions to conduct while the plan was being made.</li> <li>b. Conducted a map reconnaissance to determine the routes and distances to and from the target.</li> <li>c. Performed a time estimate to determine how much time to spend on-site and completed Department of the Army (DA) Form 2203-R (Demolition Reconnaissance Record).</li> <li>d. Formulated a reconnaissance plan or checklist to ensure that the squad obtained all the required information from the site and all essential equipment was taken.</li> <li>e. Determined the availability of explosives.</li> <li>f. Briefed subordinates using the five-paragraph order format and ensured that each squad member knew precisely what to do.</li> <li>g. Covered site security and noise and light disciplines.</li> </ul> <p>2. The element conducts the reconnaissance and obtains the required sketches and information.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Obtained a situation map (SITMAP) sketch depicting the position of the target, the surrounding terrain features (such as hills, power lines, and rivers), and the coordinates of objects keyed to existing maps (such as intersections and towns).</li> <li>b. Obtained a plan and a side-view sketch of the demolition target showing the overall dimensions and the lines of cut for the following:               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) A bridge that showed the overall dimensions of its critical members and the location of each line of cut.</li> <li>(2) A crater that showed the length and width of the target and the thickness of the wearing surface. A sketch that showed the depth and type of subgrade to determine the effect on the borehole depth of the side sketch.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p><b>NOTE: The sketch also showed the length and location of each row of craters placed at a 45° angle to the axis of approach. The boreholes were offset from one another when the lines of cut were placed in depth.</b></p> <p>(3) An abatis that showed the depth and width of the target.</p> <p><b>NOTE: The side-view sketch stated the approximate height of the trees along with their average spacing and diameter (such as trees with a diameter of 50 to 60 centimeters were spaced 3 to 3.7 meters apart).</b></p> <p>c. Obtained a plan and a cross section sketch of the demolition target showing the details of any demolition chambers, lines of cut, location of charges, accurate dimensions of the members to be cut, the quantities of explosives, and the method of ignition for the following:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) A bridge that showed the location of all the lines of cut and the location of each charge within the line of cut. The charge calculations and placements only need to be shown once for similar members being cut. The method of attaching the charge was shown. More than one cross section sketch might have been required, depending on the number of lines of cut.</li> <li>(2) A crater that showed the position and the depth of each borehole, the quantity of explosives per borehole, and the method of priming for any craters.</li> <li>(3) An abatis that showed the 45° angle to the road where the charges were placed and the separation between the trees to cut was 3 to 4 meters. Showed a sketch of a single tree that demonstrated the charge calculation and the placement for the test shots that were to be performed on the trees having the average diameter of those found in the line of cut.</li> </ol> <p><b>NOTE: If time and the tactical situation permitted, the squad conducted test shots on the reconnaissance and then measured and marked all trees to be cut. If this was done, the charge calculation and placement were sketched once for each diameter requiring a different quantity of explosives.</b></p> <p>d. Ensured that the sketch showed the firing circuits and the firing points. The complete circuit was required and included the charges, branch lines, ring mains, and initiation sets. The sketch—</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Contained a list of the quantity and type of required explosives.</li> <li>(2) Contained a list of all required demolition equipment and transportation.</li> <li>(3) Included an estimate of the time and labor required to prepare the demolition to state 1.</li> <li>(4) Included an estimate of the time and labor required to prepare the demolition to state 2.</li> <li>(5) Included an estimate of the time, labor, and equipment required to bypass the obstacle (specified location and method) and the required supplementary obstacles, such as mines.</li> </ol> <p>* 3. The element leader notifies higher headquarters (HQ) when the on-site portion of the mission is complete.</p> <p>* 4. The element leader completes DA Form 2203-R and submits it to higher HQ within the time specified in the orders.</p>		



TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

#### SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
052-193-3054	Prepare a Demolition Reconnaissance Report
052-193-3055	Prepare or Compile a Nonnuclear-Demolition Target Folder
052-193-3071	Determine the Method of a Bridge Attack
052-194-3500	Conduct a Patrol
052-195-4050	Prepare Engineer Estimates
052-196-3065	Prepare a Route Reconnaissance Overlay
052-196-3150	Conduct Route Reconnaissance
052-196-4012	Conduct Platoon Reconnaissance Missions

#### SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
05-1-6001	Request a Standard Geospatial Product
05-2-7003	Receive and Distribute Throughput Supplies
05-2-7008	Prepare an Operation Order (OPORD) (Company/Platoon)
05-3-0202	Disable a Bridge With Explosives
05-3-0407	Perform an Engineer Reconnaissance
05-3-2017	Create a Crater Obstacle Using Explosives
05-6-0003	Prepare an Engineer Annex

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** Assault and Barrier Platoon Headquarters  
 Survivability Section  
 Mobility and Countermobility Section  
 Assault and Obstacle Platoon  
 Equipment Platoon Headquarters  
 Support Platoon Headquarters  
 Construction Platoon Headquarters  
 Two General Construction Sections  
 Two Engineer Platoons  
 Six Engineer Squads  
 Equipment Section

**TASK:** Perform a Technical Reconnaissance (05-3-1020)  
 (FM 5-170) (DA FORM 1248) (DA FORM 1249)  
 (DA FORM 1250) (DA FORM 1251) (DA FORM 1252)  
 (FM 3-21.71) (FM 5-34) (FM 7-7)  
 (FM 7-8)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The element leader receives a fragmentary order (FRAGO) or an operation order (OPORD) to conduct a technical reconnaissance to locate obstructions along a proposed movement route. The digital units have completed functionality checks, and systems are operational. The area is secured, but enemy contact is possible. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The reconnaissance team conducts a technical reconnaissance to verify the technical data along the main supply route (MSR). The following Department of the Army (DA) forms are used: DA Forms 1248 (Road Reconnaissance Report), 1249 (Bridge Reconnaissance Report), 1250 (Tunnel Reconnaissance Report), 1251 (Ford Reconnaissance Report), and 1252 (Ferry Reconnaissance Report) and contain the required information. There are no time restraints, unless otherwise specified in the FRAGO or the OPORD. The digital units send and receive reports using frequency-modulated (FM) or digital means. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The element leader receives a FRAGO or an OPORD to conduct a technical reconnaissance.</p> <p><b>NOTE: The digital units request intelligence information from higher headquarters (HQ) through All-Source Analysis System (ASAS) and Digital Topographic Support System (DTSS) products.</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Coordinated through the Operations and Training Officer (US Army) (S3) or the task force (TF) engineer for a ground or aviation security force.</li> <li>b. Requested an enemy situation brief from the Intelligence Officer (US Army) (S2).</li> <li>c. Conducted a thorough map reconnaissance, including the start points (SPs), release points (RPs), and the route.</li> <li>d. Reviewed the unit standing operating procedure (SOP) or tactical standing operating procedure (TACSOP).</li> <li>e. Met the commander's intent and requirements for the area or target of the reconnaissance.</li> <li>f. Briefed subelement leaders on the reconnaissance mission using the five-paragraph order format.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>g. Conducted troop-leading procedures.</p> <p>h. Conducted precombat checks (PCCs) and precombat inspections (PCIs).</p> <p>i. Obtained the required equipment, forms, and material for the reconnaissance.</p> <p>2. The reconnaissance team starts movement on the technical reconnaissance.</p> <p>a. Moved along the specified route.</p> <p>b. Maintained communications with the supported element.</p> <p>3. The reconnaissance team conducts a bridge classification reconnaissance.</p> <p>a. Gathered the required information to complete DA Form 1249.</p> <p>b. Completed DA Form 1249 with the required information.</p> <p>4. The reconnaissance team conducts a ferry reconnaissance.</p> <p>a. Gathered the required information to complete DA Form 1252.</p> <p>b. Completed DA Form 1252 with the required information.</p> <p>5. The reconnaissance team conducts a ford reconnaissance.</p> <p>a. Gathered the required information to complete DA Form 1251.</p> <p>b. Completed DA Form 1251 with the required information.</p> <p>6. The reconnaissance team conducts a road reconnaissance.</p> <p>a. Gathered the required information to complete DA Form 1248.</p> <p>b. Completed DA Form 1248 with the required information.</p> <p>7. The reconnaissance team conducts a tunnel reconnaissance or an underpass reconnaissance.</p> <p>a. Gathered the required information to complete DA Form 1250.</p> <p>b. Completed DA Form 1250 with the required information.</p> <p><b>NOTE: Not all types of reconnaissance may be applicable to the commander's intent or requirements.</b></p> <p>8. The reconnaissance team starts movement to the assembly area (AA).</p> <p><b>NOTE: The digital units send reports, orders, and digital overlays to update the common operational picture (COP).</b></p> <p>* 9. The S3, S2, or TF engineer debriefs the element leader and the reconnaissance team.</p> <p>*10. The element leader provides completed DA Forms 1248 through 1252 as required to higher HQ or the requesting unit according to the SOP.</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

### SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
052-196-2002	Determine the Radius of Curves
052-196-2101	Determine the Percent of Slope
052-196-2103	Determine Gap Width
052-196-3030	Prepare a Road Reconnaissance Report
052-196-3031	Prepare a Tunnel Reconnaissance Report
052-196-3032	Prepare a Ford Reconnaissance Report
052-196-3033	Prepare a Bridge Reconnaissance Report
052-196-3035	Prepare an Engineer Reconnaissance Report
052-196-3065	Prepare a Route Reconnaissance Overlay
052-196-3150	Conduct Route Reconnaissance
052-196-4012	Conduct Platoon Reconnaissance Missions
052-196-4022	Determine the Rapid Field Classification of a Fixed Bridge
052-198-2007	Classify Vehicles Using Expedient Methods

### SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
05-1-0081	Prepare an Operation Order (OPORD)
05-1-6001	Request a Standard Geospatial Product
05-2-0018	Conduct Report Procedures
07-2-1136.05-T02A	Occupy an Assembly Area (AA)

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** Assault and Barrier Platoon Headquarters  
 Survivability Section  
 Mobility and Countermobility Section  
 Six Engineer Squads  
 Equipment Section  
 Two Engineer Platoons

**TASK:** Support a Tactical Reconnaissance (05-3-1022)  
 (FM 5-170) (FM 3-21.71) (FM 3-34)  
 (FM 5-34) (FM 7-7) (FM 7-8)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The element leader receives a fragmentary order (FRAGO) or an operations order (OPORD) to conduct a tactical reconnaissance for gathering essential data and intelligence in the new area of operations (AO). The area is unsecured, and enemy contact is possible. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The Operations and Training Officer (US Army) (S3), Intelligence Officer (US Army) (S2), or task force (TF) engineer, along with the commander, prepare the reconnaissance and surveillance (R&S) plan. The reconnaissance teams verify and accurately report the intelligence requirements (IR) and the priority intelligence requirements (PIR) to the S3, S2, or TF engineer. The element completes the reconnaissance within the time specified in the FRAGO or the OPORD. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The element leader receives a FRAGO or an OPORD to support a tactical reconnaissance.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Coordinated through the S3 or the TF engineer for the ground security force or the aviation security force.</li> <li>b. Requested an enemy situation brief from the S2.</li> <li>c. Conducted a thorough map reconnaissance, including the start points (SPs), release points (RPs), and route and terrain.</li> <li>d. Reviewed the unit tactical standing operating procedure (TACSOP) or standing operating procedure (SOP).</li> <li>e. Met the commander's intent and requirements for the area, route, or zone reconnaissance (observation and fields of fire, avenues of approach, key terrain, obstacles and movement, and cover and concealment [OAKOC]).</li> </ul> <p>* 2. The element leader briefs the subunit leaders on the reconnaissance mission.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Used the five-paragraph order format, to include—                         <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Whether the unit was mounted or dismounted.</li> <li>(2) The objectives of the reconnaissance based on the commander's requirements and the reconnaissance checklist.</li> <li>(3) Time and distance factors.</li> <li>(4) Noise and light discipline.</li> <li>(5) The methods of communication.</li> <li>(6) The action taken upon enemy contact.</li> </ul> </li> <li>b. Conducted troop-leading procedures.</li> <li>c. Conducted precombat checks (PCCs) and precombat inspections (PCIs).</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>d. Obtained the required equipment, forms, and material for the reconnaissance.</p> <p>3. The reconnaissance team supports the area reconnaissance and provides critical information.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Reconnoitered all terrain.</li> <li>b. Inspected and classified all bridges.</li> <li>c. Located the suitable fords or crossing sites near all bridges.</li> <li>d. Inspected and classified all overpasses, underpasses, and culverts.</li> <li>e. Located the obstacles.</li> <li>f. Located the bypasses around built-up areas, obstacles, and contaminated areas.</li> <li>g. Located and reported all enemy forces.</li> <li>h. Provided current and projected enemy situation.</li> </ul> <p>4. The reconnaissance team supports a zone reconnaissance and provides critical information.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Reconnoitered all key terrain.</li> <li>b. Inspected and classified all key bridges.</li> <li>c. Located the suitable fords or crossing sites near all bridges.</li> <li>d. Inspected and classified all overpasses, underpasses, and culverts.</li> <li>e. Located the obstacles in the zone and determined how to reduce the obstacles (assets and time).</li> <li>f. Located the bypasses around built-up areas, obstacles, and contaminated areas.</li> <li>g. Reported any sightings of enemy forces.</li> </ul> <p>5. The reconnaissance team supports the route reconnaissance and provides critical information.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Determined the trafficability of the route.</li> <li>b. Reconnoitered the limit of direct-fire range and the terrain dominating the route.</li> <li>c. Reconnoitered all built-up areas, and identified— <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) The bypass routes.</li> <li>(2) The construction supplies and equipment.</li> <li>(3) The ambush sites.</li> <li>(4) Any evidence of booby traps.</li> <li>(5) Suitable sites for command and control facilities and combat service support (CSS) facilities.</li> </ul> </li> <li>d. Reconnoitered all lateral routes to the limit of direct-fire range.</li> <li>e. Inspected and classified all bridges.</li> <li>f. Located the fords or crossing sites near all bridges. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Determined the fordability and located nearby bypasses to support the combat and CSS units.</li> <li>(2) Marked the bridge classifications.</li> <li>(3) Marked the bypass route.</li> </ul> </li> <li>g. Inspected and classified all overpasses, underpasses, and culverts.</li> <li>h. Reconnoitered all defiles.</li> <li>i. Located the obstacles.</li> <li>j. Located the bypasses around built-up areas, obstacles, and contaminated areas.</li> <li>k. Reported route information.</li> <li>l. Located and reported all enemy forces that could influence movement along the route.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
6. The S3, S2, or TF engineer debriefs the reconnaissance team. The unit TACSOP or SOP determines the requirements for the debriefing.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

### SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
052-192-1242	Locate Mine and Booby Trap Indicators by Visual Means
052-193-3054	Prepare a Demolition Reconnaissance Report
052-193-3071	Determine the Method of a Bridge Attack
052-196-3010	Conduct an Engineer Reconnaissance
052-196-3030	Prepare a Road Reconnaissance Report
052-196-3031	Prepare a Tunnel Reconnaissance Report
052-196-3032	Prepare a Ford Reconnaissance Report
052-196-3033	Prepare a Bridge Reconnaissance Report
052-196-3035	Prepare an Engineer Reconnaissance Report
052-196-3065	Prepare a Route Reconnaissance Overlay
052-196-3150	Conduct Route Reconnaissance
052-196-4012	Conduct Platoon Reconnaissance Missions
052-196-4022	Determine the Rapid Field Classification of a Fixed Bridge
052-225-2020	Recon a Potential Armored-Vehicle-Launched Bridge (AVLB) Launch Site
052-238-1532	Perform a River Reconnaissance
052-238-3430	Supervise a River Reconnaissance Team
052-238-4507	Coordinate River Reconnaissance Missions

### SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
05-1-6001	Request a Standard Geospatial Product
05-2-7008	Prepare an Operation Order (OPORD) (Company/Platoon)

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

- ELEMENTS:** Battalion Headquarters  
 Company Headquarters  
 S2 Section  
 Communications Section  
 Assault and Barrier Platoon Headquarters  
 Survivability Section  
 Mobility and Countermobility Section  
 Three Brigade Engineer Sections  
 Food Services Section  
 Maintenance Section  
 Assault and Obstacle Platoon  
 Food Service Section  
 Equipment Platoon Headquarters  
 Maintenance Platoon Headquarters  
 Three Company Maintenance Teams  
 Support Platoon Headquarters  
 Transportation Section  
 Unit Maintenance Section  
 Direct-Support Maintenance Section  
 Direct-Support Maintenance Supply Section  
 Construction Platoon Headquarters  
 Two General Construction Sections  
 Dump Truck Section  
 Direct Support Maintenance Supply Section  
 Two Engineer Platoons  
 Six Engineer Squads  
 Equipment Section

**TASK:** Process Captured Documents and Equipment (19-3-3105.05-T01A)  
 (FM 3-19.40)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The enemy equipment and documents are captured. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The element processes all captured equipment and documents based on disposition instructions and within the time standards established by higher headquarters (HQ). The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
1. The element tags all captured equipment and documents. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Described the type of equipment and documents, such as maps, photos, rifles, and radios.</li> <li>b. Annotated the date and time of the capture.</li> <li>c. Provided the place (grid coordinates) of the capture.</li> <li>d. Noted the capturing unit.</li> <li>e. Furnished the circumstances of the capture.</li> <li>f. Identified the prisoner's name on the tag if the items were taken from enemy prisoners of war (EPWs).</li> </ul>		



TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 2. The element leader reports the capture of equipment and documents to higher HQ. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Described the type of equipment and documents.</li> <li>b. Stated the date and time of the capture.</li> <li>c. Identified the capturing unit.</li> <li>d. Furnished the place (grid coordinates) of the capture.</li> </ul> * 3. The element leader disposes of the equipment and documents according to the guidance received from higher HQ. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Destroyed, secured, evacuated, or abandoned the equipment.</li> <li>b. Evacuated the documents through the chain of command to intelligence personnel.</li> </ul>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
05-2-0018	Conduct Report Procedures

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

- ELEMENTS:** Battalion Headquarters  
Company Headquarters  
S1 Section  
S2 Section  
S3 Section  
S4 Section  
Division Engineer Section  
Communications Section  
Battalion Maintenance Section  
Assault and Barrier Platoon Headquarters  
Survivability Section  
Mobility and Countermobility Section  
Combat Medical Section  
Three Brigade Engineer Sections  
Unit Ministry Section  
Food Services Section  
Command Section  
Maintenance Section  
Assault and Obstacle Platoon  
Food Service Section  
Unit Ministry Team  
Equipment Platoon Headquarters  
Combat Medic Section  
S2 and S3 Section  
Maintenance Platoon Headquarters  
Headquarters and Headquarters Company Maintenance Section  
The Army Maintenance Management System and Prescribed Load List Section  
Three Company Maintenance Teams  
Recovery Section  
Support Platoon Headquarters  
Transportation Section  
Unit Maintenance Section  
Direct-Support Maintenance Section  
Direct-Support Maintenance Supply Section  
Construction Platoon Headquarters  
Two General Construction Sections  
Dump Truck Section  
Treatment Team  
Ambulance Team  
Combat Medic Team  
Direct Support Maintenance Supply Section  
Two Engineer Platoons  
Six Engineer Squads  
Equipment Section

**TASK:** Maintain Operations Security (OPSEC) (71-2-0332.05-T01A)

(AR 530-1)  
(FM 24-35)

(AR 380-5)  
(FM 3-19.30)

(FM 24-33)  
(FM 34-60)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The element is operating where the enemy can detect it. The enemy can employ electronic-warfare (EW) measures and air and ground reconnaissance elements. The element can also

use the local populace and enemy intelligence agencies. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The element prevents the enemy from learning its strength, dispositions, intentions, and any essential elements of friendly information (EEFI) or from surprising the element main body. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. Leaders check or perform information security measures.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Disseminated the information on a need-to-know basis.</li> <li>b. Prohibited fraternization with civilians.</li> <li>c. Conducted alerts, deployment preparations, and loading operations to minimize detection.</li> <li>d. Ensured that maps contained only the minimum-essential information.</li> <li>e. Conducted inspections and gave briefings to ensure that personnel did not carry any details of military activities in their personal materials, such as letters, diaries, notes, drawings, sketches, or photographs.</li> <li>f. Sanitized all planning areas and positions before departure.</li> </ul> <p>2. The element performs camouflage discipline.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Concealed and camouflaged with natural materials, whenever possible, to prevent ground or air observation.</li> <li>b. Moved on covered and concealed routes.</li> <li>c. Covered all reflective surfaces and unit markings with nonreflective material, such as cloth, mud, or a camouflage stick.</li> <li>d. Covered or removed all vehicle markings.</li> </ul> <p>3. The element camouflages individual positions and equipment to prevent detection from 35 meters or greater and camouflages vehicles to prevent detection from 100 meters or greater.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensured that the foliage was not stripped near the unit position.</li> <li>b. Camouflaged earth berms.</li> <li>c. Ensured that camouflage nets were erected.</li> <li>d. Evaded crossing near footpaths, trails, and roads.</li> <li>e. Erased any tracks leading into the positions.</li> <li>f. Ensured that the vehicles parked in the shadows were moved as the shadows shifted.</li> <li>g. Replaced and replenished the camouflage.</li> <li>h. Evaded movement in the area to prevent ground and air detection.</li> </ul> <p>4. The element employs the company net control station (NCS) and enforces communications security (COMSEC).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Enforced signal operation instructions (SOI) and signal supplemental instructions (SSI) procedures, such as challenges, authentications decoding, call signs, and frequencies.</li> <li>b. Ensured that the monitored traffic did not reveal information to the enemy.</li> <li>c. Employed approved radiotelephone operator (RATELO) procedures.</li> <li>d. Followed COMSEC procedures, such as keeping transmissions short, using the lowest possible power settings, using directional antennas, changing transmission patterns, and maintaining radio silence.</li> <li>e. Followed procedures for operations during jamming.</li> <li>f. Made maximum use of the messenger and wire service.</li> <li>g. Used visual signals according to the unit standing operating procedure (SOP).</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
5. The element employs physical security measures. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Employed observation posts (OPs).</li> <li>b. Employed counterreconnaissance patrols.</li> <li>c. Followed stand-to procedures.</li> <li>d. Employed mines and obstacles, when permitted.</li> <li>e. Tied in with adjacent units for coordination and fire.</li> <li>f. Used the challenge and password.</li> <li>g. Limited access into the area of the unit.</li> <li>h. Safeguarded weapons, ammunition, sensitive items, and classified documents.</li> <li>i. Picked up litter.</li> <li>j. Employed air guards.</li> </ul> * 6. All leaders enforce noise and light discipline.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title
05-2-3002	Camouflage Vehicles and Equipment
05-2-3008	Emplace a Hasty Protective Row Minefield
05-3-3007	Remove a Hasty Protective Row Minefield

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** Two Engineer Platoons  
 Six Engineer Squads  
 Company Headquarters  
 Command Section  
 Battalion Headquarters  
 Assault and Barrier Platoon Headquarters  
 Assault and Obstacle Platoon  
 Combat Medic Team

**TASK:** Reorganize as Infantry (05-1-0011)  
 (FM 7-10) (FM 3-21.71) (FM 7-8)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 (Circle)  
**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The engineer command and control (C2) commander directs subordinate engineer elements to reorganize as infantry. A time schedule is provided in an operations order (OPORD). This task should not be trained in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** A subordinate element reorganizes into combat trains and combat elements. The element is prepared to conduct infantry operations within the specified time requirements.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The element commander initiates a reorganization.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Issued a warning order (WO) and conducted troop-leading procedures.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Developed a tentative plan based on the mission, enemy, terrain, troops, time available, and civilian considerations (METT-TC), while the subordinate units prepared for infantry operations.</li> <li>(2) Conducted a reconnaissance in order to complete the plan.</li> <li>(3) Issued the completed order, verbally, in a fragmentary order (FRAGO) or an OPORD format.</li> <li>(4) Conducted the appropriate equipment and troop inspections.</li> </ul> </li> <li>b. Evaluated the status of the ongoing engineer missions and issued instructions for the termination of those missions.</li> <li>c. Organized the company into two elements (combat and combat trains), designated the composition of each element, and determined the assembly location and time for each element.</li> <li>d. Assigned C2 responsibilities for each combat element.</li> </ul> <p>* 2. The element commander organizes the combat elements.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Retained the existing organizational structure of the engineer platoon as the basic fighting element.</li> </ul> <p><b>NOTE: Elements are configured internally according to the unit standing operating procedure (SOP).</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>b. Coordinated with battalion personnel for augmentation from maneuver and fire support elements.</li> <li>c. Coordinated with the augmentation forces, prepared plans to incorporate them into the combat element, and determined their missions.</li> <li>d. Coordinated the command and support relationships and the combat service support (CSS) requirements and procedures.</li> <li>e. Assembled the combat element in the required configuration, at the correct location, and within the designated time.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 3. The element commander organizes the combat trains element.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Coordinated with the battalion C2 for augmentation from combat support elements.</li> <li>b. Coordinated with the augmentation forces, prepared plans, incorporated them into the combat trains, and determined the—                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Missions of the augmentation forces.</li> <li>(2) C2 procedures.</li> <li>(3) CSS requirements and procedures.</li> <li>(4) Requirements for additional Class V supplies required for organic weapons and augmenting mortars, including antitank systems.</li> </ul> </li> <li>c. Set up material storage areas containing vehicle turnaround areas and camouflaged the areas according to the tactical situation.</li> <li>d. Determined the disposition of engineer equipment and operators.</li> <li>e. Assembled combat trains elements in the required configuration, at the correct location, and within the time designated by the commander.</li> </ul> <p>* 4. The element commander designates the composition of combat and combat trains elements.</p> <p>* 5. The element commander reports that the unit is prepared to receive infantry missions.</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5		TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title
052-901-9101	Conduct Troop Leading Procedures at the Company/Team Level

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title
05-1-0015	Fight as Infantry
05-1-0017	Integrate Augmentation Support
05-2-0018	Conduct Report Procedures
05-2-0080	Coordinate the Location of Class IV and Class V Supply Points
05-2-0100	Coordinate the Synchronization and Integration of Fire Support (FS)
05-2-3002	Camouflage Vehicles and Equipment
05-2-7008	Prepare an Operation Order (OPORD) (Company/Platoon)

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

- ELEMENTS:** Battalion Headquarters  
 Company Headquarters  
 Division Engineer Section  
 Battalion Maintenance Section  
 Assault and Barrier Platoon Headquarters  
 Survivability Section  
 Mobility and Countermobility Section  
 Three Brigade Engineer Sections  
 Command Section  
 Assault and Obstacle Platoon  
 Equipment Platoon Headquarters  
 Headquarters and Headquarters Company Maintenance Section  
 The Army Maintenance Management System and Prescribed Load List Section  
 Three Company Maintenance Teams  
 Support Platoon Headquarters  
 Transportation Section  
 Construction Platoon Headquarters  
 Two General Construction Sections  
 Dump Truck Section  
 Treatment Team  
 Two Engineer Platoons

**TASK:** Fight as Infantry (05-1-0015)  
 (FM 7-10) (FM 7-7) (FM 7-8)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)  
**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** An element has received an operation order (OPORD) to reorganize as infantry and is preparing to engage in combat operations. The element turns in and draws necessary equipment to conduct infantry operations. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The element command and control (C2) organizes the subordinate elements for combat and conducts defensive or retrograde operations according to higher headquarters (HQ) directives. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The element leader conducts troop-leading procedures after receiving the OPORD to fight as infantry.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Analyzed the mission and planned the use of any available time following the one-third, two-thirds time rule.</li> <li>b. Issued a warning order (WO) and ensured that all of the subordinate leaders were kept informed of their duties.</li> <li>c. Consulted with the subordinate leaders and made tentative plans.</li> <li>d. Initiated the necessary movement to prepare the subordinate units for the upcoming mission and to incorporate them into the upcoming mission.</li> </ul> <p><b>NOTE: The element leader uses fragmentary orders (FRAGOs) to initiate these actions.</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>e. Reconnoitered the area of operations (AO).</li> <li>f. Incorporated any additional details concerning the operation (following a reconnaissance mission) and completed the plan.</li> <li>g. Supervised the preparation and execution of the mission.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>h. Issued the order for the mission in verbal or written form.</p> <p>* 2. The element leader orders the company to conduct defensive operations.</p> <p>* 3. The element leader posts security elements to provide local security.</p> <p>4. The element identifies factors of the mission.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Identified the key terrain.</li> <li>b. Identified the likely avenue of approach.</li> <li>c. Identified the location of the company battle position (BP), the company target reference points (TRPs), and the engagement area (EA).</li> <li>d. Determined the limits of the company BP and the company or team sectors of fire.</li> <li>e. Determined the artillery preplotted targets.</li> <li>f. Determined the primary and supplementary firing positions that—               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Enabled the element to deliver effective fire on TRPs and EAs at optimal ranges.</li> <li>(2) Provided long-range observation and interlocking fire between the adjacent units.</li> <li>(3) Provided a line of sight to other elements or team BPs to provide mutually supporting fire.</li> <li>(4) Provided cover and concealment.</li> </ul> </li> <li>g. Covered and concealed the routes between the primary and supplementary firing positions.</li> <li>h. Covered and concealed the routes into and out of the primary BP to subsequent BPs.</li> <li>i. Identified the locations of observation posts (OPs) to provide observation of the platoon-sized elements sector of fire.</li> <li>j. Identified the location of existing obstacles and the positions for reinforcing the obstacles.</li> </ul> <p>* 5. The element leader develops a rough draft of a fire plan.</p> <p>* 6. The element leader returns to the assembly area (AA) or moves the company C2 to the rear of the BP, meets with the subordinate leaders, and issues an OPORD.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Issued an OPORD for occupying the BP using the rough draft of the fire plan or a terrain model as a guide (in the AA).</li> <li>b. Issued an OPORD for occupying the BP from a vantage point using the rough draft of the fire plan as a guide (in the BP).</li> </ul> <p>7. The element moves to the rear and flanks of the assigned BP.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Moved to a hidden position at the rear of the BP and executed actions at the halt.</li> <li>b. Manned the OPs of the company.</li> </ul> <p>* 8. The element leader issues a five-paragraph oral OPORD from a vantage point using the rough sketch of the fire plan.</p> <p>* 9. The element leaders return to their units and use hand-and-arm signals to have the drivers start their engines.</p> <p>*10. The element leader issues orders for occupying the BP.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ordered the platoon leader to position the vehicles, without leaving tracks, in fighting positions that were difficult for the enemy to detect.</li> </ul>		



TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>b. Checked the consolidated range cards and the platoon fire plan sketches to ensure that there were no weak points between the platoon or the flank companies.</p> <p>c. Finalized the fire plan in relation to the terrain to ensure that the EA was set on the enemy avenue of approach and covered by mutual-supporting, interlocking fire from platoons and located between flank companies.</p> <p>d. Coordinated with the flank companies to ensure that they were covered.</p> <p>e. Forwarded the company fire plan to the brigade combat team (BCT) commander for a final check of mutual-supporting, interlocking fire that covers the EA.</p> <p>f. Received reports from the platoon leaders regarding established platoon BPs and reported the information to higher HQ.</p> <p><b>NOTE: The reports are submitted within the defend-by time stated in the OPORD. The defend-by time is a calculated estimate of when the enemy may attack. The enemy may attack before or after this time.</b></p> <p>g. Ordered the platoons to continue to improve their BP.</p> <p>h. Referred to the mission, enemy, terrain, troops, time available, and civilian considerations (METT-TC) factors.</p> <p><b>NOTE: Do the most critical tasks first in case the enemy attacks before the defend-by time.</b></p> <p>*11. The element leader performs tactical planning based on the METT-TC factors and plans for a deliberate or hasty occupation of a BP in a built-up area.</p> <p>a. Conducted a reconnaissance of the BP and analyzed the threat force method of attacking a built-up area.</p> <p>b. Analyzed the BP and identified the following:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) The location of the checkpoints, phase lines, and building numbers according to the OPORD or FRAGO.</li> <li>(2) The observation sites and fields of fire on the enemy avenue of approach.</li> <li>(3) The primary, alternate, and supplementary firing positions on the perimeter of the built-up area.</li> <li>(4) The positions that would provide cover and concealment.</li> <li>(5) The location of the OPs that would provide 360° security for a three-dimensional battlefield.</li> <li>(6) The covered and concealed routes into and out of the firing positions and the BPs that could not be blocked by a blowdown from structures.</li> <li>(7) The location of obstacles (existing and reinforcing), buildings with basements, fire hazards, sewers, viaducts, and bridges.</li> <li>(8) The structures that dominated the built-up area.</li> <li>(9) The locations of the firing positions, in depth, throughout the built-up area.</li> <li>(10) The areas to integrate the dismounted infantry into the company or team defense.</li> </ol> <p>c. Coordinated with adjacent units for dismounted support, as necessary, and ensured that the units were tied-in with the company or the team forces.</p> <p>d. Upgraded the hasty defense and improved the BP, as time permitted.</p> <p>e. Planned for indirect fire in the EA and along possible avenues of approach in front of and behind obstacles.</p> <p><b>NOTE: The fires and effects coordinator (FEC) plans the smoke.</b></p> <p>*12. The element leader develops a company or team fire plan.</p> <p>a. Developed a fire plan as part of a hasty or deliberate BP occupation.</p> <p>b. Located the platoons and oriented the company or team.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>c. Developed a fire plan that included the company or team sector, the platoon and OPs, obstacles, indirect-fire targets, and final protective fire (FPF), if allocated.</p> <p>d. Ensured that the fire plans of the platoon were received in a timely manner. Made an updated copy of the fire plan for the executive officer (XO) and the platoon leaders, as time permitted.</p> <p>e. Verified the plan by conducting rehearsals for counterattack missions based on METT-TC factors.</p> <p>f. Upgraded the fire plan, to include the fire plans for the platoon supplementary firing positions.</p> <p>g. Forwarded a copy of the fire plan to higher HQ.</p> <p><b>NOTE: Check the complete direct- and indirect-fire plan as if you are the enemy attacking the position. Look for weak points in the defense, and make corrections.</b></p> <p>*13. The element and platoon leaders organize the EA.</p> <p>a. Reconnoitered the EA (physically), covering as many options as possible to mass fire. Include the—</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Enemy avenue of approach.</li> <li>(2) Locations of existing and reinforcing obstacles.</li> <li>(3) Key terrain.</li> <li>(4) TRPs.</li> <li>(5) Artillery preplots.</li> </ol> <p>b. Organized the EA to mass direct and indirect fire.</p> <p>c. Organized the fire in the EA, 800 to 2,000 meters from the defending company or team, based on METT-TC factors.</p> <p>d. Used fire to interlock.</p> <p><b>NOTE: The platoons and the company or team mutually support each other with direct fire.</b></p> <p>e. Positioned the company or team around the EA.</p> <p><b>NOTE: One company or platoon is centered in the EAs, and one is positioned on both the right and left flanks.</b></p> <p>f. Ensured that the TRPs were marked for easy reference and used the existing terrain when possible.</p> <p>g. Shifted platoons or firing positions to cover the dead space and weak points.</p> <p>h. Developed an obstacle plan that—</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Tied obstacles into the existing terrain features.</li> <li>(2) Slowed the enemy movement.</li> <li>(3) Concealed obstacles from the enemy.</li> <li>(4) Positioned obstacles on the enemy main avenue of approach.</li> <li>(5) Covered obstacles by directing artillery to the front and rear.</li> <li>(6) Placed obstacles in the EA so the personnel in the rear and on the flanks could fire simultaneously into the front of the enemy regiment using direct and indirect massed fire. Repositioned personnel who were stopped in front of the obstacles.</li> </ol> <p>*14. The element leader briefs the subordinate element leader on the EAs in each sector and on any changes made to the original.</p> <p>*15. The element leader executes the company defensive mission.</p> <p>a. Acknowledged the report or mission from the battalion task force (TF) commander.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>b. Analyzed the spot report (SPOTREP) or the mission using METT-TC factors. Determined the following:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) The size of the enemy force.</li> <li>(2) The location of the force in relation to the company or team position.</li> <li>(3) The direction of enemy movement.</li> <li>(4) The avenue(s) of approach that the enemy could use to enter the company, team sector, or battalion TF EA.</li> <li>(5) The arrival time of the enemy at the company or team trigger point.</li> </ol> <p>c. Alerted the OPs with a SPOTREP that included all information given by the battalion TF commander and any additional information.</p> <p>d. Directed the element to remain hidden until the OP identified the source of smoke dust columns or sounds.</p> <p>e. Ordered the element to immediately prepare to engage the enemy.</p> <p>f. Received SPOTREPs from platoon leaders.</p> <p>g. Reported to the battalion TF commander.</p> <p>h. Controlled the indirect fire on the enemy as they advanced.</p> <p><b>NOTE: This step may also be performed by the FEC.</b></p> <p>i. Ordered the elements into hull-down positions, gave the order to fire, and returned the elements to the hull-down position after the enemy was destroyed.</p> <p>*16. The subordinate element leaders send SPOTREPs to the element leader containing the number and types of vehicles that reached the company or team breaking point.</p> <p><b>NOTE: The SPOTREP may also contain orders from the battalion TF commander to displace to a subsequent BP.</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Requested FPF, if scheduled.</li> <li>b. Took direction from the battalion TF commander on whether to continue the mission or to displace.</li> </ol> <p><b>NOTE: If the battalion C2 or BCT staff gave no guidance, the element leader coordinates with the flank company or teams and then displaces. The element leader must coordinate with the flank company or teams so that they are not flanked by the enemy.</b></p> <p>*17. The element leader receives a FRAGO from the TF commander ordering a counterattack.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Conducted prepare-to-fire checks.</li> <li>b. Checked the weapon systems for proper loading.</li> </ol> <p>*18. The element leader coordinates with the platoon leaders on continuing the mission.</p> <p>*19. The element leader monitors the mission.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Determined the size, type, and location of the enemy elements.</li> <li>b. Identified the locations of enemy or friendly mines and obstacles.</li> <li>c. Determined the most covered and concealed routes for the company or team to assault the enemy flanks without masking the fire of supporting elements.</li> </ol> <p>*20. The counterattack element leader coordinates the counterattack route with the defending element leaders (if deviating from the OPORD route).</p> <p>*21. The defending element leaders alert their platoons that the counterattacking element is going to attack the enemy from the right flank, left flank, or rear.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>*22. The defending element leaders remind their platoon leaders of the restrictive-fire line (RFL) and to control the direct fire.</p> <p>23. The counterattacking element stays outside of or on the far side of the RFL.</p> <p>*24. The counterattack element leader receives the order to counterattack.</p> <p>a. Ordered the element to begin the counterattack along the identified routes.</p> <p>b. Ordered the element to a position where it could engage the flank or rear of the enemy (for counterattack by fire).</p> <p>c. Ordered the element to move rapidly to the flank or rear position of the enemy trail battalions, close in, and fire at high speed (for counterattack by fire and maneuver).</p> <p><b>NOTE: The tanks, if available, lead and destroy the enemy tanks. The armored personnel carriers (APCs) follow and destroy light vehicles and the dismounted infantry.</b></p> <p>*25. The defending element leaders control the fire behind the RFL.</p> <p>26. The defending elements of the battalion TF continue to fire upon the enemy and halt the enemy elements that advance from the front.</p> <p>27. The element conducts consolidation and reorganization activities to continue the mission.</p> <p>*28. The element leader reports to the higher HQ according to the field standing operating procedure (SOP).</p> <p><b>NOTE: The digital units send reports and unit locations and update the common operational picture (COP) to provide situational awareness (SA) to the units operating in the area.</b></p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title
05-1-0011	Reorganize as Infantry
05-1-4000	Conduct Logistics Operations
05-2-0018	Conduct Report Procedures
05-2-7008	Prepare an Operation Order (OPORD) (Company/Platoon)

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

- ELEMENTS:** Battalion Headquarters  
 Company Headquarters  
 Assault and Barrier Platoon Headquarters  
 Assault and Obstacle Platoon  
 Equipment Platoon Headquarters  
 Maintenance Platoon Headquarters  
 Three Company Maintenance Teams  
 Support Platoon Headquarters  
 Construction Platoon Headquarters  
 Two General Construction Sections  
 Two Engineer Platoons  
 Six Engineer Squads  
 Equipment Section

**TASK:** Conduct Quartering Party Operations (05-2-3007)  
 (FM 3-90.1) (FM 20-32) (FM 5-0)  
 (FM 5-10) (FM 5-170) (FM 5-34)

**ITERATION:** 1M 2M 3M 4M 5M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** A unit is directed to move to a new location and establish an assembly area (AA). This task is always performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The quartering party departs ahead of the main body of the unit and completes all tasks in the new AA before the main body arrives. The unit moves all personnel and equipment to the assigned position within the time specified in the operation order (OPORD).

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The element leader organizes the quartering party.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Selected a noncommissioned officer in charge (NCOIC).</li> <li>b. Selected a security element or coordinated for security to be provided by the supported maneuver unit.</li> <li>c. Selected subordinate-element representatives according to the unit standing operating procedure (SOP).</li> <li>d. Organized a nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) reconnaissance party from the NCOIC, the security element, and the subordinate-element representatives to satisfy the threat conditions.</li> <li>e. Conducted troop-leading procedures.</li> <li>f. Conducted precombat checks (PCCs) and precombat inspections (PCIs).</li> <li>g. Reviewed the unit SOP and tactical SOP (TACSOP).</li> <li>h. Conducted risk management and safety briefings according to the unit standing operating procedure or TACSOP.</li> </ul> <p>2. The quartering party conducts rehearsals on minesweeping operations, actions on contact for the security teams, and movement guide procedures. Conducted a rehearsal using one of the following rehearsal types:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. The confirmation brief.</li> <li>b. The back brief.</li> <li>c. The combined arms.</li> <li>d. The battle drill.</li> <li>e. The SOP.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 3. The quartering party leader conducts a map reconnaissance identifying the start point (SP), potential ambush sites, checkpoints (CPs), rest stops, and the AA.  <b>NOTE: The route used by the quartering party can be the same as the route used by the main body of the unit, as long as security is maintained along the route. If security is not maintained, the main body should conduct a route clearance to the new AA.</b></p> <p>4. The quartering party prepares the vehicles for the convoy.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Performed preventive-maintenance checks and services (PMCS) on vehicles and equipment.</li> <li>b. Loaded vehicles according to the load plan.</li> <li>c. Prepared troop-carrying vehicles for combat survivability by covering the floors with a double layer of sandbags or Kevlar® blankets.</li> <li>d. Maintained a guard force to prevent theft and sabotage.</li> </ul> <p>* 5. The quartering party leader briefs convoy personnel.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Briefed the convoy route, to include the medical- and maintenance-support locations and the destination.</li> <li>b. Provided a strip map to each vehicle commander (or driver).</li> </ul> <p><b>NOTE: The digital units input routes and checkpoints into the Force XXI Battle Command Brigade and Below (FBCB2) System by using an overlay message or a long format message according to the unit TACSOP.</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>c. Briefed the prescribed march rate, the catch-up speed, the distance between the vehicles, and radio frequency.</li> <li>d. Briefed accident and breakdown procedures.</li> <li>e. Briefed limited-visibility movement procedures.</li> <li>f. Briefed the chain of command.</li> </ul> <p>6. The quartering party relocates to the new AA.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Traveled separately from, and ahead of, the main body.</li> <li>b. Reported route limitations and other specified command interest items to the next higher element.</li> </ul> <p>7. The quartering party reconnoiters the area and notifies the commander of the conditions.  <b>NOTE: The digital units update the enemy locations, mined areas, and NBC contaminated areas on the FBCB2 System to update the situational awareness (SA) and common operational picture (COP).</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Reported the position of enemy forces.</li> <li>b. Located the areas containing mines, booby traps, and NBC contamination.</li> <li>c. Evaluated terrain conditions, to include trafficability, cover and concealment, and the availability of adequate routes into and out of the AA.</li> <li>d. Evaluated the communication system required for the AA.</li> </ul> <p>* 8. The quartering party leader notifies the commander of the condition of the area.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Received orders and prepared the area for the main body, if conditions were satisfactory.</li> <li>b. Requested additional instructions from the next higher commander and moved to the alternate AA or found another location and repeated step 7, if conditions were unsatisfactory.</li> </ul> <p>9. The quartering party prepares the area to receive the main body.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Secured the area.</li> <li>b. Marked or removed any obstacles and mines.</li> </ul>		

<b>TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES</b>	<b>GO</b>	<b>NO-GO</b>
c. Organized the area, divided it into sectors for each unit, and selected locations for the command post. d. Improved and marked the entrances, exits, and internal routes. e. Marked vehicle positions.  10. Each element representative from the quartering party guides his element, without delay, from the release point (RP) to the sector of that element of the AA (mounted, if possible).		

<b>TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK</b>							
<b>ITERATION</b>	<b>1M</b>	<b>2M</b>	<b>3M</b>	<b>4M</b>	<b>5M</b>		<b>TOTAL</b>
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
052-192-1128	Locate Mines With the AN/PSS-12 Mine Detector
052-243-1506	Classify a Soil Using the Unified Soil Classification System

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
03-2-3008.05-T01A	Conduct a Radiological, Chemical, or Biological Reconnaissance or Survey
03-3-C201.05-T01A	Prepare for Operations Under Nuclear, Biological, and Chemical (NBC) Conditions
05-2-3003	Defend a Convoy Against a Ground Attack
05-3-1008	Conduct Minesweeping Operations
07-2-1301.05-T01A	Conduct a Convoy

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** Assault and Barrier Platoon Headquarters  
 Mobility and Countermobility Section  
 Assault and Obstacle Platoon  
 Survivability Section  
 Equipment Platoon Headquarters  
 Support Platoon Headquarters  
 Six Engineer Squads  
 Equipment Section  
 Two Engineer Platoons  
 Construction Platoon Headquarters  
 Two General Construction Sections

**TASK:** Disable a Bridge With Explosives (05-3-0202)  
 (FM 5-250) (DA FORM 1355) (DA FORM 2203-R)  
 (FM 5-34) (TM 9-1300-214) (TM 9-1375-213-12)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The element is ordered to execute a preliminary (as opposed to reserve) bridge demolition. A target reconnaissance has been conducted, and a Department of the Army (DA) Form 2203-R (Demolition Reconnaissance Record) and/or a target folder are available. The gap is at least 25 meters wide. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The element prepares the bridge for demolition within plus 25 percent of the time estimated in the reconnaissance report. On order, the element executes the demolition of the bridge to block or delay the enemy. The obstacle stops or delays all enemy wheeled and tracked vehicles. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The element leader obtains the following technical information from the reconnaissance report:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Obtained sketches of the target showing dimensions, lines of cut, chambers, and how and where to place the charges.</li> <li>b. Obtained the quantity and type of explosives required.</li> <li>c. Obtained a sketch of the firing circuits and firing points.</li> <li>d. Obtained estimates of the time, labor, and equipment required for the demolition mission.</li> <li>e. Obtained estimates of time, labor, and equipment to complete any required bypass.</li> </ul> <p>2. The element draws explosives and any additional tools or equipment according to the reconnaissance report.</p> <p><b>NOTE: If possible, the element places the caps in a closed metal can and carries them separate from the explosives in the rear of the vehicle.</b></p> <p>* 3. The element leader issues orders to the element detailing each soldier's job using the five-paragraph field order format and covers site security and noise and light discipline.</p> <p>4. The element moves to the bridge location.</p>		



TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>5. The element assembles and places the charges.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Assembled the charges in the rear area when possible to minimize the time spent on the bridge.</li> <li>b. Placed the correctly sized charges on the members to be cut according to the information contained in the reconnaissance report.</li> </ul> <p>6. The element lays the ring mains.</p> <p><b>NOTE: Line mains can be used instead of ring mains, except on reserve targets.</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Tied in the branch lines with demolition knots or J hooks.</li> </ul> <p><b>NOTE: J hooks are used in conjunction with modernized demolition initiator (MDI) systems.</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>b. Ensured that the detonating-cord ring mains and branch lines had no sharp bends and did not cross over each other or themselves (except where connected by demolition knots or J hooks).</li> </ul> <p>7. The element prepares the demolition to state 1 and advises higher headquarters (HQ) that they are ready to detonate the target. (In the event that permission is given to execute the target upon completion, the target is brought to state 2 and detonated.)</p> <p><b>NOTE: The element leader may hand over the target to a demolition firing party before firing. The hand-over procedures are as detailed as those found in the North Atlantic Treaty Organization (NATO) obstacle folder.</b></p> <p>8. If the element fires the demolition, only one soldier (with a noncommissioned officer [NCO] supervising) connects the blasting caps to the ring mains. All remaining element members are a safe distance away.</p> <p>* 9. The element leader reports the intermediate status, completion, and demolition results to higher HQ. The digital units populate the Army Battle Command System (ABCS) according to the unit tactical standing operating procedure (TACSOP).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Improved the obstacle by laying mines on enemy side approaches and possible bypass or bridge sites.</li> <li>b. Recorded the mines on a DA Form 1355 and submitted to higher HQ according to standardization agreement (STANAG), applicable field manuals, and the unit standing operating procedure (SOP).</li> </ul>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title
052-193-1310	Construct Demolition Firing Systems
052-193-1312	Construct Demolition Initiating System
052-193-1313	Identify Characteristics of Military Demolitions and Explosives

### **SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
052-193-2014	Determine the Safe Distance When Firing Explosives
052-193-2015	Place Timber-Cutting Charges
052-193-2016	Place Steel-Cutting Charges
052-193-2017	Place Breaching Charges
052-193-2018	Place Cratering Charges
052-193-3022	Calculate Timber-Cutting Charges
052-193-3023	Calculate Steel-Cutting Charges
052-193-3024	Calculate Breaching Charges
052-193-3040	Employ Bridge Demolitions
052-193-3054	Prepare a Demolition Reconnaissance Report
052-193-3070	Calculate Concrete-Stripping Charges
052-193-3071	Determine the Method of a Bridge Attack
052-193-4040	Manage Engineer Demolition Missions
052-238-1603	Place Underwater Excavation Charges
052-238-3400	Calculate Underwater Excavation Charges
052-238-3401	Direct an Underwater Demolition Operation

### **SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
05-2-0008	Integrate Obstacles Into Direct- and Indirect-Fire Plans
05-2-7008	Prepare an Operation Order (OPORD) (Company/Platoon)

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** Six Engineer Squads  
Two Engineer Platoons

**TASK:** Create a Lane Through an Obstacle Using Explosive Techniques (05-3-1000)  
(FM 20-32) (FM 3-34.2) (FM 5-250)  
(FM 5-34)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The element is supporting a combined arms breaching operation as part of the breach force. The maneuver force commander has designated support, breach, and assault forces. The engineer element has issued an operation order (OPORD) and completed preparations for the operation. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The element creates, proofs, and marks the lanes through the obstacles to allow the assault force to seize the farside objective. The element creates lanes within 10 minutes if the obstacle is covered by direct fire or observed indirect enemy fire for combat. The support force provides suppression and obscuration. The breach force commander secures the reduction site and directs the engineer unit to reduce the obstacle. The element enforces marking and proofing standards to minimize friendly casualties or delays due to hazards in a cleared lane. Friendly forces sustain no casualties from mine encounters in the reduced lane. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p><b>NOTE: Light engineer elements without an armored vehicle on the table(s) of organization and equipment (TOE) or the modified table(s) of organization and equipment (MTOE) are not authorized to use the M58A3 mine-clearing line charge (MICLIC), unless a mechanized engineer element has been in operational control (OPCON) with the light engineer element.</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* 1. The element leader receives a fragmentary order (FRAGO) or an OPORD to create a lane through an obstacle by using explosive techniques.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Conducted a thorough map reconnaissance, including the route and terrain.</li> <li>b. Reviewed the element tactical standing operating procedure (TACSOP) or standing operating procedure (SOP).</li> <li>c. Met the commander's intent and requirements for the creation of the lane.</li> <li>d. Conducted troop-leading procedures.</li> <li>e. Conducted precombat checks (PCCs) and precombat inspections (PCIs).</li> <li>f. Conducted risk-management and safety briefings according to the element TACSOP or SOP.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 2. The element leader determines the obstacle type, location, and dimensions from information provided by the maneuver force or the obstacle reconnaissance.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Determined the obstacle (log, minefield, wire, rubble, snow, ice, ditch, or crater).</li> <li>b. Determined the obstacle location and dimensions (at a minimum, the depth and frontage).</li> <li>c. Performed a detailed reconnaissance, as time permitted, of the obstacle and the surrounding terrain, if the maneuver force did not provide enough details.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 3. The element leader, in coordination with the breach force and maneuver commander, selects the best explosive techniques to reduce the obstacle based on the mission, enemy, troops, terrain, time available, and civilian considerations (METT-TC) factors and the obstacle intelligence (OBSTINTEL) reports. The element—</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Used the MICLIC or bangalore torpedoes for explosive obstacle breaching.</li> </ul> <p><b>NOTE: An alternative course of action is to use direct or indirect weapons fire; however, this requires a high volume of fire and a large expenditure of ammunition. The digital units populate the Army Battle Command System (ABCS) with obstacle locations, clear the lanes, and send reports to higher headquarters (HQ).</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>b. Used the Antipersonnel Obstacle-Breaching System (APOBS) to clear a lane 0.6 meters x 45 meters.</li> </ul> <p><b>NOTE: The APOBS is a dismounted, two-soldier carry (team), with a 35-meter standoff for antipersonnel (AP) mines and wire obstacles.</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>c. Used the M1A1 or M1A2 bangalore torpedo to clear a 1- x 15-meter footpath.</li> </ul> <p><b>NOTE: The bangalore torpedo is manually emplaced and requires several soldiers to carry sections. It is not effective against pronged, double-impulsed, or pressure-resistant AP and surface-laid antitank (AT) mines.</b></p> <p>* 4. The element leader determines lane requirements by conducting a reverse breach-planning process during the element military decision-making process.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Determined the lane width.</li> </ul> <p><b>NOTE: The standard widths are 1 meter for a footpath for dismounts and 4.5 meters for an initial lane to pass vehicles and equipment conducting the attack.</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>b. Determined the number of lanes required based on the size of the assault force and its scheme of maneuver (a minimum of one lane for a maneuver company and two lanes for a task force).</li> <li>c. Determined the location of the lane based on the terrain, cover and concealment for the breach force, time, equipment available, and maneuver scheme.</li> </ul> <p>5. The element creates the desired lane through the obstacle.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Created lanes within 10 minutes if the obstacle was covered by direct fire or observed indirect fire. No time standard was established if the obstacle was not covered by fire or if the element conducted breaching under covert conditions.</li> <li>b. Created a lane using the MICLIC. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Employed line charges in pairs, unless the limits of the obstacle were well known.</li> </ul> <p><b>NOTE: Most of the enemy obstacles are deep enough to counter the length of the line charge. If the minefield is less than 100 meters and the edge is known, the standoff is 62 meters from the leading edge of the obstacle.</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(2) Positioned the line charge to allow enough standoff to compensate for the length of the inert cable.</li> </ul> <p><b>NOTE: This ensures that the line charge covers the suspected forward edge of the obstacle. If the obstacle is greater than 100 meters and the edge is unknown or if there is a disabled vehicle, the standoff is 100 meters from the vehicle.</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(3) Positioned the second line charge. Directed the alignment with the first line charge, moving 25 meters into the trough of the previously fired charge to ensure an appropriate overlap.</li> </ul> </li> <li>c. Created a lane using an APOBS. Positioned the line charge 25 meters from the obstacle to compensate for the length of the inert cable.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p><b>NOTE: This ensures that the line charge covers the suspected forward edge of the obstacle.</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>d. Created a lane using an M1A1 or M1A2 bangalore torpedo. Ensured that all sections of the torpedo were locked into the coupler.</li> <li>e. Used special procedures when chemical mines were known or suspected to be present. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Ensured that all personnel operating within the downwind area were warned and that they increased the protective level to MOPP 4.</li> <li>(2) Equipped the breaching teams with a chemical agent detector kit or an automatic chemical alarm. Ensured that each team had trained and proficient operators.</li> <li>(3) Ensured that the teams did not detonate the chemical mines in place.</li> </ul> </li> </ul> <p>6. The element proofs the lane using mechanical assets, such as the mine-clearing roller (MCR), the M60 Panther, the miniflail, or other means. The assault force and the follow-on forces should not sustain casualties or delays due to hazards in a cleared lane.</p> <p>7. The element marks the cleared lane according to the element TACSOP. As a minimum, the element marks the entrance and exit of the lanes.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Placed the final approach markers 200 meters from the entrance for the mounted lanes and 30 meters for the dismounted lanes.</li> <li>b. Placed the entrance funnel markers at intervals of 15 meters for mounted lanes and 5 meters for dismounted lanes. Placed the markers diagonally to the lane entrance and formed a 45° V shape.</li> <li>c. Placed entrance markers to the left and right of the lane. This reduced the lane entrance point. Spaced the markers the width of the lane (4.5 meters for mounted lanes and 1 meter for dismounted lanes).</li> <li>d. Placed left handrail markers at the left limit of the lane, along the entire path. Placed handrail markers at 15 meters for mounted lanes and 5 meters for dismounted lanes.</li> </ul> <p><b>NOTE: Commanders may have to modify the intervals based on the terrain, visibility, lane length, and lane path.</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>e. Placed exit markers to the left and right of the reduced lane exit point. Spaced the markers the width of the lane (4.5 meters for mounted lanes and 5 meters for dismounted lanes).</li> </ul> <p>* 8. The element leader reports to the engineer higher HQ and the supported maneuver element HQ according to the element TACSOP.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Reported the method or the material used for marking.</li> <li>b. Reported the location of the final-approach marker and the entrance and exit points.</li> </ul> <p><b>NOTE: Follow-on forces improve and complete the marking of the breached lane(s) to improve mobility at the breach site.</b></p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
052-192-1231	Perform Preventive-Maintenance Checks and Services (PMCS) on the Mine Clearing Line Charge (MICLIC)
052-192-3177	Supervise Mine Clearing Line Charge (MICLIC) Operations
052-193-1310	Construct Demolition Firing Systems
052-193-1311	Prime Military Explosives
052-193-1312	Construct Demolition Initiating System
052-193-1313	Identify Characteristics of Military Demolitions and Explosives
052-193-2014	Determine the Safe Distance When Firing Explosives
052-193-2015	Place Timber-Cutting Charges
052-193-2016	Place Steel-Cutting Charges
052-193-2017	Place Breaching Charges
052-193-2018	Place Cratering Charges
052-193-2030	Clear Misfires
052-193-3022	Calculate Timber-Cutting Charges
052-193-3023	Calculate Steel-Cutting Charges
052-193-3024	Calculate Breaching Charges
052-193-3025	Calculate Explosive Requirements for Road Craters
052-193-4040	Manage Engineer Demolition Missions

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
05-2-0018	Conduct Report Procedures

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** Six Engineer Squads  
 Equipment Section  
 Two Engineer Platoons

**TASK:** Create a Lane Through an Obstacle Using Mechanical Techniques (05-3-1001)  
 (FM 20-32) (FM 3-34.2) (FM 5-250)  
 (FM 5-34)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)  
**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** An engineer element is supporting a combined arms breaching operation. The element is directed to breach an obstacle other than a minefield. The maneuver force commander designates support, breach, and assault forces. The element has the required tools, equipment, and personnel to accomplish the mission. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The element creates and marks lanes through the obstacles to maintain the momentum of the tactical operation. The element creates lanes if the obstacle is covered by direct fire and/or observed indirect enemy fire. Friendly forces sustain no casualties from mine encounters in the reduced lane. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* 1. The element leader receives a fragmentary order (FRAGO) or operation order (OPORD) to create a lane through an obstacle by using mechanical techniques.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Conducted a thorough map reconnaissance, including the route and terrain.</li> <li>b. Reviewed the unit tactical standing operating procedure (TACSOP) or standing operating procedure (SOP).</li> <li>c. Met the commander's intent and requirements for creating a lane by using mechanical techniques.</li> <li>d. Conducted troop-leading procedures.</li> <li>e. Conducted precombat checks (PCCs) and precombat inspections (PCIs).</li> <li>f. Conducted risk management and safety briefings according to the unit TACSOP or SOP.</li> </ul> </li>   <li>* 2. The element leader determines the type, location, and dimensions of the obstacles from information provided by the maneuver force and/or from an obstacle reconnaissance.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Determined the type of obstacles (log, minefield, wire, rubble, snow, ice, ditches, or craters).</li> <li>b. Determined the location and dimensions of the obstacles (as a minimum, the depth and frontage).</li> <li>c. Performed a detailed reconnaissance, if time permitted, of the obstacles and the surrounding terrain when the maneuver force did not provide enough details.</li> </ul> </li>   <li>* 3. The element leader, in coordination with the breach force and maneuver commander, selects the best mechanical technique to reduce the obstacle based on mission, enemy, terrain, troops, time available, and civilian considerations (METT-TC) and the obstacle intelligence (OBSTINTEL) report information.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Used the mine-clearing blade (MCB) to remove mines from the minefield.</li> <li>b. Used the mine-clearing roller (MCR) to detect mines and to proof a reduced lane.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p><b>NOTE: It is not recommended to use the MCR as a primary means of reduction.</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>c. Used the M60 Panther and miniflail to reduce mines from a safe distance without risk to the operator.</li> <li>d. Used the M9 armored combat earthmover (ACE), armored-vehicle-launched bridge (AVLB), and engineer equipment for mechanical obstacle breaching.</li> </ul> <p>* 4. The element leader determines the lane requirements by conducting a reverse breach planning process during the military decision-making process.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Determined the lane width. Standard widths are 1 meter for a footpath for dismounts and 4.5 meters for an initial lane to pass vehicles and equipment conducting the attack.</li> <li>b. Determined the number of lanes required based on the size of the assault force and its scheme of maneuver (a minimum of one lane for a maneuver company and two lanes for a task force).</li> <li>c. Determined the lane location based on the terrain, cover and concealment for the breaching force, time and equipment available for the breach, and maneuver scheme.</li> </ul> <p>5. The element creates the desired lane through the obstacle.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Created lanes within 10 minutes if the obstacle was covered by direct fire and/or observed indirect fire. No time standard was established when the obstacle was not covered by fire or when the unit conducted stealth breaching.</li> <li>b. Employed the ACE (when available) for neutralizing the effects of tank ditches, road craters, log cribs, tetrahedrons, dragon teeth, and similar obstacles.             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Started blade work 30 meters from the depression, making a shallow incline using small cuts.</li> <li>(2) Ensured that cuts and fills were made by the ACE operators until the incline was traversable by maneuver units and the ACE could cross the far bank.</li> </ul> </li> <li>c. Employed the AVLB to span destroyed and disabled bridges and other gaps not exceeding 18.3 meters.             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) The crew moved the launcher within 3 meters of the gap.</li> <li>(2) The AVLB commander directed the driver to launch the bridge with the scissor cylinder. The far end of the bridge did not exceed 61 centimeters above the surface plain.</li> <li>(3) The AVLB commander directed the driver to disconnect the bridge from the launcher (upon completion of the launch).</li> <li>(4) The AVLB commander directed the AVLB launcher to the designated position.</li> <li>(5) The AVLB commander notified the element leader upon completion and relocation.</li> </ul> </li> <li>d. Removed the rubble using engineer equipment.</li> <li>e. Used special procedures when chemical mines were known or suspected to be present.             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Ensured that all personnel operating within the downwind area implemented MOPP 4.</li> <li>(2) Equipped breaching teams with a chemical-agent detector kit or automatic chemical alarm. Ensured that each team had trained and proficient operators.</li> <li>(3) Ensured that the teams did not detonate chemical mines in place.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>		



TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>6. The element proofs the lanes using mechanical assets, such as an MCR, M60 Panther, miniflail, or other means.</p> <p>7. The element marks the cleared lane according to the element TACSOP. As a minimum, the element marks the entrance and exit of the lanes.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Placed the final approach markers 200 meters from the entrance for the mounted lanes and 30 meters for the dismounted lanes.</li> <li>Placed the entrance funnel markers at intervals of 15 meters for mounted lanes and 5 meters for dismounted lanes. Placed the markers diagonally to the lane entrance and formed a 45° V shape.</li> <li>Placed entrance markers to the left and right of the lane. This reduced the lane entrance point. Spaced the markers to the width of the lane (4.5 meters for mounted lanes and 1 meter for dismounted lanes).</li> <li>Placed left handrail markers at the left limit of the lane, along the entire path. Handrail markers were placed at 15-meter intervals for mounted lanes and 5-meter intervals for dismounted lanes.</li> </ol> <p><b>NOTE: Commanders may have to modify the intervals based on the terrain, the visibility, the lane length, and the lane path.</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Placed exit markers to the left and right of the reduced lane exit point. Spaced the markers to the width of the lane (4.5 meters for mounted lanes and 5 meters for dismounted lanes).</li> </ol> <p>* 8. The element leader reports to the engineer higher headquarters (HQ) and supported maneuver unit HQ according to the unit TACSOP.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Reported the location of the final approach marker and the entrance and exit points.</li> <li>Reported the method and the material used for marking.</li> </ol>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

### SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
052-225-1101	Load an M239 Grenade Launcher on an Armored-Vehicle-Launched Bridge (AVLB)/Armored Combat Earthmover (ACE), M9
052-225-1102	Unload an M239 Grenade Launcher on an Armored-Vehicle-Launched Bridge (AVLB)/Armored Combat Earthmover (ACE), M9
052-225-1213	Drive an Armored-Vehicle-Launched Bridge (AVLB)
052-225-1214	Start the Engine of an Armored Vehicle-Launched Bridge (AVLB)
052-225-1216	Extinguish a Fire on an Armored-Vehicle-Launched Bridge (AVLB)
052-225-1217	Operate the Night Viewer on an Armored-Vehicle-Launched Bridge (AVLB)
052-225-1250	Stop the Engine on an Armored-Vehicle-Launched Bridge (AVLB)
052-225-2020	Recon a Potential Armored-Vehicle-Launched Bridge (AVLB) Launch Site
052-226-0202	Hydraulically Slave an Armored-Vehicle-Launched Bridge (AVLB)

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
052-226-1008	Self Recover AVLB
052-226-1012	Perform Preventive-Maintenance Checks and Services (PMCS) on the Bridge of the Armored-Vehicle-Launched Bridge (AVLB)
052-226-1013	Retrieve the Armored-Vehicle-Launched Bridge (AVLB): Operator
052-226-1049	Launch an Armored-Vehicle-Launched Bridge (AVLB)
052-226-1060	Load the Bridge from an Armored-Vehicle-Launched Bridge (AVLB) onto a Trailer
052-226-1101	Perform Preventive-Maintenance Checks and Services (PMCS) on the Launcher of an Armored-Vehicle-Launched Bridge (AVLB)
052-226-1260	Repair Track Components on an Armored-Vehicle-Launched Bridge (AVLB)
052-226-2015	Direct Hydraulic Slaving of an Armored-Vehicle-Launched Bridge (AVLB)
052-226-3100	Select a Route to Accommodate an Armored-Vehicle-Launched Bridge (AVLB)
052-253-1251	Operate Small-Emplacement Excavator (SEE) Hydraulic Tools
052-254-1046	Remove Brush With a Crawler Tractor
052-254-1047	Remove Stumps With the Crawler Tractor
052-254-1048	Remove Boulders With a Crawler Tractor
052-254-1061	Move a Load With a Scoop Loader Clamshell
052-256-3036	Direct Equipment in Obstacle Removal
052-256-3043	Direct Crawler Tractor Operations
052-256-3047	Direct Scoop Loader Operations
052-256-3048	Direct Utility Tractor Operations

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
05-2-7008	Prepare an Operation Order (OPORD) (Company/Platoon)
05-3-0004	Breach Obstacles
05-3-1015	Clear Obstacles Using Demolitions
05-3-5109	Clear Obstacles Using Engineer Equipment

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** Six Engineer Squads  
Two Engineer Platoons

**TASK:** Create a Lane Through an Obstacle Using Manual Techniques (05-3-1003)  
(FM 3-34.2) (FM 20-32) (FM 5-250)  
(FM 5-34)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** An engineer element is supporting a combined arms breaching operation. The element is directed to manually breach an obstacle other than a minefield. The maneuver force commander designates support, breach, and assault forces. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The element creates and marks lanes through obstacles to maintain the momentum of the tactical operation. Friendly forces sustain no casualties from mine encounters in the reduced lane. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The element leader receives a fragmentary order (FRAGO) or an operation order (OPORD) to create a lane through an obstacle by using manual techniques.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Conducted a thorough map reconnaissance, including the route and terrain.</li> <li>b. Reviewed the element tactical standing operating procedure (TACSOP) or standing operating procedure (SOP).</li> <li>c. Met the commander's intent and the requirements to create a lane through an obstacle.</li> <li>d. Conducted troop-leading procedures.</li> <li>e. Conducted precombat checks (PCCs) and precombat inspections (PCIs).</li> <li>f. Conducted risk management and safety briefings according to the element TACSOP or SOP.</li> </ul> <p>* 2. The element leader determines the type, location, and dimensions of the obstacle from information provided by the maneuver force or an obstacle reconnaissance.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Determined the type of obstacles (log, minefield, wire, rubble, snow, ice, ditches, or craters).</li> <li>b. Determined the location and dimensions of obstacles (as a minimum, the depth and frontage).</li> <li>c. Performed a detailed reconnaissance, if time permitted, of the obstacle and surrounding terrain when the maneuver force did not provide sufficient details.</li> </ul> <p>* 3. The element leader, in coordination with the breach force and maneuver commander, selects the best explosive techniques to reduce the obstacle.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Based the technique on mission, enemy, terrain, troops, time available, and civilian considerations (METT-TC) factors and obstacle intelligence (OBSTINTEL) report information.</li> <li>b. Employed planks, hand-emplaced explosives, assault ladders, or other available engineer tools to reduce wire obstacles, minefields, escarpments, ditches, trench lines, and fortifications for manual obstacle breaching.</li> </ul>		
<p><b>NOTE: Manual obstacle reduction is the slowest, most hazardous, and least preferred method.</b></p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 4. The element leader determines the lane requirements by conducting a reverse breach planning process during the military decision-making process of the element.</p> <p>a. Determined the lane width.</p> <p><b>NOTE: Standard widths are 1 meter for a footpath for dismounts and 4.5 meters for an initial lane to pass vehicles and equipment conducting the attack.</b></p> <p>b. Determined the number of lanes required based on the size of the assault force and its scheme of maneuver (a minimum of one lane for a maneuver company and two lanes for a task force).</p> <p>c. Determined the lane location based on the terrain, cover and concealment for the breach force, time and equipment available, and maneuver scheme.</p> <p>5. The element creates the lane through the obstacle.</p> <p>a. Created lanes within 10 minutes if the obstacle was covered by direct fire or observed indirect fire.</p> <p><b>NOTE: No time standard is established if the obstacle is not covered by fire or if the element conducts breaching under covert conditions.</b></p> <p>b. Reduced log, steel-beam post, and concrete obstacles with explosives or pioneer tools.</p> <p>c. Created a lane manually by using explosives through a surface-laid minefield.</p> <p>(1) Placed 1-pound, hand-emplaced charges directly next to mines.</p> <p><b>NOTE: Personnel may prime demolitions and detonate mines in place as they are detected or may connect individual charges into a ring main or a line main and simultaneously detonate mines.</b></p> <p>(2) Cleared suspected or detected trip wires using grapnel hooks or marked them clearly so personnel placing the explosives did not activate them.</p> <p>d. Created a lane manually by using explosives (buried minefield).</p> <p>(1) Marked mines and destroyed them in place using explosives.</p> <p>(2) Detected mines by using the visual method, probing, or electronic detectors.</p> <p><b>NOTE: If trip wires were encountered, they were cleared using grapnel hooks.</b></p> <p>e. Reduced the minefield.</p> <p>(1) Used a hand-thrown grapnel hook. The thrower—</p> <p>(a) Employed a minimum of 60 meters of light rope attached to the grapnel hook.</p> <p>(b) Tossed the grapnel hook and sought cover before it and the rope touched the ground, in case the impact detonated a mine.</p> <p>(c) Moved backward, reaching the end of the excess rope or a covered position, then began to recover the grapnel by pulling the rope toward his position.</p> <p>(2) Used a weapon-launched grappling hook (WLGH). The grappler—</p> <p>(a) Employed a 150-meter light rope attached to the grapnel hook and an M16A1 or M16A2 rifle to launch the grapnel hook.</p> <p>(b) Moved 60 meters (after the WLGH was launched) from the minefield into a prone position and began retrieving the grapnel hook.</p> <p>f. Reduced wire obstacles using assault ladders and some form of wire cutters.</p> <p>g. Removed rubble using engineer equipment and/or explosives.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>h. Employed the following special procedures when chemical mines were known or suspected to be present:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Ensured that all personnel operating within the downwind area implemented MOPP4.</li> <li>(2) Equipped breaching teams with a chemical-agent detector kit or automatic chemical alarm. Ensured that each team had trained and proficient operators.</li> <li>(3) Ensured that teams did not detonate chemical mines in place.</li> </ul> <p>i. Reduced a tank ditch or other escarpments using pioneer tools, if part of a prebreach operation.</p> <p>6. The element proofs the lane using mechanical assets such as the mine-clearing roller (MCR), the M60/M1 Panther, the miniflail, or other means so that the assault force and follow-on forces do not sustain casualties or delays due to hazards in cleared lanes.</p> <p>7. The element marks the cleared lane according to the TACSOP. As a minimum, the element marks the entrance and exit of lanes.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Placed the final approach markers 200 meters from the entrance for the mounted lanes and 30 meters for the dismounted lanes.</li> <li>b. Placed the entrance funnel markers at intervals of 15 meters for mounted lanes and 5 meters for dismounted lanes. Placed the markers diagonally to the lane entrance and formed a 45° V shape.</li> <li>c. Placed entrance markers to the left and right of the lane. This reduced the lane entrance point. The markers were spaced the width of the lane (4.5 meters for mounted lanes and 1 meter for dismounted lanes).</li> <li>d. Placed left handrail markers at the left limit of the lane, along the entire path. Handrail markers were placed at 15 meters for mounted lanes and 5 meters for dismounted lanes.</li> </ul> <p><b>NOTE: Commanders may have to modify the intervals based on the terrain, the visibility, the lane length, and the lane path.</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>e. Placed exit markers to the left and right of the reduced lane exit point. Spaced the markers the width of the lane (4.5 meters for mounted lanes and 5 meters for dismounted lanes).</li> </ul> <p><b>NOTE: Digital units populate the Force XXI Battle Command Brigade and Below (FBCB2) System screen with the location of the breached location and update overlays to provide situational awareness (SA) for maneuver units.</b></p> <p>* 8. The element leader reports to the engineer higher headquarters (HQ) and the supported maneuver element HQ according to the element TACSOP.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Reported the location of the final approach marker and entrance and exit points.</li> <li>b. Reported the method or material used for marking.</li> </ul>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
052-192-1021	Locate Mines by Visual Means
052-192-1042	Perform Self-Extraction From a Mined Area
052-192-1127	Prepare an AN/PSS-12 Mine Detector for Operation
052-192-1128	Locate Mines With the AN/PSS-12 Mine Detector
052-192-1230	Identify Mines and Firing Devices, Friendly and Enemy
052-192-1242	Locate Mine and Booby Trap Indicators by Visual Means
052-192-1266	Locate Mines By Probing
052-192-3050	Direct a Mine-Sweeping Party
052-192-3060	Conduct a Breach of a Minefield
052-192-4053	Supervise Minefield Breaching Operations
052-193-1013	Neutralize Booby Traps
052-193-1310	Construct Demolition Firing Systems
052-193-1311	Prime Military Explosives
052-193-1312	Construct Demolition Initiating System
052-193-2014	Determine the Safe Distance When Firing Explosives
052-193-2015	Place Timber-Cutting Charges
052-193-2016	Place Steel-Cutting Charges
052-193-2017	Place Breaching Charges
052-193-3022	Calculate Timber-Cutting Charges
052-193-3023	Calculate Steel-Cutting Charges
052-193-3024	Calculate Breaching Charges
052-193-3070	Calculate Concrete-Stripping Charges
052-195-1020	Install Wire Obstacle Materials
052-195-4065	Conduct Engineer Tactical Planning
052-196-4012	Conduct Platoon Reconnaissance Missions
052-200-1002	Prepare a Simple Tackle System
052-200-1010	Use and Maintain Rigging Equipment
171-145-0007	Prepare/Send Overlays Using FBCB2

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
05-2-7008	Prepare an Operation Order (OPORD) (Company/Platoon)
05-3-1000	Create a Lane Through an Obstacle Using Explosive Techniques

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

- ELEMENTS:** Assault and Barrier Platoon Headquarters  
 Survivability Section  
 Mobility and Countermobility Section  
 Assault and Obstacle Platoon  
 Company Headquarters  
 Division Engineer Section  
 Support Platoon Headquarters  
 Construction Platoon Headquarters  
 Two General Construction Sections  
 Dump Truck Section  
 Two Engineer Platoons  
 Six Engineer Squads  
 Equipment Section

**TASK:** Prepare an Expedient Ford (05-3-1050)  
 (FM 5-34) (FM 3-34.2)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The element receives an operation order (OPORD) to prepare an expedient ford to pass the task force across a water obstacle. The mission statement specifies a site location, traffic density (vehicle types and numbers), and a completion time. Digital units have performed functionality checks, and systems are operational. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The element prepares a ford providing unimpeded passage of the traffic density for which it was designed. Gaps less than or equal to 50 meters are prepared in 1 hour. Gaps more than 50 meters are prepared in 2 hours. Digital units send and receive reports using frequency-modulated (FM) or digital means. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. The element leader issues a fragmentary order (FRAGO) or OPORD. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Conducted precombat inspections (PCIs).</li> <li>b. Conducted movement to the site.</li> </ul> 2. The element prepares approaches to the ford. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Constructed slope approaches no greater than a ratio of 1:3 for wheeled vehicles and 1:2 for tracked vehicles.</li> <li>b. Placed the material removed from the banks to the side of (not in) the stream.</li> </ul> 3. The element prepares the ford bottom. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Filled the short, deep gaps with rock or gravel.</li> <li>b. Prepared the soft-mud bottoms with tree limbs, brush, or timbers and covered them with rock or coarse gravel.</li> <li>c. Ensured that the width was 6 meters, plus or minus 1 meter.</li> </ul> 4. The element marks the edges of the ford. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensured that the poles were placed 1.5 meters apart across the stream width on both sides of the ford.</li> <li>b. Ensured that poles were at least 1.5 meters above water level.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 5. The element leader submits status reports to the company according to the unit standing operating procedure (SOP). <b>NOTE: Digital units populate the Force XXI Battle Command Brigade and Below (FBCB2) System with the location of the crossing site and send reports according to the unit tactical SOP (TACSOP).</b>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title
052-227-1200	Perform Dozing Operations With an Armored Combat Earthmover (ACE), M9
052-227-1240	Perform Scraper Operations With an Armored Combat Earthmover (ACE), M9
052-227-3302	Direct Armored Combat Earthmover (ACE) Dozer/Scraper Operations
052-243-1506	Classify a Soil Using the Unified Soil Classification System
052-254-1046	Remove Brush With a Crawler Tractor
052-254-1048	Remove Boulders With a Crawler Tractor
052-256-3043	Direct Crawler Tractor Operations

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title
05-2-0018	Conduct Report Procedures
05-2-1013	Conduct a Water Crossing Site Reconnaissance
05-2-7008	Prepare an Operation Order (OPORD) (Company/Platoon)

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**



**ELEMENTS:** Mobility and Countermobility Section  
 Survivability Section  
 Assault and Obstacle Platoon  
 Equipment Platoon Headquarters  
 Two General Construction Sections

**TASK:** Emplace Situational Obstacles (05-3-2001)  
 (FM 90-7) (FM 20-32)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The element is part of a maneuver brigade combat team (BCT) or task force (TF). An approved maneuver plan is provided for the emplacement of ground-emplaced situational tactical obstacles to protect the BCT or TF. Class V (mines), equipment, and personnel are available. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** Obstacle-triggering events are identified and reported in an accurate and timely manner. The obstacles are emplaced to achieve the desired effect in conjunction with direct or indirect fires. The element enforces standards to minimize the loss of personnel or equipment. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
1. The element positions Volcanoes or intelligent wide-area munitions (WAMs) and necessary Class V reloads where they can react within the established timelines. * 2. The element leader conducts rehearsals. 3. The element emplaces the situational obstacles. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Provided operations security (OPSEC), physical protection, and maintenance of Volcano or WAM assets.</li> <li>b. Observed and reported enemy action in the named areas of interest (NAIs).</li> <li>c. Confirmed the decision to emplace obstacles.</li> <li>d. Emplaced minefields in the tactical area of interest (TAI) before the enemy arrived.</li> <li>e. Reported the status.</li> <li>f. Recovered and repositioned the Volcano or WAM assets.</li> <li>g. Established security.</li> <li>h. Emplaced a marking system, if applicable.</li> <li>i. Reported the location of the obstacles to higher headquarters (HQ) according to the unit tactical standing operating procedure (TACSOP).</li> </ul>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
052-192-1232	Prepare a Modular-Pack Mine System (MOPMS) for Operation in the Hardwired Mode
052-192-2030	Operate a Modular-Pack Mine System (MOPMS)
052-192-2031	Operate the Remote Control Unit (RCU) for the Modular-Pack Mine System (MOPMS)
052-192-2077	Operate a Ground Volcano System
052-192-2080	Perform Volcano Bit and Arm Tests
052-192-2081	Perform a Volcano Mine Canister Test
052-192-2082	Operate a Volcano Dispenser Control Unit
052-192-3140	Direct the Mounting of a Volcano Dispenser on a Ground Vehicle
052-192-3166	Supervise Installation of a Modular-Pack Mine System (MOPMS) Minefield
052-192-4110	Determine Volcano Minefield Logistical Requirements
052-192-4112	Determine Modular-Pack Mine System (MOPMS) Minefield Logistical Requirements
052-195-1020	Install Wire Obstacle Materials

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
05-2-0018	Conduct Report Procedures
05-3-2012	Emplace a Modular-Pack Mine System (MOPMS) Disrupt or Fix Minefield

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** Assault and Barrier Platoon Headquarters  
 Survivability Section  
 Mobility and Countermobility Section  
 Support Platoon Headquarters  
 Two Engineer Platoons  
 Six Engineer Squads  
 Equipment Section

**TASK:** Emplace a Volcano Minefield (05-3-2011)  
 (FM 90-7) (FM 20-32) (FM 5-102)  
 (FM 5-34) (STANAG 2036)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The element receives a fragmentary order (FRAGO) to emplace a scatterable minefield in support of a maneuver unit. The maneuver commander has provided the intent, type, location, composition, and means of delivery (air or ground). The security element has been coordinated. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The element emplaces a tactical minefield (tied to existing or reinforced obstacles) to disrupt, turn, fix, or block to channel or delay the enemy. The locations are accurate within 10 meters. Reports are completed and submitted according to the Standardization Agreement (STANAG). The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p><b>NOTE: The digital units request intelligence information from the All Source Analysis System (ASAS) and Digital Topographic Support System (DTSS) products from higher headquarters (HQ) before the mission. Nondigital units request information from the higher HQ Intelligence Officer (US Army) (S2).</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* 1. The element leader prepares a plan for the emplacement of a Volcano minefield.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Selected a security element or coordinated for security to be provided by the supported maneuver unit.</li> <li>b. Designated a tow vehicle.</li> <li>c. Conducted a thorough map, aerial, or ground reconnaissance for the location of the minefield and routes (primary and alternate).</li> <li>d. Issued the intent of the minefield, to include—                                     <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Disrupt.</li> <li>(2) Fix.</li> <li>(3) Turn.</li> <li>(4) Block.</li> </ul> </li> <li>e. Conducted troop-leading procedures.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 2. The element leader and the reconnaissance element verify the minefield location, confirm the intent (as appropriate for the location), and tie into the existing terrain.</li> <li>3. The element reconnoiters the start-and-end points of the minefield.</li> <li>4. The element identifies the centerline.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Marked the disrupt- or fix-Volcano minefield.                                     <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Placed guide markers offset to the left of the centerline path.</li> </ul> </li> </ul> </li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>(2) Placed marking material visible to the emplacing vehicle operator until the end point was reached (277 meters for ground Volcano and 278 meters for air Volcano).</p> <p>b. Marked the turn- or block-Volcano minefield.</p> <p>(1) Placed guide markers offset to the left of the centerline path.</p> <p><b>NOTE: Turn- and block-Volcano minefields require two strip centerlines and are separated by at least 320 meters for both ground and air delivery to achieve step 4b(2).</b></p> <p>(2) Placed marking material visible to the emplacing vehicle operator until the end point was reached (555 meters for ground Volcano and 557 meters for air Volcano).</p> <p>5. The element marks the perimeter of the Volcano minefield(s) being deployed.</p> <p><b>NOTE: When minefields are behind the forward line of own troops (FLOT) (in the main battle or rear area), mark the minefield on all four sides. Minefields forward of the FLOT generally are not marked.</b></p> <p>a. Marked a safety zone with marking material 40 meters from the start and end points and 80 meters from the left and right of the centerline.</p> <p>b. Marked the pickets for night operations.</p> <p>* 6. The element leader verifies that the overwatching unit is in position to provide security to the emplacing unit or provides security using element personnel.</p> <p>* 7. The emplacement team leader performs a built-in test (BIT) and the element leader verifies the correct self-destruct time.</p> <p>* 8. The element leader submits a scatterable-minefield warning (SCATMINWARN) 30 minutes before the emplacement time to higher HQ according to Field Manual (FM) 20-32.</p> <p>9. The element emplaces the minefield.</p> <p>a. Activated the dispenser control unit (DCU) to begin dispersing the Volcano mines at the start point.</p> <p>b. Ensured that the Volcano mines were being properly dispersed and that the driver maintained the set speed and line with the centerline markers until the vehicle reached the end point.</p> <p>c. Ceased dispensing mines at the designated end point of the minefield.</p> <p><b>NOTE: The emplacement team must move away from the minefield within 4 minutes to avoid being in the fragment hazard zone during mine detonations that fail the arming sequence.</b></p> <p>*10. The element leader conducts obstacle turnover with the overwatching element.</p> <p>*11. The element leader submits a scatterable-minefield record (SCATMINREC) to higher HQ.</p> <p>12. The element moves to a safe location and prepares for follow-on missions.</p> <p><b>NOTE: The digital units send information using text messaging, updating digital overlays with obstacle locations, and transmitting updated reports using the appropriate battle command system according to the unit tactical standing operating procedure (TACSOP). Nondigital units transmit information to higher HQ using frequency-modulated means according to the unit TACSOP.</b></p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

#### SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
052-192-1141	Load a Multiple-Delivery Mine System (Volcano)
052-192-1233	Identify the Components of a Multiple-Delivery Mine System (Volcano)
052-192-2077	Operate a Ground Volcano System
052-192-2080	Perform Volcano Bit and Arm Tests
052-192-2081	Perform a Volcano Mine Canister Test
052-192-2082	Operate a Volcano Dispenser Control Unit
052-192-2083	Perform Troubleshooting Procedures on a Volcano
052-192-3137	Direct a Row Minefield Laying Party
052-192-3140	Direct the Mounting of a Volcano Dispenser on a Ground Vehicle
052-192-3142	Direct the Operation of a Ground Volcano System
052-192-3165	Supervise the Installation of a Volcano Minefield
052-192-4110	Determine Volcano Minefield Logistical Requirements

#### SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
05-1-0081	Prepare an Operation Order (OPORD)
05-4-1372	Disseminate Terrain Information Product

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** Six Engineer Squads  
 Two Engineer Platoons  
 Assault and Barrier Platoon Headquarters  
 Survivability Section  
 Mobility and Countermobility Section  
 Support Platoon Headquarters

**TASK:** Emplace a Modular-Pack Mine System (MOPMS) Disrupt or Fix Minefield (05-3-2012)  
 (FM 90-7) (DA FORM 1355) (FM 20-32)  
 (FM 5-102) (FM 5-34) (STANAG 2036)  
 (STANAG 2123 (ENGR)) (TM 9-1345-209-10)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The element leader receives a fragmentary order (FRAGO) or an operation order (OPORD) to emplace a MOPMS disrupt or fix minefield in support of a maneuver element. The maneuver commander has determined the location of the minefield. The maneuver unit will provide security. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The element emplaces a MOPMS disrupt or fix minefield (tied to existing obstacles or terrain) to block, channel, or delay the enemy. The locations are accurate within 10 meters. Command and control data (CCD) is entered and the remote-control unit (RCU) is prepared to deploy the mines. The fratricide fence is installed. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The element leader receives a FRAGO or an OPORD to emplace a MOPMS disrupt or fix minefield.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Conducted a thorough map reconnaissance, including the route and the terrain.</li> <li>b. Reviewed the unit tactical standing operating procedure (TACSOP) or standing operating procedure (SOP).</li> <li>c. Met the commander's intent and requirements for the minefield.</li> <li>d. Conducted troop-leading procedures.</li> <li>e. Conducted precombat checks (PCCs) and precombat inspections (PCIs).</li> <li>f. Conducted risk-management and safety briefings according to the unit TACSOP or SOP.</li> </ul> <p>2. The element performs a reconnaissance of the minefield location and coordinates with the maneuver force on the exact location.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensured that the maneuver force covered the minefield by fire.</li> <li>b. Ensured that the final location was tied to the existing obstacles or terrain.</li> <li>c. Determined the approximate locations for fences.</li> <li>d. Selected the movement routes.</li> <li>e. Established local security.</li> </ul> <p>* 3. The element leader calculates the man-hours and logistical requirements. Calculated the—</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Number of MOPMS dispensers.</li> </ul> <p><b>NOTE: For planning factors for a MOPMS disrupt minefield, use four MOPMS dispensers for a front of 280 meters and a depth of 70 meters. For a MOPMS fix minefield, use five MOPMS dispensers for a front of 280 meters and a depth of 115 meters.</b></p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>b. Amount of fencing and marking material.</p> <p>c. Number of man-hours.</p> <p>d. Number of trips to transport the materials.</p> <p>4. The element draws MOPMS dispensers and fence materials.</p> <p>5. The element installs the MOPMS minefield.</p> <p>a. Designated firing points and identified the location of the first MOPMS dispenser.</p> <p>b. Laid out and marked locations to place the MOPMS dispensers for a disrupt minefield.</p> <p><b>NOTE: Dispenser measurements are center to center.</b></p> <p>(1) Marked the first dispenser location toward the left side of the enemy.</p> <p>(2) Marked the second dispenser location 70 meters to the right and 35 meters to the rear of the first dispenser.</p> <p>(3) Marked the third dispenser location 70 meters to the right and 35 meters to the front of the second dispenser.</p> <p>(4) Marked the fourth dispenser location 70 meters to the right and 35 meters to the rear of the third dispenser.</p> <p>c. Laid out and marked locations to place the MOPMS dispensers for a fixed minefield.</p> <p>(1) Marked the first dispenser location toward the left side of the enemy.</p> <p>(2) Marked the second dispenser location 70 meters to the right and 35 meters to the front of the first dispenser.</p> <p>(3) Marked the third dispenser location 70 meters to the rear of the second dispenser and 70 meters to the right of the first dispenser.</p> <p>(4) Marked the fourth dispenser location 70 meters to the right and 35 meters to the front of the third dispenser.</p> <p>(5) Marked the fifth dispenser location 70 meters to the right and 35 meters to the rear of the fourth dispenser.</p> <p>d. Constructed the fratricide fence after the first dispenser location was marked.</p> <p>(1) Ensured that the fence was 55 meters from the extreme left, right, and front dispensers.</p> <p>(2) Ensured that the fence was 20 meters from the extreme rear dispenser.</p> <p><b>NOTE: Measurements are taken from the center of the dispenser.</b></p> <p>(3) Left a footpath-size opening and enough wire to close the opening.</p> <p>e. Placed dispensers on the marked locations, with the arrow oriented toward the enemy.</p> <p>6. All element members, except the security team, return to the firing point.</p> <p>* 7. The element leader accounts for all personnel at the firing point.</p> <p>8. The team members ARM the dispenser in one of the following ways and ensure that each dispenser is armed:</p> <p>a. Entered the CCD into each dispenser with the RCU.</p> <p>b. Connected the firing wire to each dispenser and turned the SAFE/ARM knob to ARM.</p> <p>9. The team members return to the firing point, closing the opening in the wire.</p> <p>*10. The element leader conducts obstacle turnover according to the obstacle folder.</p> <p>a. Issued the group identification code.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
b. Issued a blasting machine, if the overwatching unit did not have one available.  *11. The element leader submits at least four copies of a completed Department of the Army (DA) Form 1355 (Minefield Record) according to the unit TACSOP or SOP. a. Signed the DA Form 1355. b. Submitted a copy of the completed DA Form 1355 to the overwatch unit and higher headquarters (HQ) or the supported maneuver unit HQ as soon as possible. c. Submitted a copy to the unit central control cell (for mine clearance information) and the proper national territorial authority.  *12. The element leader submits a report of completion, usually an oral report, to the authorizing commander.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title
052-192-1232	Prepare a Modular-Pack Mine System (MOPMS) for Operation in the Hardwired Mode
052-192-2030	Operate a Modular-Pack Mine System (MOPMS)
052-192-2031	Operate the Remote Control Unit (RCU) for the Modular-Pack Mine System (MOPMS)
052-192-3166	Supervise Installation of a Modular-Pack Mine System (MOPMS) Minefield
052-192-4112	Determine Modular-Pack Mine System (MOPMS) Minefield Logistical Requirements

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title
05-1-0081	Prepare an Operation Order (OPORD)
05-3-0013	Conduct Troop-Leading Procedures

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**



**ELEMENTS:** Assault and Barrier Platoon Headquarters  
 Survivability Section  
 Mobility and Countermobility Section  
 Assault and Obstacle Platoon  
 Equipment Platoon Headquarters  
 Support Platoon Headquarters  
 Construction Platoon Headquarters  
 Equipment Section

**TASK:** Construct a Tank Ditch (05-3-2015)  
 (FM 5-102) (FM 5-34)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)  
**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The crew is supporting a maneuver unit establishing a defense. The obstacle plan requires construction of a tank ditch as part of a linear obstacle system. The maneuver unit occupies defensive positions overlooking an ideal engagement area. The unit has all required organic equipment. The maneuver commander selected the site in consultation with the task force (TF) engineer. The digital units performed functionality checks, and systems are operational. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The crew constructs a tank ditch (tied to existing or reinforced obstacles) to block, turn, fix, or disrupt the enemy. The tank ditch blocks or disrupts an enemy main battle tank (MBT) for two minutes. The digital units send and receive reports using frequency-modulated or digital means to update the common operational picture (COP), overlays, and the situational awareness (SA). The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* 1. The crew leader coordinates with the maneuver commander for the location of the tank ditch to support the maneuver scheme, enhance antitank (AT) fire, and establish job-site security.</li> <li>* 2. The crew leader conducts a reconnaissance.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensured that the tank ditch was within the maximum effective range of AT firing positions.</li> <li>b. Sited the tank ditch so the ends of the ditch tied into the existing obstacles.</li> <li>c. Determined the best method for digging according to the unit standing operating procedure (SOP) or tactical standing operating procedure (TACSOP).</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 3. The crew leader briefs the crew on routes, security, action on contact, and noise and light discipline.</li> <li>4. The crew performs vehicle maintenance.</li> <li>* 5. The crew leader supervises tank ditch construction.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Marked the ditch location.</li> <li>b. Briefed the operators on the type of tank ditch, the start- and end-points, the depth of the ditch, and the enemy and friendly sides of the ditch.</li> </ul> </li> <li>6. The crew constructs a rectangular tank ditch at least 1.5 meters deep and 3.3 meters wide, placing the berm on the friendly side of the ditch.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Used the T-push method with a dozer-dozer, dozer-loader, dozer-armored combat earthmover (ACE), ACE-ACE, or ACE-loader team configuration.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
b. Used the tandem method with a scraper-scraper, scraper-ACE, or scraper-dozer team configuration. c. Constructed the tank ditch within the time standards according to the SOP or TACSOP.  7. The crew constructs a triangular tank ditch at least 1.5 meters deep and 4 meters wide, spreading the spoil on the enemy side of the ditch. a. Used the T-push method. See performance measure 6a. b. Constructed the tank ditch within the time standards.  8. The crew constructs a sidehill cut tank ditch at least 1.5 meters deep and 4.5 to 6 meters wide, spreading the spoil on the enemy side of the ditch. a. Used the T-push method. See performance measure 6a. b. Used the one-dozer or ACE method. c. Constructed the tank ditch within the time standards.  * 9. The crew leader reports the mission completion to higher headquarters (HQ). <b>NOTE: Locations of tank ditches are plotted on the Force XXI Battle Command Brigade and Below (FBCB2) System to provide SA to maneuver units.</b>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

### SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
052-195-3066	Direct Construction of Nonexplosive Obstacles
052-227-1200	Perform Dozing Operations With an Armored Combat Earthmover (ACE), M9
052-227-1240	Perform Scraper Operations With an Armored Combat Earthmover (ACE), M9
052-227-3121	Direct Construction of a Rectangular Tank Ditch
052-227-3122	Direct Construction of a V-Type Ditch
052-227-3301	Estimate Tank Ditch Production Requirements
052-227-3302	Direct Armored Combat Earthmover (ACE) Dozer/Scraper Operations
052-254-1037	Construct a Ditch With a Crawler Tractor
052-254-1043	Push Load the Scraper With a Crawler Tractor
052-254-1046	Remove Brush With a Crawler Tractor
052-254-1047	Remove Stumps With the Crawler Tractor
052-254-1049	Rip Material With a Crawler Tractor
052-254-2041	Construct a Berm With a Crawler Tractor
052-254-2047	Construct a Berm With a Motorized Scraper

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
05-2-7008	Prepare an Operation Order (OPORD) (Company/Platoon)
05-3-1020	Perform a Technical Reconnaissance
43-2-0001.05-T01A	Conduct Unit Level Maintenance Operations

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** Six Engineer Squads  
 Equipment Section  
 Two Engineer Platoons  
 Assault and Obstacle Platoon  
 Survivability Section  
 Mobility and Countermobility Section  
 Equipment Platoon Headquarters

**TASK:** Create a Crater Obstacle Using Explosives (05-3-2017)  
 (FM 5-34) (DA FORM 1355) (FM 5-250)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The element is ordered to create a crater obstacle using explosives. A target reconnaissance has been conducted, and the reconnaissance report is available. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The element creates a crater obstacle within 25 percent of the time estimated in the reconnaissance report. The crater is a minimum of 1.8 meters deep and 6 meters wide and the side slopes are a minimum of 25°. Locations are accurate within 10 meters. The crater is tied to existing or reinforced obstacles and blocks or disrupts an enemy main battle tank (MBT). They update overlays and provide Department of the Army (DA) Form 1355 (Minefield Record) according to the unit tactical standing operating procedure (TACSOP) and the applicable standardization agreement (STANAG). The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The element leader obtains technical information from the reconnaissance report.  <b>NOTE: The digital units request intelligence information by requesting All-Source Analysis System (ASAS) information and Digital Topographic Support System (DTSS) products from higher headquarters (HQ).</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Included a plan and a side-view sketch showing the overall dimensions and lines of cut.</li> <li>b. Included the location, depth, and quantity of explosives for each borehole and the method of ignition for each row of craters planned.</li> <li>c. Included a sketch showing firing circuits and firing points.</li> <li>d. Included a bill of explosives showing the quantity and types required, a list of the required equipment, and an estimate of the time and labor required to prepare and fire the demolition.</li> </ul> <p>2. The element picks up all materials and equipment needed for the demolition.</p> <p>3. The element prepares demolitions in the rear to minimize the time on site (such as cutting branch lines and priming blocks of explosives with detonating cord).  <b>NOTE: If possible, place the caps in a closed metal can and carry them separate from the explosives in the rear.</b></p> <p>* 4. The element leader issues orders using the five-paragraph field-order format.</p> <p>* 5. The element leader briefs each man on site security, noise and light discipline, and each member's specific tasks.</p> <p>6. The element moves to the obstacle location.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>7. The element places the shaped charges in locations identified by the element leader.</p> <p>* 8. The element leader coordinates with the maneuver commander to ensure that the final obstacle location is covered by direct or indirect fire and tied to existing or reinforced obstacles.</p> <p>9. The element connects the branch lines to the ring main and then primes the shaped charges.</p> <p><b>NOTE: Line mains can be used instead of ring mains, except on reserve targets, and modernized demolition initiator (MDI) can be used in place of detonating cord and time fuze.</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensured that the detonating-cord ring mains and branch lines had no sharp bends and did not cross over each other or themselves (except where connected by demolition knots or J-hooks).</li> <li>b. Primed the shaped charges using M11s or M16s.</li> <li>c. Ensured that the single-primed shaped charges were dual-initiated.</li> </ul> <p><b>NOTE: Did not dual-prime the shaped charges.</b></p> <p>10. The element detonates the shaped charges.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Attached the dual-initiation system to the detonating cord.</li> <li>b. Ensured that all element members were a safe distance away.</li> </ul> <p>11. The element prepares the holes blown by shaped charges to achieve the correct depth for the crater being employed.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensured that all the holes for a hasty crater were 1.5 meters deep.</li> <li>b. Ensured that the holes for a deliberate crater were alternately 1.5 meters and 2 meters deep, with 2-meter holes on both ends.</li> <li>c. Ensured that the enemy row of a relieved-face crater had 1.3-meter holes and the friendly row had 1.5-meter holes.</li> </ul> <p>12. The element dual-primed all boreholes.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Dual-primed the boreholes by placing a primed package of composition C4 (C4) explosive on the placement indicator marks and a second package of C4 parallel on the opposite side of the cratering charge (flush with the top) in the holes with only one cratering charge (1.5 meters deep).</li> <li>b. Primed both crater charges by placing a primed package of C4 on the placement indicator marks in the holes with two cratering charges. When placing the cratering charge in the borehole, ensured that the packages of C4 were on opposite sides of each other.</li> </ul> <p>13. The element lays the ring mains and ties in the branch lines with demolition knots or J-hooks.</p> <p><b>NOTE: Line mains can be used instead of ring mains, except on reserve targets. MDI can be used in place of detonating cord and time fuze.</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensured that two ring mains were required for each row of holes. On relieved-face craters, the friendly-row ring mains were covered with 15 centimeters of earth to prevent the detonating cord from being cut when the enemy row was detonated.</li> <li>b. Ensured that each system was independent.</li> <li>c. Ensured that the detonating-cord ring mains and the branch lines had no sharp bends and did not cross over each other or themselves (except where connected by demolition knots or J-hooks.).</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p><b>NOTE: If traffic must pass over the site before detonation, the branch lines and the ring mains are placed in 15-centimeter deep trenches, covered with a U-shaped picket, and backfilled with earth.</b></p> <p>14. The element prepares the demolition to state 1 (if a reserved target) and awaits orders to arm and detonate.</p> <p>15. The element prepares the demolition to state 1 (if a preliminary target) and advises higher HQ that they are ready to detonate the target.</p> <p><b>NOTE: In the event that permission is given to execute the target upon completion, the target is brought to state 2 and detonated.</b></p> <p>*16. The element leader may hand over the target to a demolition-firing party before firing.</p> <p><b>NOTE: Whenever possible, the hand over procedures are as detailed as those in the North Atlantic Treaty Organization (NATO) obstacle folder.</b></p> <p>*17. The element leader reports the intermediate status, completion, and results of the demolition to higher HQ.</p> <p>18. The element improves the obstacle by laying the mines, if authority is given.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Recorded the mines on DA Form 1355.</li> <li>Placed the mines at enemy-side approaches first, followed by the gap between the first and second lines of cut on the enemy side.</li> </ol>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

### SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
052-193-1310	Construct Demolition Firing Systems
052-193-1311	Prime Military Explosives
052-193-1312	Construct Demolition Initiating System
052-193-1313	Identify Characteristics of Military Demolitions and Explosives
052-193-2014	Determine the Safe Distance When Firing Explosives
052-193-2018	Place Cratering Charges
052-193-2030	Clear Misfires
052-193-3025	Calculate Explosive Requirements for Road Craters
052-193-3055	Prepare or Compile a Nonnuclear-Demolition Target Folder
052-193-4040	Manage Engineer Demolition Missions

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
05-1-2000	Prepare an Obstacle Plan
05-2-0008	Integrate Obstacles into Direct- and Indirect-Fire Plans
05-2-2013	Plan and Control Tactical Obstacles
05-3-2001	Emplace Situational Obstacles

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** Assault and Barrier Platoon Headquarters  
 Survivability Section  
 Mobility and Countermobility Section  
 Assault and Obstacle Platoon  
 Equipment Platoon Headquarters  
 Support Platoon Headquarters  
 Construction Platoon Headquarters  
 Two General Construction Sections  
 Dump Truck Section  
 Two Engineer Platoons  
 Six Engineer Squads

**TASK:** Prepare Preconstructed Obstacles (05-3-2018)  
 (FM 5-34) (FM 5-102) (STANAG 2123 (ENGR))

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The element leader is issued an obstacle folder and directed to emplace the obstacle in support of the unit mission. The element has all the required personnel and materials to complete the mission. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The element prepares prechamber shafts and beam post obstacles on bridges in compliance with the obstacle folder. The element completes a three-shaft, prechamber obstacle within 90 minutes. The squad completes a 54-beam post obstacle within 4 hours. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>1. The element prepares a prechamber shaft according to the standards or criteria outlined in the obstacle folder.</p> <p>* 2. The element leader draws the required demolition material from the location identified in the folder.</p> <p>* 3. The element leader obtains the special tools (T-handle wrenches, shaft cover lifting hooks, and loading poles) listed in the obstacle folder.</p> <p>4. The element prepares the shaft.</p> <p style="margin-left: 20px;">a. Opened the prechamber shaft nearest the enemy first.</p> <p style="margin-left: 20px;">b. Loaded each prechamber shaft with 25-kilogram DM41 charges (4 per meter of shaft depth).</p> <p><b>NOTE: The DM41 charge is designed to fit European prechamber shafts.</b></p> <p style="margin-left: 20px;">c. Dual-primed the last charge in each shaft.</p> <p style="margin-left: 20px;">d. Installed the firing system by using existing plastic lines to pull the branch lines through the conduit.</p> <p style="margin-left: 20px;">e. Laid ring mains along the side of the road.</p> <p>* 5. The element leader completes Section 5 of the obstacle folder and submits the completed folder to the platoon leader or sergeant.</p> <p><b>NOTE: The digital units populate the Force XXI Battle Command Brigade and Below (FBCB2) System with the obstacle locations and update the common operational picture (COP), providing situational awareness (SA) to friendly units according to the unit standing operating procedure (SOP).</b></p> <p>6. The element completes a three-shaft system within 90 minutes.</p>		



TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>7. The element prepares a beam post obstacle as directed in the obstacle folder.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Drew the required steel I beams from supply.</li> <li>b. Located the special tools (T-handle wrenches and lifting hooks) identified in the folder.</li> </ol> <p>8. The element opens the shaft covers and removes the crossbar beginning with the enemy row.</p> <p>9. The element carries an I beam and lowers it into the shaft, enemy row first.</p> <p><b>NOTE: The element may improve the enemy-side double row by placing two rolls of concertina, one on top of the other, over each row of beams. It positions a camouflage net over the entire double row.</b></p> <p>10. The element completes three double rows 12 meters wide (54 I beams) in 4 hours and reports the intermediate status and completion to higher headquarters (HQ).</p> <p>*11. The element leader completes the obstacle folder and submits it to the platoon leader or sergeant.</p> <p>12. The element draws the required demolition material from the location identified in the folder.</p> <p>13. The element places charges as directed in the obstacle folder and prepares the firing systems.</p> <p><b>NOTE: If the charges are dual-primed, the crew ensures that each system is independent.</b></p> <p>14. The element prepares the demolition target.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Prepared the demolition target to state 1, if it was a preliminary target.</li> <li>b. Advised higher HQ that it was ready to execute the target.</li> </ol> <p><b>NOTE: If permission is given to execute the target upon completion, the target is brought to state 2 and executed following the procedures outlined in Standardization Agreement (STANAG) 2123 (Engr).</b></p> <p>*15. The element leader, following procedures in the obstacle folder, may turn over the target to a demolition firing party.</p> <p>*16. The element leader reports the intermediate status, completion, and results of the demolition to higher HQ.</p> <p><b>NOTES:</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The element leader may improve the obstacle as directed in the obstacle folder (such as laying mines).</li> <li>2. The digital units populate the Army Battle Command System (ABCS) with obstacle locations according to the unit tactical SOP (TACSOP).</li> </ol> <p>*17. The element leader completes Section 5 of the obstacle folder and submits the completed folder to the platoon leader or sergeant.</p> <p><b>NOTE: The digital units submit reports and update the SA using digital means.</b></p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
052-193-1310	Construct Demolition Firing Systems
052-193-1311	Prime Military Explosives
052-193-3055	Prepare or Compile a Nonnuclear-Demolition Target Folder
052-195-4050	Prepare Engineer Estimates

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
05-2-7008	Prepare an Operation Order (OPORD) (Company/Platoon)
05-3-1019	Perform a Target Reconnaissance
05-3-2001	Emplace Situational Obstacles

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** Two Engineer Platoons  
Six Engineer Squads  
Equipment Section

**TASK:** Construct Wire Obstacles (05-3-2019)  
(FM 20-32) (FM 5-102) (FM 5-34)  
(FM 90-7) (STANAG 2123 (ENGR))

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)  
**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The element receives a fragmentary order (FRAGO) or an operation order (OPORD) to construct a wire obstacle at an 8-digit grid location to reinforce terrain in support of the scheme of maneuver. The element has the materials and personnel available to construct the wire obstacle. The wire obstacle may be emplaced as a tactical or protective obstacle. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The element emplaces the obstacle to standard according to higher headquarters (HQ) requirements (tactical [disrupt, fix, turn, or block] or protective) and the timeline specified in the FRAGO or OPORD. The element sites and constructs the obstacle, performs an obstacle turnover, and reports to higher HQ or the supported maneuver unit HQ. The element updates overlays and provides the appropriate reports according to the unit tactical standing operating procedure (TACSOP) and the appropriate standardization agreement (STANAG). The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The element leader receives a FRAGO or OPORD to construct a wire obstacle to reinforce the terrain in support of the scheme of maneuver.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Conducted a thorough map reconnaissance, including the route and the terrain.</li> <li>b. Reviewed the unit standing operating procedure (SOP) or TACSOP.</li> <li>c. Conducted troop-leading procedures.</li> <li>d. Conducted precombat checks (PCCs) and precombat inspections (PCIs).</li> <li>e. Conducted a risk-management assessment and a safety briefing according to the unit SOP or TACSOP.</li> <li>f. Requested barrier materials based on the type of wire obstacle to be installed.</li> </ul> <p>* 2. The element leader prepares to construct a wire obstacle.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Reconnoitered the site to consider needed security, potential actions on contact, and the accessibility of materials.</li> <li>b. Organized the work party.</li> </ul> <p>* 3. The element leader and overwatch units site the obstacle as part of the overwatch unit engagement area (EA) development process.</p> <p><b>NOTE: Cover the obstacle with direct and/or indirect fire.</b></p> <p>4. The element constructs the wire obstacle.</p> <p><b>NOTE: The digital units report obstacle completion and locations by populating the Force XXI Battle Command Brigade and Below (FBCB2) System and report to higher HQ according to the unit TACSOP.</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Used triple-standard concertina.               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Worked from the enemy side to the friendly side.</li> <li>(2) Spaced the pickets at 3.8-meter (5 pace) intervals.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p><b>NOTE: One meter equals 1.3 paces.</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(3) Staggered the rear row.</li> <li>(4) Secured the bottom rolls with horizontal wire on both the enemy side and the friendly side.</li> <li>(5) Anchored the horizontal wire to the anchor (short) pickets, 1.5 meters (2 paces) from the end of the long pickets.</li> <li>(6) Secured the top roll, the horizontal wire, and the bottom roll on the friendly side with wire ties midway between the pickets.</li> <li>(7) Completed construction within the time standard of 1-squad hour per 100 meters during daylight or 1.5-squad hours per 100 meters in darkness.</li> </ul> <p>b. Prepared the knife rest.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Prepared a knife rest 3 to 5 meters long.</li> <li>(2) Secured the knife rest to the ground 3 to 5 meters between the cross members with a minimum height of 1.2 meters and tightly lashed it together.</li> <li>(3) Completed construction within the time standard of 1-squad hour per knife rest during daylight or 1.5-squad hours per knife rest in darkness.</li> </ul> <p>c. Prepared a double-apron, 4-2 pace fence.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Laid the fence centerline.</li> <li>(2) Spaced the long pickets at 3-meter (4 pace) intervals.</li> <li>(3) Spaced anchor pickets 1.5 meters (2 paces) in each direction away from the centerline and midway between the long pickets.</li> <li>(4) Installed all 12 wires, working from the enemy side to the friendly side.</li> </ul> <p><b>NOTE: No antitank mines should be placed in the fence.</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(5) Used the correct wire ties and ensured that all of the wires were tight.</li> <li>(6) Completed construction within the time standard of 3-squad hours per 100 meters during daylight or 4.5-squad hours per 100 meters in darkness.</li> </ul> <p>d. Constructed an 11-row, antivehicular wire obstacle.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Spaced pickets at 3.8-meter (5 pace) intervals.</li> <li>(2) Placed the concertina wire over the long pickets and placed a log with a diameter of 20 centimeters between the 5th and 6th rows.</li> <li>(3) Anchored the horizontal wires to the anchor stakes, 1.5 meters (2 paces) from each end of the concertina.</li> <li>(4) Ensured that the obstacle was no less than 10 meters (11 rows) deep.</li> <li>(5) Completed construction within the time standard of 1-squad hour during daylight or 2-squad hours in darkness.</li> </ul> <p><b>NOTE: The time standard given is for entanglements that are 15 meters wide and 10 meters (11 rows) deep.</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* 5. The element leader ensures that the wire obstacle meets the commander's intent and requirements.</li> <li>* 6. The element leader submits initiation reports, status updates, and completion reports to higher HQ according to the unit SOP or TACSOP.</li> <li>* 7. The element leader conducts an obstacle turnover to the overwatch unit according to the unit SOP or TACSOP.</li> </ul>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

#### SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
052-192-2175	Direct the Installation of Booby Traps
052-193-3055	Prepare or Compile a Nonnuclear-Demolition Target Folder
052-195-1004	Install Pickets, Barbed Wire, and Concertina
052-195-1020	Install Wire Obstacle Materials
052-195-2101	Direct Construction of Wire Entanglements
052-195-3066	Direct Construction of Nonexplosive Obstacles
052-195-3067	Determine Logistical Requirements for Wire Obstacles

#### SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
05-1-2000	Prepare an Obstacle Plan
05-2-7008	Prepare an Operation Order (OPORD) (Company/Platoon)

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

- ELEMENTS:** Six Engineer Squads  
 Equipment Section  
 Survivability Section  
 Mobility and Countermobility Section  
 Support Platoon Headquarters  
 Construction Platoon Headquarters  
 Two General Construction Sections  
 Two Engineer Platoons  
 Assault and Obstacle Platoon  
 Assault and Barrier Platoon Headquarters

**TASK:** Construct a Log Obstacle (05-3-2020)  
 (FM 5-102) (FM 5-34)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)  
**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The maneuver commander orders the element to construct log obstacles to support the defensive scheme. Intelligence reports indicate that adequate standing timber is on site. A small emplacement excavator (SEE) or a front-end loader is available, and the platoon provides local job security. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The element constructs a log obstacle tied to existing or reinforced obstacles to block or delay the enemy. Obstacles stop or delay an enemy main battle tank (MBT). The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The element leader or the platoon sergeant conducts a ground reconnaissance with the squad leaders, if possible. Identified—  <b>NOTE: The digital units send orders and reports and perform map reconnaissance using the Army Battle Command System (ABCS) according to the unit tactical standing operating procedure (TACSOP).</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. The dispersion areas.</li> <li>b. The routes to and from the site.</li> <li>c. The availability and location of materials.</li> <li>d. The overwatch positions.</li> </ul> <p><b>NOTE: The digital units conduct the above performance measures using the Force XXI Battle Command Brigade and Below (FBCB2) System.</b></p> <p>2. The element constructs log hurdles.  <b>NOTE: The digital units report the completion of obstacles and their locations by populating the FBCB2 and reporting to higher headquarters (HQ) according to the unit TACSOP.</b></p> <p>* 3. The element leader selects a site where log hurdles cannot be readily bypassed. He sites the hurdles on the steepest part of a slope, as near as possible to the top.</p> <p>* 4. The element leader selects three 25-centimeter-diameter logs or one 45-centimeter-diameter log for each hurdle.</p> <p>5. The platoon prepares the logs.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Staked the logs firmly in place across a roadway or on the ground of a bypass route.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>b. Lashed the logs to the securing stakes, placing the stakes no more than 1.5 meters apart.</li> <li>c. Buried the stakes at least 60 centimeters in the ground, with 60 centimeters remaining above ground.</li> <li>d. Constructed each log hurdle within 1-squad hour.</li> </ul> <p>* 6. The element leader sends the progress completion reports to higher HQ by secure means.</p> <p>* 7. The element leader determines the log crib to construct and ties it into the natural terrain so that it cannot be readily bypassed.</p> <p>8. The platoon constructs a rectangular log crib.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Constructed the rectangular log crib with a 6-meter front, facing one corner of the triangular log crib towards the enemy.</li> <li>b. Used only logs that were at least 20 centimeters in diameter.</li> </ul> <p>* 9. The element leader ensures that all vertical logs are cut about 3 meters long and emplaced 1.5 meters below the ground.</p> <p>10. The platoon constructs a log-post obstacle.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Placed the vertical logs 1.8 meters apart.</li> <li>b. Secured the logs together and filled the center with earth taken from the enemy side of the obstacle.</li> <li>c. Constructed the log crib within 8-platoon hours.</li> <li>d. Constructed a log-post obstacle.</li> </ul> <p>*11. The element leader determines the length and depth of the log-post obstacle and ties it into the natural terrain so that it cannot be easily bypassed.</p> <p>12. The platoon constructs and attaches the wire.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Constructed a log-post obstacle that was at least four rows, had an irregular spacing of 1 to 2 meters between posts, had an irregular height of 75 to 120 centimeters, was 1.5-meters underground, and was at least 40 centimeters in diameter.</li> <li>b. Attached the wire to the log posts in an irregular pattern.</li> </ul> <p>*13. The element leader determines the work rate based on the length of the front and available personnel and equipment (such as a pile driver, auger, or hand tools).</p> <p>14. The platoon constructs the log-post obstacle within plus 10 percent of the time calculated in step 13.</p> <p>*15. The element leader sends progress completion reports to higher HQ by secure means.</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
052-195-3066	Direct Construction of Nonexplosive Obstacles
052-253-1206	Backfill an Area Using a Small-Emplacement Excavator (SEE)
052-256-3047	Direct Scoop Loader Operations
052-256-3048	Direct Utility Tractor Operations

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
05-1-6002	Request Nonstandard Geospatial Products
05-2-0018	Conduct Report Procedures
05-2-7008	Prepare an Operation Order (OPORD) (Company/Platoon)
05-3-1004	Perform an Obstacle and Restriction Reconnaissance
05-6-0002	Prepare an Engineer Estimate

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**



**ELEMENTS:** Company Headquarters  
 Two Engineer Platoons  
 Six Engineer Squads  
 Equipment Section

**TASK:** Establish a Hasty Position (05-3-3011)  
 (FM 7-7)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The element is ordered, by the company commander, to halt for an indefinite period. The element leader orders the subordinate elements to establish hasty fighting positions. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The element establishes local security and tenable defensive positions, which provides early warning and protection from enemy attack. The element is not surprised by the enemy. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The element leader conducts a reconnaissance of tentative fighting positions.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. The drivers stopped the vehicles in covered and concealed positions.</li> <li>b. Personnel dismounted and assumed tentative, hasty fighting positions.</li> <li>c. Leaders checked the tentative positions.</li> <li>d. Leaders designated sectors and general locations for observation posts (OPs), vehicles, and designated critical weapons systems.</li> </ul> <p><b>NOTE: At night, element leaders take special precautions in designating positions. They reconnoiter the area first, position the OPs, and then have guides bring the other members into position.</b></p> <p>2. The designated security or OP team moves to an assigned position and sets up security.</p> <p>3. The element prepares designated positions.</p> <p>* 4. The vehicle commanders guide the vehicles into hull down positions and cover and conceal positions using existing reverse slopes, ravines, saddles, ditches, or draws.</p> <p>* 5. The element leader assigns each vehicle a primary forward position, at least one alternate position, and a sector of fire.</p> <p>* 6. The element leader assigns each rifle team to a primary and alternate position. He assigns a sector of fire for crew-served weapons and has antitank weaponry cover likely avenues of approach.</p> <p>7. The element prepares prone positions at least 50 centimeters deep, using holes and ditches if available.</p> <p>* 8. The element leader rapidly checks positions selected by platoon members.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
NOTE: At this point, the element leader may begin a more deliberate defense. The platoon leader selects exact fighting positions, coordinates with adjacent elements, and starts to prepare the range cards. Platoon members prepare positions according to the order of the element leader or the unit standing operating procedure (SOP). The digital units update the Army Battle Command System (ABCS), providing current situational awareness according to the unit tactical SOP (TACSOP).		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title
05-2-3002	Camouflage Vehicles and Equipment

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

- ELEMENTS:** Company Headquarters  
 Assault and Barrier Platoon Headquarters  
 Survivability Section  
 Mobility and Countermobility Section  
 Assault and Obstacle Platoon  
 Support Platoon Headquarters  
 Construction Platoon Headquarters  
 Two General Construction Sections  
 Dump Truck Section  
 Two Engineer Platoons  
 Six Engineer Squads

**TASK:** Construct Combat Roads and Trails (05-3-5101)  
 (FM 5-430-00-1) (FM 5-34) (FM 5-430-00-2)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)  
**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The element receives a mission directive to construct a combat trail or road. The directive specifies the start- and end-points, the general route location, lane requirements, traffic density (vehicle types and numbers), and completion time. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The element constructs the combat road or trail, providing unimpeded passage of the traffic for which it was designed. The combat road or trail is constructed no later than the time prescribed in the directive. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* 1. The element leader conducts troop-leading procedures.</li> <li>* 2. The element leader coordinates with the company for construction equipment, tools, materials, and a trafficability test set.</li> <li>* 3. The element leader or sergeant establishes jobsite security.</li> <li>4. The element constructs a combat trail.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Established the start- and end-points as specified in the directive and followed the general route.</li> <li>b. Cleared and grubbed the route to the depth of the topsoil by removing trees, shrubs, stumps, roots, rocks, and any other obstacle impeding smooth vehicle movement, as required.</li> <li>c. Ensured that the trail was 1 lane wide or 6 meters, plus or minus 1 meter.</li> <li>d. Ensured that route grades did not exceed the capability of the expected vehicles, making cuts and fills or minor route centerline changes to correct excessive grades.</li> <li>e. Installed expedient surfacing according to the mission directive or surface situation. The expedient surface depends on the available materials.</li> </ul> </li> <li>5. The element constructs a combat road.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Established start- and end-points as specified in the directive and followed the general route.</li> <li>b. Cleared and grubbed the route to the depth of the topsoil by removing trees, shrubs, stumps, roots, rocks, and any other obstacle.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>c. Ensured that the road width was according to the directive.                      (1) A 1-lane road was 6 meters, plus or minus 1 meter.                      (2) A 2-lane road was 12 meters, plus or minus 1 meter.</p> <p>d. Ensured that route grades did not exceed the capability of the expected vehicles, making cuts and fills or minor route centerline changes to correct excessive grades.</p> <p>e. Used the trafficability test set and ensured that the trafficability rating cone index met or exceeded the vehicle cone index.</p> <p>f. Ensured that flowing water did not interfere with the traffic flow by constructing expedient fords or culverts to carry the water across or under the road.                      (1) Constructed an expedient ford by–                      (a) Ensuring that the slopes for approaches were no greater than a ratio of 1:3 for wheeled vehicles and 1:2 for tracked vehicles.                      (b) Removing material from the banks to the side of the approach and ensuring that it was not deposited in the stream.</p> <p>(2) Prepared the bottom of the ford by–                      (a) Filling short, deep gaps with rock or gravel.                      (b) Preparing soft-mud bottoms with tree limbs, brush, or timbers and covering them with rock or coarse gravel.                      (c) Ensuring that the width was 6 meters, plus or minus 1 meter.</p> <p>(3) Marked the edges of the ford. Ensured that the poles extended at least 1.5 meters above the water level and were placed 1.5 meters apart across the stream width on both sides of the ford.</p> <p>(4) Assembled and installed culverts.                      (5) Constructed roadside ditches, as required.</p> <p>g. Installed expedient surfacing according to the mission directive or surface situation.</p> <p><b>NOTE: The expedient surface depends on the available materials.</b></p> <p>* 6. The element leader submits status reports to the company according to the unit standing operating procedure (SOP).</p> <p><b>NOTE: Digital units send reports and populate the Army Battle Command System (ABCS) with the location of crossing sites and road status according to the unit tactical standing operating procedure (TACSOP).</b></p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title
052-193-1310	Construct Demolition Firing Systems
052-193-1311	Prime Military Explosives
052-193-1312	Construct Demolition Initiating System

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
052-193-2015	Place Timber-Cutting Charges
052-193-3022	Calculate Timber-Cutting Charges
052-196-2002	Determine the Radius of Curves
052-227-1005	Perform Operator Preventive-Maintenance Checks and Services (PMCS) on an Armored Combat Earthmover (ACE), M9
052-227-1200	Perform Dozing Operations With an Armored Combat Earthmover (ACE), M9
052-227-1240	Perform Scraper Operations With an Armored Combat Earthmover (ACE), M9
052-227-3302	Direct Armored Combat Earthmover (ACE) Dozer/Scraper Operations
052-243-1251	Determine the Plasticity Index of a Soil
052-243-1253	Determine the In-Place Soil Density by Sand Cone Method
052-243-1254	Determine the In-Place Soil Density and the Moisture Content by Nuclear Method
052-243-1500	Determine the Moisture Content of a Soil
052-243-1502	Obtain a Representative Soil Sample
052-243-1503	Determine the Specific Gravity of a Soil
052-243-1506	Classify a Soil Using the Unified Soil Classification System
052-243-3415	Determine Soil Stabilization Methods
052-253-1049	Roll Material With a 9-Wheel, Self-Propelled Roller
052-253-1055	Roll Material With a Steel Wheel Roller
052-253-1059	Pressure Fill a Water Distributor
052-253-1060	Spray an Area Using a Water Distributor
052-253-1205	Load Haul Unit(s) Using a Small-Emplacement Excavator (SEE)
052-253-1206	Backfill an Area Using a Small-Emplacement Excavator (SEE)
052-254-1038	Construct a Stockpile With a Crawler Tractor
052-254-1040	Spread a Stockpile With a Crawler Tractor
052-254-1046	Remove Brush With a Crawler Tractor
052-254-1047	Remove Stumps With the Crawler Tractor
052-254-1049	Rip Material With a Crawler Tractor
052-254-1052	Construct a V Ditch With a Motorized Grader
052-254-1053	Level a Road With a Motorized Grader
052-254-1054	Scarify Material With a Motorized Grader
052-254-1055	Spread Piles of Loose Material With a Motorized Grader
052-254-1057	Backfill With a Scoop Loader
052-254-1058	Construct a Stockpile With a Scoop Loader
052-254-1059	Excavate With a Scoop Loader
052-254-1060	Load a Haul Unit With a Scoop Loader
052-254-1061	Move a Load With a Scoop Loader Clamshell
052-254-1070	Spread Fill Material With a Motorized Scraper
052-254-1075	Construct a Stockpile With a Deployable Universal Combat Earthmover (DEUCE)
052-254-1076	Spread a Stockpile With the Deployable Universal Combat Earthmover (DEUCE)
052-254-2044	Final Grade an Area With the Motorized Grader
052-254-2045	Finish Slopes With a Motorized Grader

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
05-1-0026	Report Engineer Information
05-1-0700	Perform Combat Construction Survey Operations
05-2-0018	Conduct Report Procedures
05-3-0013	Conduct Troop-Leading Procedures
05-3-1015	Clear Obstacles Using Demolitions
05-3-1016	Perform a Route Classification

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
05-3-3006	Establish Jobsite Security
05-3-5106	Install Culverts
05-3-5109	Clear Obstacles Using Engineer Equipment

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** Company Headquarters  
 Two Engineer Platoons  
 Six Engineer Squads  
 Equipment Section

**TASK:** React to Indirect Fire (07-1-1923.05-T01A)  
 (FM 7-7) (FM 3-21.71) (FM 7-10)  
 (FM 7-8)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The element is moving, halted, or occupying a defensive position. Any member of the platoon gives the alert, INCOMING, or a round impacts on or near their location. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** Within 2 seconds of the alert, the leader designates the direction and the distance to move. The platoon moves to the specified location. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The element reacts to indirect fire while moving mounted.</li> <li>2. The drivers move rapidly out of the impact area in the direction ordered by the leader.</li> <li>3. The personnel close all hatches.</li> <li>4. Vehicle commanders repeat, INCOMING, to alert squad personnel.</li> <li>* 5. The element leader gives the direction and distance to move; for example, 3 O'CLOCK, 200 METERS.</li> <li>6. The element reacts to indirect fire while moving dismounted.                         <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensured that if vehicles with mounted weapons were available, the vehicles—                                 <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Halted as close as possible to the dismounted team, allowing personnel to mount.</li> <li>(2) Moved rapidly out of the impact area in the direction ordered by the squad leader.</li> </ol> </li> <li>b. Ensured that if vehicles were not available, dismounted personnel kept low and ran out of the impact area in the direction and at the distance ordered by the squad leader.</li> </ol> </li> <li>7. The element reacts to indirect fire when in a defensive position.                         <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Moved the vehicles immediately out of the impact area to alternate positions.</li> <li>b. Protected any dismounted personnel by having each one go under the overhead cover of their fighting positions.</li> </ol> </li> <li>8. The element members move to designated rally points according to the element operation order (OPORD).</li> <li>9. The element establishes immediate security at the designated rally point.</li> <li>10. The element consolidates and reorganizes.</li> </ol>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
*11. The element leader submits a shelling report (SHELREP) or a mortar bombing report (MORTREP) to higher headquarters (HQ). <b>NOTE: The digital units send the SHELREP using frequency-modulated (FM) or digital means or the Force XXI Battle Command Brigade and Below (FBCB2) System according to the unit tactical standing operating procedure (TSOP).</b>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title
05-2-0018	Conduct Report Procedures

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**



- ELEMENTS:** Battalion Headquarters  
 Company Headquarters  
 Assault and Barrier Platoon Headquarters  
 S3 Section  
 Assault and Obstacle Platoon  
 Maintenance Platoon Headquarters  
 Headquarters and Headquarters Company Maintenance Section  
 Support Platoon Headquarters  
 Construction Platoon Headquarters  
 Two Engineer Platoons  
 Six Engineer Squads  
 Equipment Section

**TASK:** Conduct Passage of Lines (Passing/Stationary) (07-2-1125.05-T01A)  
 (FM 7-10) (FM 7-92)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The element is required to conduct a passage of lines. The enemy can attack by air, indirect fire, and up to company-sized (mounted or dismounted) forces. The unit may be augmented with additional maneuver, combat support (CS), or combat service support (CSS) assets. Civilians, government agencies, nongovernmental organizations, and local and international media may be in the area. Rules of engagement (ROE) and rules of interaction (ROI) have been published. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The element coordinates with the stationary unit, exchanges all the required information, and reports the results of the coordination. The passage is conducted at the time specified in the operation order (OPORD). There is no compromise of security, and the battle handover is completed as specified. If available, the company uses digital equipment as necessary or as directed to accomplish the mission. No friendly unit suffers casualties or damage to equipment as a result of fratricide. The company complies with the ROE and the ROI. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p><b>NOTE:</b> The Digital Navigation System equipment allows constant situational awareness (SA) between elements conducting a linkup, passage of lines, or a relief operation (any operation that involves friendly units moving toward each other) to aid navigation and fratricide prevention. For example, a moving squad or vehicle can monitor the location of a stationary unit and linkup site using the position updates and digital graphics displayed on the digital display. The stationary unit can also monitor the location of the moving unit as it moves along the prescribed route to the linkup point by monitoring position updates on the digital display. As the moving force closes on the linkup site, the stationary force is more aware of its presence and location, reducing the possibility of fratricide. The moving unit does the same type of monitoring to reduce fratricide potential. Once the moving unit nears the linkup location, the stationary unit should challenge it. This may be done using any prearranged signals, to include digitally, visually, or audible sounds. For example, the stationary unit can give the moving unit a series of flashes using an infrared source during limited visibility. The moving force responds with a precoordinated number of flashes. The challenge and password is also used between the two units, digitally or verbally.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* 1. The commander receives an OPORD from higher headquarters (HQ) and initiates planning and coordination for the operation.</li> <li>* 2. The passing force commander meets the stationary unit commander and arranges for a specific time and location for coordinating the passage of respective companies (platoon leaders should be included).</li> <li>3. The element conducts digital command and control (C2) of operations.               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Maintained SA.</li> <li>b. Submitted reports and overlays.</li> <li>c. Directed movement, positioning, and fires.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 4. The leader or his representative coordinates the passage through and reentry of the lines with the forward unit leader or his representative.               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Gave the unit identification.</li> <li>b. Gave the times of departure and return.</li> <li>c. Gave the unit area of operations (AO).</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 5. The stationary unit commander provides the leader or his representative with the following:               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Provided terrain information.</li> <li>b. Provided known or suspected enemy positions.</li> <li>c. Provided likely enemy ambush sites.</li> <li>d. Provided the latest enemy activity.</li> <li>e. Provided detailed information on friendly positions.</li> <li>f. Provided obstacle locations.</li> <li>g. Provided the fire support plan.</li> <li>h. Provided unit support (fire support, litter teams, guides, communications, or reaction forces).</li> <li>i. Provided signal operation instructions (SOI) information, the signal plan, the reentry signal, the running password, and procedures to be used by the unit and guide during departure and reentry.</li> <li>j. Provided the locations of the dismounting point (if needed), the company assembly area (AA), routes, and contact and passage points.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 6. Leaders of the two units plan for and coordinate the following:               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Coordinated the exchange of enemy intelligence.</li> <li>b. Planned for the reconnaissance of positions and routes.</li> <li>c. Coordinated the scheme of maneuver of the passing unit.</li> <li>d. Coordinated the exchange of communication information.</li> <li>e. Planned for recognition signals for the passage.</li> <li>f. Planned for guides (down to squad level) and traffic control measures.</li> <li>g. Planned for security measures for the passage.</li> <li>h. Coordinated fire support responsibilities and fire plans.</li> <li>i. Coordinated the transfer of responsibility and actions on enemy contact during passage.</li> <li>j. Coordinated CSS.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 7. Leaders coordinate specific control measures for the passage.               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Included contact points.</li> <li>b. Included passage routes and lanes.</li> <li>c. Included passage points.</li> <li>d. Included release points (RPs).</li> <li>e. Included AAs (rearward passage).</li> </ul> </li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 8. Leaders exchange call signs, frequencies, code words, signals, challenges, and passwords to be used at the battle handover line.</p> <p>* 9. The commander and leaders physically locate the following during the reconnaissance:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Located passage routes and lanes.</li> <li>b. Located passage points.</li> <li>c. Located obstacle locations and safety lanes.</li> <li>d. Located RPs.</li> <li>e. Located AAs (for rearward passage).</li> <li>f. Located contact points.</li> <li>g. Located positions and actions of the stationary force during passage.</li> <li>h. Located CS and CSS elements, command posts (CPs), observation posts (OPs), and Javelin and mortar positions.</li> </ul> <p>*10. Both leaders ensure that their reconnaissance and other activities do not reveal the operation to the enemy. Stationary unit activities continue normally throughout the passage and continue after transfer of responsibility for the zone or sector.</p> <p>*11. The leader or his representative checks with other leaders who will be operating in the same or adjacent areas, and they exchange any information that will assist them with their operations.</p> <p>12. The unit arrives and moves into a secure position as designated in the primary coordination meeting by the stationary company commander.</p> <p>*13. The leader issues a contingency plan before moving out to make final coordination.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Briefed the elements on what was happening and what was going to happen.</li> <li>b. Briefed the elements on the ROE and the ROI.</li> <li>c. Confirmed the chain of command.</li> <li>d. Briefed the actions to be taken on contact.</li> <li>e. Briefed the actions to be taken in the absence of the leader.</li> <li>f. Provided the time schedule, suspenses, and any limits on the actions.</li> </ul> <p>*14. The leader completes the final coordination according to task step 5, with the stationary unit leader or his representative at the CP.</p> <p>15. The company moves at the designated time to a covered and concealed position near the contact point.</p> <p>16. The elements link up with the guides that lead the security element from the contact points through the passage lanes and passage points to the RPs.</p> <p><b>NOTE: The movement technique used may make the clearing team unnecessary; for example, the bounding overwatch.</b></p> <p>17. The security element clears the area forward of the RPs to the first covered and concealed position.</p> <p>18. The company moves forward to the RPs after the area is cleared</p> <p>19. The guides identify and account for all vehicles or personnel passing through the passage points, contact points, and RPs.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>20. The executive officer (XO), first sergeant (1SG), or a platoon sergeant (PSG) counts the company through the RPs.</p> <p>21. Both leaders collocate at a point to observe critical areas, make timely decisions during the passage, and facilitate passage of responsibility for battle handover. Passage movement is continuous.</p> <p>22. The company moves beyond the friendly unit final protection fires (FPF). After this, the company may execute a security halt.</p> <p>23. The XO, 1SG, or PSG does not move forward from the RP until the leader is sure that he will not have to withdraw through the passage point.</p> <p>24. The companies move rapidly through the passage lanes to an AA or a new overwatch position.</p> <p>25. The company complies with the ROE and the ROI.</p> <p>26. The company or platoon reenters through the lines.</p> <p>27. The company halts and establishes security.</p> <p><b>NOTE: If in contact with the enemy, the company does not halt. The contact party or guides from the stationary unit lead the unit through the passage points, or long-range recognition signals are used to keep moving.</b></p> <p>28. The leader contacts the forward unit and informs it that the unit is ready to reenter.</p> <p><b>NOTE: The leader may remain outside friendly lines until daylight. If communications are not possible, a reconnaissance and security team contacts an OP before reentry, using the appropriate recognition signals or communication system. The OP then contacts the friendly unit leader. If no communications can be established and no OPs can be found, the leader directs a small security team to reconnoiter for the coordinated contact point.</b></p> <p>29. The leader directs a security team to the contact point when the message is acknowledged.</p> <p>30. The security team establishes contact with the guide using far-and-near recognition signals.</p> <p>31. The security team signals the company forward or goes back and leads the company to the passage point.</p> <p>32. The 1SG or XO and PSG count and identify each platoon as it passes through the passage point.</p> <p>33. The guides lead the unit, without halting, to an AA behind the friendly unit.</p> <p>34. The leader reports to the CP of the forward unit and gives the commander the tactical information in the commander's area of responsibility.</p> <p>35. The leader links up with the platoon in the AA and then leads the company back to a secure area for debriefing.</p> <p>36. The company or platoon conducts stationary unit activities.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Established and manned contact points.</li> <li>b. Coordinated with the passing unit and exchanged information listed in task steps 3 through 7.</li> <li>c. Selected guides to link up with the passing unit at the coordinated time.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
d. Provided CS and CSS to the unit, if required. <b>NOTE: Support may include evacuation of casualties, fire support, and resupply of fuel and ammunition.</b>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title
05-2-0018	Conduct Report Procedures
05-6-0066	Conduct Liaison Operations

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** Company Headquarters  
 Two Engineer Platoons  
 Six Engineer Squads  
 Equipment Section

**TASK:** Occupy an Assembly Area (AA) (07-2-1136.05-T02A)  
 (FM 7-10) (FM 24-19) (FM 24-35)  
 (FM 7-7) (FM 7-8) (TC 24-20)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The element has been given the order to move and occupy an AA in preparation for combat operations. The enemy has the capability to attack with indirect fire, combined arms support, and platoon-size elements. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The quartering party completes AA preparations and guides the main body of the element into its respective positions no later than the time specified in the operation order (OPORD). Movement into the AA is uninterrupted; elements are not held up outside the AA. The enemy does not surprise the main body of the element. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* 1. The element leader organizes a quartering party.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Selected personnel.</li> <li>b. Determined the requirement for a combat vehicle and crew based on transportation and security requirements.</li> <li>c. Determined essential equipment needed.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 2. The element leader briefs the quartering party.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Identified the location of the AA.</li> <li>b. Gave specific instructions upon arrival at the AA.</li> <li>c. Relayed the arrival time of the main body at the AA.</li> <li>d. Identified the march order.</li> <li>e. Relayed nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) conditions.</li> <li>f. Issued a contingency plan in case of enemy contact.</li> <li>g. Established the MOPP level.</li> </ul> </li> <li>3. The quartering party moves along the march route.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Maintained security.</li> <li>b. Reconnoitered the march route from the start point (SP) to the release point (RP) using the digital situational awareness (SA) overlay on the Digital Reconnaissance System (DRS).</li> <li>c. Monitored for NBC contamination.</li> <li>d. Marked obstacles and bypass routes.</li> <li>e. Reported critical information to the quartering party leader.</li> </ul> </li> <li>4. The quartering party moves into the element AA and prepares the area for the arrival of the element.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Selected and marked the routes from the RP to the new location.</li> <li>b. Selected and posted guides in time to meet the main body.</li> <li>c. Marked entrances, exits, and internal routes.</li> <li>d. Marked vehicle positions where maximum cover, concealment, and dispersion provided 360-degree security.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>e. Marked or removed mines and obstacles. f. Organized and posted local security.</p> <p>5. The element occupies the AA. a. Moved the covered and concealed quartering party guides to selected or designated areas without halting. b. Established and maintained local security from air and ground forces.</p> <p>6. The element establishes the AA perimeter. a. Established the priority of work, which may vary depending on the unit standing operating procedure (SOP) and the mission, enemy, terrain, troops, time available, and civilian considerations (METT-TC). b. Positioned vehicles and crew-served weapons to cover the sectors of fire. c. Established observation posts (OPs) on the critical avenues of approach. d. Established digital and FM communications between all positions using wire communications, if the time and situation permitted. e. Prepared range cards. f. Constructed individual and crew-served fighting positions. g. Cleared the fields of fire. h. Camouflaged positions. i. Emplaced chemical-agent alarms and early warning devices.</p> <p>7. The element performs internal AA operations. a. Conducted preventive-maintenance checks and services (PMCS) on vehicles and equipment. b. Distributed ammunition, rations, water, supplies, and special equipment. c. Established personal hygiene and field sanitation sites. d. Maintained noise, light, and camouflage discipline. e. Instituted a rest plan for element members and leaders. f. Inspected the AA.</p> <p>* 8. The element leader coordinates with the elements on the left and the right as a minimum. a. Established responsibility for overlapping enemy avenues of approach between adjacent elements. b. Exchanged information on the OP locations and element signals. c. Coordinated local counterattacks. d. Developed a defensive plan and forwarded it to higher headquarters (HQ).</p> <p>* 9. Leaders develop contingency plans. a. Developed an evacuation plan. b. Developed a plan of action on enemy contact.</p> <p>10. The unit conducts rehearsals. a. Rehearsed the evacuation plan. b. Rehearsed the plan of action on enemy contact.</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title
07-2-1301.05-T01A	Conduct a Convoy
07-3-1123.05-T01A	Conduct a Tactical Road March
07-3-C211.05-T01A	Move Tactically
11-5-0121.05-T01A	Provide a Field Cable or Wire System
11-5-1102.05-T01A	Install, Operate, and Maintain a Single-Channel, Ground and Airborne Radio System (SINCGARS) Frequency Hopping (FH) Net

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**



- ELEMENTS:** Battalion Headquarters  
 Company Headquarters  
 S1 Section  
 S2 Section  
 S3 Section  
 S4 Section  
 Division Engineer Section  
 Communications Section  
 Battalion Maintenance Section  
 Assault and Barrier Platoon Headquarters  
 Survivability Section  
 Mobility and Countermobility Section  
 Combat Medical Section  
 Three Brigade Engineer Sections  
 Unit Ministry Section  
 Food Services Section  
 Command Section  
 Maintenance Section  
 Assault and Obstacle Platoon  
 Food Service Section  
 Unit Ministry Team  
 Equipment Platoon Headquarters  
 Combat Medic Section  
 S2 and S3 Section  
 Maintenance Platoon Headquarters  
 Headquarters and Headquarters Company Maintenance Section  
 The Army Maintenance Management System and Prescribed Load List Section  
 Three Company Maintenance Teams  
 Recovery Section  
 Support Platoon Headquarters  
 Transportation Section  
 Unit Maintenance Section  
 Direct-Support Maintenance Section  
 Direct-Support Maintenance Supply Section  
 Construction Platoon Headquarters  
 Two General Construction Sections  
 Dump Truck Section  
 Treatment Team  
 Ambulance Team  
 Combat Medic Team  
 Direct Support Maintenance Supply Section  
 Two Engineer Platoons  
 Six Engineer Squads  
 Equipment Section

**TASK:** Conduct a Convoy (07-2-1301.05-T01A)  
 (FM 55-30) (FM 21-16)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)  
**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** Upon receipt of an operation order (OPORD), the element moves to the new location given in the OPORD and conducts operations at that location. There is a possibility of enemy contact with threat patrols up to platoon and company size. Threat mounted forces have been operating in the area through which the route passes. The company standing operating procedure (SOP) is available and

contains movement readiness levels and current loading plans. The convoy may be conducted during daylight or darkness, including blackout conditions. Radio and visual signals will be used for convoy control. The column may conduct halts. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The element conducts the convoy and arrives at its new location by the time specified in the OPORD. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The element commander conducts a map reconnaissance using all available position/navigation (POS/NAV) and terrain analysis capabilities, to include space-based assets.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Indicated the start point (SP).</li> <li>b. Identified locations of friendly units.</li> <li>c. Identified potential ambush sites.</li> <li>d. Identified checkpoints (CPs).</li> <li>e. Identified sites to be used for scheduled halts.</li> <li>f. Indicated the release point (RP).</li> </ul> <p>2. The reconnaissance party conducts a route reconnaissance using all available POS/NAV and mapping capabilities available.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Dressed in the designated MOPP gear.</li> <li>b. Activated the automatic chemical alarm.</li> <li>c. Monitored radiation-monitoring devices.</li> <li>d. Verified map information.</li> <li>e. Identified the capacities of bridges and underpasses.</li> <li>f. Identified the location of culverts, ferries, forging areas, steep grades, and possible ambush sites.</li> <li>g. Prepared the map overlay.</li> <li>h. Computed the travel time.</li> <li>i. Prepared the strip map.</li> </ul> <p>* 3. The convoy commander coordinates for required support with higher headquarters (HQ), including—</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Military police (MP) support.</li> <li>b. Medical support.</li> <li>c. Fire support (FS).</li> <li>d. Engineer support.</li> <li>e. Maintenance contact team support.</li> <li>f. Additional requirements.</li> </ul> <p>4. The element prepares vehicles and equipment.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Performed preventive-maintenance checks and services (PMCS).</li> <li>b. Corrected minor deficiencies.</li> <li>c. Reported major deficiencies.</li> <li>d. Hardened vehicles using sandbags or other authorized materials.</li> <li>e. Covered unit identification markings on vehicles and personnel.</li> <li>f. Covered or removed reflective surfaces.</li> <li>g. Placed antennas at their lowest height.</li> <li>h. Turned radio volumes and squelches to their lowest setting, consistent with operational requirements.</li> </ul> <p>* 5. The convoy commander organizes the convoy.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Assigned cargo vehicle positions.</li> <li>b. Positioned control vehicles without setting a pattern.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>c. Assigned recovery vehicle positions.</li> <li>d. Arranged hardened vehicles near the head of the convoy.</li> <li>e. Specified passenger locations.</li> <li>f. Appointed air guards.</li> <li>g. Organized the trail party element.</li> <li>h. Provided vehicle position listings to the trail party leader.</li> </ul> <p>* 6. The convoy commander briefs convoy personnel.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Provided strip maps to each vehicle driver.</li> <li>b. Identified the convoy chain of command.</li> <li>c. Detailed the convoy route.</li> <li>d. Specified the march rate and the catch-up speed.</li> <li>e. Specified convoy intervals.</li> <li>f. Identified the scheduled halts.</li> <li>g. Briefed accident and breakdown procedures.</li> <li>h. Briefed immediate-action security measures.</li> <li>i. Briefed blackout condition procedures.</li> <li>j. Specified the location of medical support.</li> <li>k. Specified the location of maintenance support.</li> <li>l. Briefed communication procedures.</li> <li>m. Specified the location and identification of the destination.</li> </ul> <p>7. The convoy crosses the SP.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Crossed at the specified time.</li> <li>b. Verified that vehicles had crossed the SP.</li> <li>c. Forwarded the SP crossing report to the convoy commander when the entire unit had passed the SP.</li> </ul> <p>* 8. The convoy commander provides convoy information to higher HQ.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Reported the SP crossing time.</li> <li>b. Reported the CP clearance, when crossed.</li> <li>c. Pointed out data that conflicted with the maps.</li> <li>d. Used the correct signal operation instructions (SOI) codes in all transmissions.</li> <li>e. Reported the RP crossing time.</li> </ul> <p>9. The convoy maintains march discipline.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Maintained the designated march speed.</li> <li>b. Maintained proper vehicle intervals.</li> <li>c. Crossed CPs as scheduled.</li> <li>d. Reacted correctly to the convoy commander's signals.</li> <li>e. Maintained security throughout the movement and during halts.</li> </ul> <p>10. The company conducts a scheduled halt.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Stopped the column at the prescribed time.</li> <li>b. Maintained prescribed vehicular intervals.</li> <li>c. Moved vehicles off the road.</li> <li>d. Established local security.</li> <li>e. Performed PMCS.</li> <li>f. Inspected vehicle loads.</li> <li>g. Departed at the specified time.</li> </ul> <p>11. The company conducts an unscheduled halt.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Alerted the march column.</li> <li>b. Reported the stoppage to higher HQ.</li> <li>c. Maintained prescribed vehicular intervals.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
d. Established local security. e. Reported the resumption of the march to higher HQ.  12. The convoy moves under blackout conditions. a. Provided a visual adjustment period. b. Prepared vehicles for blackout conditions. c. Maintained prescribed vehicle distances. d. Wore night vision goggles (specified personnel). e. Wore regular eye protection goggles. f. Used ground guides during poor visibility periods.  13. The trail party recovers disabled vehicles. a. Inspected the disabled vehicles. b. Repaired the disabled vehicles, when possible. c. Towed the vehicles, if necessary. d. Reported the status of the vehicles to the convoy commander.  14. The convoy moves through urban areas. a. Identified weight, height, and width restrictions. b. Used close-column formation. c. Obeyed traffic control directions. d. Used direction guides at critical intersections.  15. The convoy crosses the RP. a. Crossed at the specified time. b. Verified that the vehicles had crossed the RP. c. Forwarded the crossing report to higher HQ.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title
05-1-6001	Request a Standard Geospatial Product
05-3-1020	Perform a Technical Reconnaissance
19-1-1102	Coordinate Route Reconnaissance and Surveillance
19-1-1201	Prepare Traffic Control Plan

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

- ELEMENTS:** Battalion Headquarters  
 Company Headquarters  
 S1 Section  
 S2 Section  
 S3 Section  
 S4 Section  
 Division Engineer Section  
 Communications Section  
 Battalion Maintenance Section  
 Assault and Barrier Platoon Headquarters  
 Survivability Section  
 Mobility and Countermobility Section  
 Combat Medical Section  
 Three Brigade Engineer Sections  
 Unit Ministry Section  
 Food Services Section  
 Command Section  
 Maintenance Section  
 Assault and Obstacle Platoon  
 Food Service Section  
 Unit Ministry Team  
 Equipment Platoon Headquarters  
 Combat Medic Section  
 S2 and S3 Section  
 Maintenance Platoon Headquarters  
 Headquarters and Headquarters Company Maintenance Section  
 The Army Maintenance Management System and Prescribed Load List Section  
 Three Company Maintenance Teams  
 Recovery Section  
 Support Platoon Headquarters  
 Transportation Section  
 Unit Maintenance Section  
 Direct-Support Maintenance Section  
 Direct-Support Maintenance Supply Section  
 Construction Platoon Headquarters  
 Two General Construction Sections  
 Dump Truck Section  
 Treatment Team  
 Ambulance Team  
 Combat Medic Team  
 Direct Support Maintenance Supply Section  
 Two Engineer Platoons  
 Six Engineer Squads  
 Equipment Section

**TASK:** Establish Unit Defense (07-3-0219.05-T01A)  
 (FM 7-8) (FM 24-19) (FM 24-35)  
 (FM 7-7) (TC 24-20)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The element has received an operation order (OPORD) or a fragmentary order (FRAGO) with a mission to occupy part of a larger unit defensive sector or is isolated and must provide its own

security or defense. The element may be opposed by as much as a motorized rifle company. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The element completes all preparations for the defense not later than the time specified in the order. The enemy does not surprise the platoon. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The element leader performs a leader's reconnaissance of the tentative defensive position.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Searched the area to ensure that it was free of the enemy, mines, and booby traps.</li> <li>b. Established local security.</li> <li>c. Surveyed the area for nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) contamination.</li> <li>d. Designated sectors and general locations for operations, vehicles, and automatic and antiarmor weapons based on the mission, enemy, terrain, troops, time available, and civilian considerations (METT-TC) factors.</li> </ul> <p><b>NOTE: At night, the designation of positions must be more exact. Leaders may elect to reconnoiter the area first, position the observation posts (OPs), and then have the guides bring the other members into position.</b></p> <p>2. The designated security or the operation team moves to assigned positions.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Emplaced the M8A1 Chemical Alarm System (if assigned) within 5 minutes of occupying the OP.</li> <li>b. Positioned the OP within range of the supporting small arms fire.</li> <li>c. Provided cover and concealment for the OP personnel.</li> <li>d. Designated covered and concealed routes to and from the OP.</li> <li>e. Established communications from the operations section to the unit command post (CP).</li> </ul> <p><b>NOTE: The primary means should be wire, supplemented by messenger and radio.</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>f. Disseminated the locations of all friendly personnel in the sector.</li> </ul> <p>* 3. The platoon leader and the platoon forward observer (FO) designate targets to support the OP.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Identified the target reference points (TRPs).</li> <li>b. Included the OP targets within the fire plan.</li> </ul> <p>4. The OP team provides early warning.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Provided continuous early warning out to a range. Warned of enemy observation, direct fire, or assault on the main body.</li> <li>b. Detected all enemy activity within the vicinity of the unit position.</li> <li>c. Adjusted illumination or high-explosive (HE) rounds on enemy targets.</li> <li>d. Emplaced expedient early warning devices before dark, if possible.</li> <li>e. Demonstrated the correct use of the current challenge and password.</li> <li>f. Alternated the OP sites when required, due to the changing visibility or enemy activity.</li> </ul> <p>* 5. The element leader designates the primary, alternate, and supplementary fighting positions for key weapons or vehicles, where applicable, while emplacing the rest of the platoon.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Positioned the machine guns to obtain grazing fire along the most likely dismounted avenue of approach (AA).</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>b. Positioned the antiarmor weapons to cover the likely armor AA or the assigned engagement area (EA).</p> <p>c. Ensured that the positions were mutually supported along armor and dismounted infantry AAs.</p> <p>d. Positioned the M203 grenade launchers, if assigned, to cover dead space in the terrain outside hand grenade range.</p> <p>* 6. Leaders place fighting positions to engage targets in designated sectors of fire, covering the most dangerous AAs first.</p> <p>a. Determined the sector of fire based on the type of weapon and its range.</p> <p>b. Assigned all personnel to a fighting position.</p> <p>* 7. The element leader coordinates or contacts adjacent units.</p> <p>a. Established boundary responsibilities.</p> <p>b. Discovered and eliminated any gaps in the defensive sector.</p> <p>c. Ensured that observation and fires overlapped.</p> <p>8. The element occupies defensive positions.</p> <p><b>NOTE: The leader establishes task priorities. Usually, these are in the unit standing operating procedure (SOP) but can be modified as needed (based on METT-TC considerations) by the platoon leader or the company commander.</b></p> <p>a. Occupied the assigned positions physically.</p> <p>b. Reconnoitered in front of each position to become familiar with the terrain, locate dead space, and view the terrain from the enemy perspective physically.</p> <p>c. Prepared and forwarded crew-served weapons range cards to the squad leader within 15 minutes of positioning.</p> <p>d. Installed aiming stakes.</p> <p>e. Cleared fields of fire.</p> <p>f. Emplaced obstacles according to the company obstacle plan.</p> <p>g. Dug fighting positions to armpit depth within 0.5 meters of the parapet.</p> <p>h. Constructed overhead cover for the fighting position.</p> <p>i. Camouflaged positions and vehicles from aerial and ground observations, ensuring that fighting positions were not detected from a distance of more than 35 meters from the front of the position.</p> <p>j. Stockpiled ammunition, food, and water.</p> <p>k. Constructed alternate and supplementary positions.</p> <p>l. Ensured that all element members knew the element CP location.</p> <p>* 9. The element leader, along with the fire support team (FIST) or FO (if applicable), plans for the employment of indirect fires.</p> <p>a. Planned the fires along the enemy AAs.</p> <p>b. Planned the fires at known or likely enemy positions.</p> <p>c. Planned final protective fires (FPF), if allocated.</p> <p>d. Registered and adjusted TRPs (if available and the situation permitted).</p> <p>10. The radiotelephone operator (RATELO) establishes communications.</p> <p>a. Used wire as primary communications, if available.</p> <p>b. Ensured that the platoon or company CP had communications with the operations section, higher and subordinate leaders, adjacent units, and the fire support team.</p> <p>c. Conducted periodic communications checks to ensure that all communications were operational.</p> <p>d. Planned and provided for an alternate means of communication.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>*11. The element leader prepares a sector sketch.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Identified the main terrain features and the range to the terrain features.</li> <li>b. Identified the location of the squad fighting position.</li> <li>c. Indicated the primary and secondary sectors of fire for each position.</li> <li>d. Identified the type of weapon and the fire control measures (FPF, principle direction of fire [PDF], and the final protective line [FPL]) for each position.</li> <li>e. Identified the squad leader's position and the OP locations.</li> <li>f. Marked the dead space.</li> <li>g. Identified obstacle locations.</li> <li>h. Indicated the direction of north.</li> <li>i. Forwarded a copy of the sector sketch to the platoon leader within 30 minutes of being assigned a sector.</li> </ol> <p>*12. The element leader prepares a platoon sector sketch.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Indicated the platoon sector or the EA.</li> <li>b. Denoted the primary, alternate, and supplementary squad positions and the sectors of fire.</li> <li>c. Indicated the location of vehicles, antiarmor, and automatic weapon positions with the primary sectors of fire, the FPL, or the PDF for the primary vehicle weapons system, automatic weapons, and TRPs.</li> <li>d. Identified the location of OPs and patrol routes, if any had been planned.</li> <li>e. Outlined the maximum engagement lines for the primary weapon systems.</li> <li>f. Identified the location of indirect-fire targets and FPFs, if any had been allocated.</li> <li>g. Indicated the direction of north.</li> <li>h. Illustrated unit identification up to company level.</li> <li>i. Indicated the date-time group.</li> <li>j. Identified the position of the platoon CP.</li> <li>k. Forwarded a copy of the platoon sector sketch to the company commander within 1 hour of assigning squad leaders sectors.</li> </ol> <p>13. The element continues to improve defensive positions.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Improved positions according to the SOP work priorities.</li> <li>b. Upgraded positions as directed by higher headquarters (HQ).</li> </ol>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**



**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
05-2-0100	Coordinate the Synchronization and Integration of Fire Support (FS)
05-2-0301	Camouflage Vehicles and Equipment
05-2-0314	Integrate Obstacles Into Direct- and Indirect-Fire Plans
05-2-0508	Plan for Survivability Operations
05-2-0510	Direct Survivability Construction
05-2-0514	Plan and Control Tactical Obstacles
05-2-0516	Emplace Situational Obstacles
05-3-0303	Construct Wire Obstacles

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** Two Engineer Platoons  
Six Engineer Squads

**TASK:** Assault a Building (Infantry Platoon/Squad) (07-3-1000.05-T01A)  
(FM 7-8) (FM 3-21.71)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)  
**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The platoon is conducting operations as part of a larger force in an urban environment and receives an operation order (OPORD) or fragmentary order (FRAGO) to assault and clear a building. The building has two levels and contains a squad-sized enemy element. All necessary personnel and equipment are available. The platoon has communications with higher, adjacent, and subordinate elements. The platoon has been provided guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task should be conducted during limited visibility conditions. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The platoon assaults and clears the building according to the tactical standing operating procedures (TACSOPs), the order, and the commander's guidance. The platoon kills, captures, or forces the withdrawal of all the enemy in the building. The platoon complies with the ROE. The time to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* 1. The platoon leader gains and maintains situational understanding using information that is gathered from the Force XXI Battle Command Brigade and Below (FBCB2) System (if applicable), frequency-modulated (FM) communications, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), or other available information sources.</li> <li>* 2. The platoon leader receives an OPORD or FRAGO and issues a warning order (WO) to the platoon in enough time for squad leaders to have maximum planning time.</li> <li>* 3. The platoon leader plans the assault using troop-leading procedures.               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Conducted a digital or conventional map reconnaissance.                   <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Identified tentative rally points, as required.</li> <li>(2) Identified the objective rally point (ORP).</li> <li>(3) Identified tentative support by fire (SBF) and assault positions.</li> <li>(4) Identified likely avenues of approach (AAs) for enemy reinforcing elements.</li> <li>(5) Identified routes to and from the objective.</li> <li>(6) Marked tentative dismount points on digital and conventional maps, as appropriate.</li> </ul> </li> <li>b. Evaluated the situation, including the following factors:                   <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Building types (including layout and construction materials).</li> <li>(2) Subterranean entry and exit points and AAs.</li> <li>(3) Requirements for special equipment and materials.</li> </ul> </li> <li>c. Planned and coordinated indirect-fire support or close-air support, if available.</li> <li>d. Identified direct-fire responsibilities.</li> <li>e. Organized the platoon as necessary to accomplish the mission and compensate for combat losses.                   <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Designated the support element.</li> </ul> </li> </ul> </li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p><b>NOTE: May include Bradley fighting vehicles (BFVs).</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(2) Designated the breach element.</li> <li>(3) Designated the assault element.</li> <li>f. Addressed actions to take on chance contact with the enemy.</li> </ul> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* 4. The platoon leader disseminates reports (if applicable), overlays, and other pertinent information to each squad to keep them abreast of the situation.</li> <li>* 5. The platoon leader issues orders and instructions to include ROE/ROI.</li> <li>6. The platoon conducts a rehearsal.</li> <li>* 7. The platoon leader issues FRAGOs, as necessary, to address changes to the plan identified during the rehearsal.</li> <li>8. The platoon moves tactically to the ORP, if used. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Secured the ORP.</li> <li>b. Occupied the ORP.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 9. The platoon leader and reconnaissance element conduct the reconnaissance based on mission, enemy, terrain, troops, time available, and civilian considerations (METT-TC) factors. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Entered way points into the position/navigation (POS/NAV) equipment to aid navigation, if necessary.</li> <li>b. Verified routes to assault, support, and security positions.</li> <li>c. Observed the target, and verified and updated intelligence information.</li> <li>d. Selected assault, support, and security positions.</li> <li>e. Left the security element to observe the objective.</li> <li>f. Returned to the ORP or other platoon position.</li> </ul> </li> <li>*10. The platoon leader adjusts the plan based on updated intelligence and reconnaissance effort.</li> <li>*11. The platoon leader updates the enemy situation.</li> <li>*12. The platoon leader disseminates updated digital reports (if applicable), overlays, and other pertinent information.</li> <li>13. The platoon enters way points into the POS/NAV equipment to aid navigation, if necessary.</li> <li>*14. The element leader employs the support element and indirect fires to isolate the building and overwatch the breach and assault elements during movement to the objective. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Employed available weapons in SBF positions to destroy or suppress any known enemy positions.</li> <li>b. Employed indirect fires and smoke to suppress, obscure, or destroy enemy elements.</li> <li>c. Employed available weapons to observe identified subterranean entry and exit points.</li> <li>d. Employed available assets to breach walls and obstacles.</li> </ul> </li> <li>15. The breach element conducts tactical movement from the dismount point to the objective. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Initiated movement after enemy defensive positions were suppressed, obscured, or destroyed.</li> <li>b. Used covered and concealed routes that did not mask friendly suppressive fires.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>c. Crossed open areas rapidly, using concealment of smoke and suppression of enemy targets by the support element.</p> <p>16. The assault element conducts tactical movement from the dismount point to the objective.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Trailed the breach element according to METT-TC factors.</li> <li>b. Provided additional security and support (if needed) to the breach element.</li> <li>c. Engaged enemy forces with the appropriate weapons systems to destroy or force the withdrawal of sniper teams, antiarmor teams, and armor vehicles within the sector.</li> <li>d. Maintained 360° security.</li> <li>e. Monitored and controlled the flow of the battle to prevent potential fratricide situations.</li> </ul> <p>*17. The PSG or weapons squad leader employs direct and indirect fires to overwatch and protect the breach and assault elements during building clearance.</p> <p>18. The breach element enters the building.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Entered the building at the designated entry point.</li> <li>b. Secured and maintained a foothold for the assault element.</li> <li>c. Provided additional support for the assault element.</li> </ul> <p>19. The assault element enters and clears the building.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Cleared the building and/or rooms according to the TACSOP. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Clearing teams cleared the building, room by room. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) Took up positions inside the room that allowed the element to completely dominate the room and eliminate the threat.</li> <li>(b) Engaged targets as they moved to their designated points of domination.</li> <li>(c) Ensured that points of domination were not in front of doors and windows.</li> <li>(d) Observed the ceiling, floor, and walls for mouse holes and loopholes.</li> <li>(e) Exercised fire control and discriminated direct fires.</li> <li>(f) Marked the building according to the unit TACSOP to designate a cleared building.</li> </ul> </li> <li>(2) Clearing teams or designated personnel from the assault element cleared a staircase, if required. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) Ensured that 360° and three-dimensional security was maintained in the immediate vicinity of the staircase.</li> <li>(b) Located, marked, bypassed, and cleared obstacles and booby traps blocking access to the staircase.</li> <li>(c) Moved up the stairs using the fire-team or buddy-team flow.</li> <li>(d) Secured each landing before continuing up or down additional flights.</li> </ul> </li> </ul> </li> </ul> <p><b>NOTE: Leaders should consider the use of 5.56-mm soft rounds while clearing staircases. These rounds will penetrate human bodies and walls and then stop either in the body or in the wall, thus preventing the possibility of fratricide or injury to noncombatants. To prevent the possibility of fratricide or injury to noncombatants, soldiers should consider the use of nonlethal stun grenades rather than live fragmentary grenades.</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>b. Reported the clearance to the platoon leader.</li> <li>c. Continued operations according to the platoon leader's intent.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>*20. The platoon leader keeps the company commander informed throughout the operation.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Sent updated situation reports (SITREPs) as necessary during the operation.</li> <li>b. Positioned personnel to cover enemy routes of counterattack and infiltration into the building.</li> <li>c. Reported the completion building clearance.</li> <li>d. Redistributed ammunition and requested resupply, as required.</li> </ul> <p>21. The platoon consolidates and reorganizes, as necessary.</p> <p>22. The platoon secures and evacuates enemy prisoners of war (EPWs) and noncombatants, as necessary.</p> <p>23. The platoon treats and evacuates casualties.</p> <p>24. The platoon processes any captured documents or equipment.</p> <p>25. The platoon leader reports the platoon status to higher headquarters (HQ).</p> <p>26. The platoon continues operations, as directed.</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

Task Number		Task Title
05-2-1218	Conduct Report Procedures	

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** Battalion Headquarters  
Company Headquarters  
S1 Section  
S2 Section  
S3 Section  
S4 Section  
Division Engineer Section  
Communications Section  
Battalion Maintenance Section  
Assault and Barrier Platoon Headquarters  
Survivability Section  
Mobility and Countermobility Section  
Combat Medical Section  
Three Brigade Engineer Sections  
Unit Ministry Section  
Food Services Section  
Command Section  
Maintenance Section  
Assault and Obstacle Platoon  
Food Service Section  
Unit Ministry Team  
Equipment Platoon Headquarters  
Combat Medic Section  
S2 and S3 Section  
Maintenance Platoon Headquarters  
Headquarters and Headquarters Company Maintenance Section  
The Army Maintenance Management System and Prescribed Load List Section  
Three Company Maintenance Teams  
Recovery Section  
Support Platoon Headquarters  
Transportation Section  
Unit Maintenance Section  
Direct-Support Maintenance Section  
Direct-Support Maintenance Supply Section  
Construction Platoon Headquarters  
Two General Construction Sections  
Dump Truck Section  
Treatment Team  
Ambulance Team  
Combat Medic Team  
Direct Support Maintenance Supply Section  
Two Engineer Platoons  
Six Engineer Squads  
Equipment Section

**TASK:** Conduct a Tactical Road March (07-3-1123.05-T01A)  
(FM 7-10) (FM 7-8)

<b>ITERATION:</b>	1	2	3	4	5	M	(Circle)
<b>COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:</b>			T	P	U		(Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The element is ordered to conduct a tactical road march. The enemy (no larger than a squad or platoon size) can assault mounted or dismounted and employ indirect fires or air support. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The element crosses the start point (SP), follows the prescribed route without deviation (unless required by enemy action or at the direction of higher headquarters [HQ]), and crosses the release point (RP), all as specified in the order. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The element leader issues a warning order (WO) to subordinate leaders.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Included enough information for subordinate elements to prepare for the mission.</li> <li>b. Gave the WO immediately after being alerted to the mission.</li> <li>c. Included movement instructions if the movement was to be initiated before the operation order (OPORD) was issued.</li> <li>d. Addressed items not covered in the unit standing operating procedure (SOP).</li> <li>e. Specified the time and location to issue the OPORD.</li> </ul> <p>* 2. The element leader completes the plan and issues the march order.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Provided a statement of the enemy situation, weather, and visibility conditions.</li> <li>b. Identified the route, the SP, the RP, critical points, and other control points.</li> <li>c. Provided the order of movement, the order of march, the march rate, and the distance to maintain between units.</li> <li>d. Established security tasks for subordinate elements, to include all-around security and air guard coverage for the entire element.</li> <li>e. Addressed contingencies for actions on enemy contact.</li> </ul> <p><b>NOTE: Plans must include the reaction to an enemy ambush; indirect fire; an air attack; a nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) attack; and sniper fires.</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>f. Provided the soldiers with load guides.</li> <li>g. Ensured that subordinate leaders briefed their plans.</li> </ul> <p>3. The element conducts the necessary resupply of water, rations, ammunition, batteries, and special-issue items.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Inspected personnel and vehicles for the proper load and equipment and their readiness to move.</li> <li>b. Completed a communications check using digital and FM radios to report the readiness of the unit element to move.</li> </ul> <p>4. The element conducts the road movement.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Crossed the SP at the designated time.</li> <li>b. Maintained personnel and vehicle intervals and the march rate specified in the order or the unit SOP.</li> <li>c. Followed the prescribed route.</li> </ul> <p>5. The element maintains local security throughout the movement.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Maintained all-around observation at all times, to include air guards.</li> <li>b. Oriented as directed to establish local security.</li> </ul> <p>6. The unit reports and reacts to enemy contact using the Digital Reconnaissance System (DRS).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Reported and reacted according to directions in the OPORD.</li> <li>b. Reported and reacted according to the unit SOP.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>7. The unit halts.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Conducted the halt at regular intervals according to the unit SOP (as the tactical situation permitted) to rest the troops, adjust and redistribute the equipment, and perform foot hygiene.</li> <li>b. Positioned the element to provide all-around security.</li> <li>c. Reported all halts to the next higher HQ using the digital reporting procedures on the mobile subscriber radiotelephone terminal (MSRT).</li> <li>d. Positioned vehicles in a herringbone formation.</li> <li>e. Dismounted personnel to provide local security.</li> <li>f. Checked the condition of personnel and equipment.</li> <li>g. Coordinated with the adjacent unit.</li> <li>h. Reported the status to higher HQ using the digital reporting procedures on the MSRT.</li> </ul> <p>* 8. The leader controls the unit.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Used visual, messenger, digital, or radio signals for control throughout the movement.</li> <li>b. Reported control measures as directed by the SOP or the order using the DRS.</li> <li>c. Used control measures from the order, and modified them as needed.</li> </ul> <p>9. The element arrives at the RP at the time specified in the order.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Met the quartering party guide, if one was designated.</li> <li>b. Passed through the RP without halting.</li> <li>c. Reported the crossing to higher HQ using the digital reporting procedures on the MSRT.</li> </ul>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**



**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
05-2-0018	Conduct Report Procedures
05-2-7008	Prepare an Operation Order (OPORD) (Company/Platoon)
05-3-3001	React to Contact
05-3-3012	React to a Direct-Fire or Antitank Guided Missile (ATGM)
07-1-1923.05-T01A	React to Indirect Fire
07-3-1112.05-T01A	React to an Ambush
07-3-1135.05-T01A	Conduct Actions at Danger Areas
09-2-0337.05-T01A	React to Unexploded Ordnance (UXO)
12-1-0403.05-T01A	Report Casualties

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

- ELEMENTS:** Battalion Headquarters  
 Company Headquarters  
 Assault and Barrier Platoon Headquarters  
 Survivability Section  
 Mobility and Countermobility Section  
 Three Brigade Engineer Sections  
 Command Section  
 Assault and Obstacle Platoon  
 Food Service Section  
 Headquarters and Headquarters Company Maintenance Section  
 Three Company Maintenance Teams  
 Support Platoon Headquarters  
 Construction Platoon Headquarters  
 Two General Construction Sections  
 Combat Medic Team  
 Equipment Section

**TASK:** Conduct Actions at Danger Areas (07-3-1135.05-T01A)  
 (FM 7-8) (ARTEP 7-8-DRILL) (FM 3-21.71)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)  
**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The element is part of a larger dismounted moving force that encounters a danger area that cannot be bypassed. The platoon must provide its own security. Rules of engagement (ROE) have been published. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The element prevents the enemy from surprising the main body. The element moves all personnel and equipment across the danger area. The platoon prevents decisive engagement by the enemy. The United States (US) forces comply with the ROE. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The element leader directs the platoon to take action on encountering a danger area.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensured that the point man signaled "danger area" and that it was relayed throughout the platoon.</li> <li>b. Halted the platoon and maintained local security.</li> <li>c. Moved forward to the point man, and confirmed the danger area.</li> </ul> <p>* 2. The element leader directs the lead squad to reconnoiter the danger area and makes an estimate based on information received.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Directed the route for the platoon if the danger area could be bypassed.</li> <li>b. Controlled the crossing of the danger area with minimum time spent in or near the danger area.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Informed all squad leaders of the situation.</li> <li>(2) Designated the nearside and farside rally points.</li> <li>(3) Directed the positioning of the nearside security team.</li> <li>(4) Selected a crossing point that provided cover and concealment.</li> <li>(5) Assigned the farside security team.</li> </ul> </li> </ul> <p>* 3. The element leader selects the farside clearing method based on observable terrain. The secured area must be large enough to allow full deployment of the remainder of the platoon.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>4. The nearside security team provides security.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Observed to the flanks.</li> <li>b. Overwatched the crossing of the farside security team.</li> <li>c. Warned of enemy approach before the main body was engaged.</li> </ul> <p>5. The farside team reconnoiters the farside.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Crossed the danger area once the nearside security team was in place.</li> <li>b. Reconnoiters the farside and ensured that any terrain (small hills, folds, or streambeds) that might have concealed enemy positions was clear of the enemy.</li> <li>c. Established an observation post (OP) forward of the cleared area.</li> <li>d. Signaled to the squad leader that the area was clear; the message was relayed to the platoon leader.</li> </ul> <p>6. The element crosses the danger area.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Used the method designated by the platoon leader: line (all at once), wedge (file), small groups, or individually.</li> <li>b. Used nearside security to overwatch the platoon crossing.</li> <li>c. Crossed the danger area quickly and quietly.</li> <li>d. Executed Battle Drill 2, React to Contact (Army Training and Evaluation Program [ARTEP] 7-8-DRILL) if contact was made.</li> <li>e. Established local security once across the danger area.</li> <li>f. Completed the crossing with the nearside security team crossing the danger area and regaining its positions in the formation.</li> </ul> <p>7. The platoon continues the mission.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Accounted for all members.</li> <li>b. Resumed tactical movement.</li> <li>c. Maintained the proper formation and personnel intervals.</li> </ul>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
052-192-1021	Locate Mines by Visual Means
052-193-1013	Neutralize Booby Traps

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

- ELEMENTS:** Battalion Headquarters  
 Company Headquarters  
 S1 Section  
 S2 Section  
 S3 Section  
 S4 Section  
 Division Engineer Section  
 Communications Section  
 Battalion Maintenance Section  
 Assault and Barrier Platoon Headquarters  
 Survivability Section  
 Mobility and Countermobility Section  
 Combat Medical Section  
 Three Brigade Engineer Sections  
 Unit Ministry Section  
 Food Services Section  
 Command Section  
 Maintenance Section  
 Assault and Obstacle Platoon  
 Food Service Section  
 Unit Ministry Team  
 Equipment Platoon Headquarters  
 Combat Medic Section  
 S2 and S3 Section  
 Maintenance Platoon Headquarters  
 Headquarters and Headquarters Company Maintenance Section  
 The Army Maintenance Management System and Prescribed Load List Section  
 Three Company Maintenance Teams  
 Recovery Section  
 Support Platoon Headquarters  
 Transportation Section  
 Unit Maintenance Section  
 Direct-Support Maintenance Section  
 Direct-Support Maintenance Supply Section  
 Construction Platoon Headquarters  
 Two General Construction Sections  
 Dump Truck Section  
 Treatment Team  
 Ambulance Team  
 Combat Medic Team  
 Direct Support Maintenance Supply Section  
 Two Engineer Platoons  
 Six Engineer Squads  
 Equipment Section

**TASK:** Move Tactically (07-3-C211.05-T01A)  
 (FM 7-7) (FM 3-21.71) (FM 7-10)  
 (FM 7-8)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The element is required to move cross-country, mounted or dismounted. The threat may consist of up to a motorized rifle company. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The element arrives at its destination without being surprised by the opposing forces (OPFOR). The element retains its ability to move. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The element leader assigns areas of responsibility (AORs) during the movement.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Assigned all squads to an AOR.</li> <li>b. Directed squad leaders to assign individual AORs.</li> <li>c. Ensured that there was all-around coverage of the platoon, including air guard.</li> </ul> <p>* 2. The element leader designates a route for the movement.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensured that there was concealment from ground, air, and space observation.</li> <li>b. Ensured that there was cover from the direct fire of known enemy positions.</li> </ul> <p>3. The squads use a wedge formation during the movement.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Formed one or two wedges based on mission, enemy, terrain, troops, time available, and civilian considerations (METT-TC) factors.</li> <li>b. Closed the wedges during limited visibility so that visibility was maintained between individuals, teams, and squads. Maintained the rate of movement.</li> <li>c. Opened the wedges as obstructions to the movement and to diminish control.</li> </ul> <p>* 4. The element leader designates a movement technique to use that is based on METT-TC factors.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Designated a traveling-movement technique when enemy contact was not likely.</li> <li>b. Designated a traveling-overwatch-movement technique when enemy contact was possible.</li> <li>c. Designated a bounding-overwatch-movement technique when enemy contact was likely.</li> </ul> <p>5. The element performs a traveling-movement technique.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Maintained fire teams about 20 meters apart when dismounted.</li> <li>b. Moved the squads on a column axis about 20 meters apart when dismounted.</li> <li>c. Moved in a column formation, staggered laterally, with 50 to 100 meters between vehicles when mounted.</li> <li>d. Reported obstacles, enemy contact, or danger areas to the element leader.</li> </ul> <p>6. The element performs a traveling-overwatch-movement technique.</p> <p><b>NOTE: When dismounted, the lead element uses a traveling-overwatch-movement technique, and the trailing squads use a traveling-movement technique.</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Increased the distance between the lead squad and the main body of the platoon by 50 to 100 meters.</li> <li>b. Conducted the movement (mounted) with the lead vehicle 100 to 400 meters in front of the rest of the element; other vehicles were 50 to 100 meters apart.</li> <li>c. Reported obstacles, enemy contact, or danger areas to the platoon leader.</li> </ul> <p>7. The element performs a bounding-overwatch-movement technique.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Conducted bounds that did not exceed visual overwatch.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>b. Conducted bounds that stayed within the maximum effective range of overwatching weapons.</p> <p>8. The bounding squad moves.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Signaled to the platoon leader that it was beginning its movement.</li> <li>b. Used a covered and concealed route, when available, for its bound.</li> <li>c. Employed a point man or buddy team as far forward as visual contact with the rest of the squad allowed.</li> <li>d. Moved as quickly as possible while maintaining operations security (OPSEC).</li> <li>e. Moved in a way that did not mask the fires of the overwatching element.</li> <li>f. Established an overwatch position upon completion of its bound to overwatch the succeeding bound.</li> <li>g. Informed the element leader that it had finished its bound and was ready to overwatch.</li> <li>h. Alerted the element leader and the overwatching element of any enemy that was detected, any obstacles that were encountered, or any danger areas.</li> </ol> <p>9. The overwatch squad provides overwatch.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Occupied a position that allowed observation and fire to cover the movement of the bounding squad to its next overwatch position.</li> <li>b. Oriented the weapons on likely enemy positions.</li> <li>c. Maintained continuous observation of the bounding squad, its route, and any terrain that could influence the route.</li> <li>d. Suppressed enemy units so that the bounding element was not fixed.</li> <li>e. Alerted the bounding squad and the element leader of any enemy that it detected.</li> <li>f. Prepared to bound when the bounding team assumed the overwatch position.</li> </ol> <p>10. The element maintains security during movement.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Maintained visual contact at a normal interval of 10 meters (the interval automatically expands and contracts based on terrain and visibility).</li> <li>b. Maintained noise and light discipline.</li> <li>c. Observed sectors of fires to avoid any enemy that was approaching the platoon within 35 meters and any aircraft that was attacking the platoon without warning.</li> </ol> <p>*11. Leaders use control measures during the movement.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Positioned themselves where they could control the movement.</li> <li>b. Positioned key weapons.</li> <li>c. Used visual signals and oral commands to control the movement.</li> </ol> <p>*12. The element leader controls movement of the elements.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Assessed the terrain continuously for potential danger areas.</li> <li>b. Used hand-and-arm signals once contact was made.</li> <li>c. Used visual and audio signals once contact was made.</li> </ol> <p>*13. The element leader knows the locations of all elements at all times.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Expressed the location of the platoon as a 6-digit coordinate or by using current operational graphics.</li> <li>b. Knew the location of all the elements including the leading, flanking, and trailing company elements with accuracy of plus or minus 100 meters.</li> </ol>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**



- ELEMENTS:** Battalion Headquarters  
 Company Headquarters  
 S1 Section  
 S2 Section  
 S3 Section  
 S4 Section  
 Division Engineer Section  
 Communications Section  
 Battalion Maintenance Section  
 Assault and Barrier Platoon Headquarters  
 Survivability Section  
 Mobility and Countermobility Section  
 Combat Medical Section  
 Three Brigade Engineer Sections  
 Unit Ministry Section  
 Food Services Section  
 Command Section  
 Maintenance Section  
 Assault and Obstacle Platoon  
 Food Service Section  
 Unit Ministry Team  
 Equipment Platoon Headquarters  
 Combat Medic Section  
 S2 and S3 Section  
 Maintenance Platoon Headquarters  
 Headquarters and Headquarters Company Maintenance Section  
 The Army Maintenance Management System and Prescribed Load List Section  
 Three Company Maintenance Teams  
 Recovery Section  
 Support Platoon Headquarters  
 Transportation Section  
 Unit Maintenance Section  
 Direct-Support Maintenance Section  
 Direct-Support Maintenance Supply Section  
 Construction Platoon Headquarters  
 Two General Construction Sections  
 Dump Truck Section  
 Treatment Team  
 Ambulance Team  
 Combat Medic Team  
 Direct Support Maintenance Supply Section  
 Two Engineer Platoons  
 Six Engineer Squads  
 Equipment Section

**TASK:** Conduct a Radiological, Chemical, or Biological Reconnaissance or Survey (03-2-3008.05-T01A)

**ITERATION:** 1M 2M 3M 4M 5M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The element is conducting operations in an area where nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) weapons have been initiated. The commander needs to determine if there are (or is information on) radiological, chemical, or biological hazards in the area of operational concern. This task is always performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The commander and operations section plan a reconnaissance or survey mission for the company organic reconnaissance element. The plan is issued with two-thirds planning time remaining for the element. The plan must be detailed and feasible for the element to perform. If the situation and location permit, the commander supervises the preparation and execution.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* 1. The element leader receives and analyzes the mission and identifies all unit tasks.</li> <li>* 2. The element leader issues a warning order (WO) to subordinate leaders as soon as possible.</li> <li>* 3. The element leader and the operations section make a tentative plan based on mission, enemy, terrain, troops, time available, and civilian considerations (METT-TC) factors.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Planned reconnaissance or survey techniques, locations, turn-back dose rates (radiological missions), decontamination after the reconnaissance or survey, fire support, reporting procedures, logistical support, and leader and signal information.</li> <li>b. Coordinated for intelligence information, air- or indirect-fire support, and medical support.</li> <li>c. Coordinated the element plan with units in the area of operations, if necessary.</li> <li>d. Drew, stocked, or coordinated petroleum, oils, and lubricants (POL); ammunition; MOPP gear; Classes II and VII support; and maintenance, recovery, or Class IX support for the platoon.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 4. The element leader orders units to start movement, if necessary.</li> <li>* 5. The element leader reconnoiters the operations area and performs a map reconnaissance as a minimum.</li> <li>* 6. The element leader completes the plan and issues the operation order (OPORD) with two-thirds of the total planning time remaining for the platoon.</li> <li>* 7. The element leader supervises preparations of the reconnaissance or survey if the location of operations permits. Communications, supply, and maintenance sections assist the platoons with priority maintenance and resupply support.</li> <li>8. The element conducts a tactical road march or executes a traveling movement to the reconnaissance or survey site. The reconnaissance or survey element—                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Executed a mounted movement technique (traveling, traveling overwatch, or bounding overwatch) or reconnoitered dismounted, as the situation and/or mission required.</li> <li>b. Detected and marked the contaminated area, ensuring that marking signs were facing friendly areas.</li> <li>c. Detected uncontaminated areas and routes.</li> <li>d. Selected decontamination sites with a water source, cover and concealment, and the physical capacity to hold a site if required to perform reconnaissance for decontamination sites as a mission.</li> <li>e. Determined the limits of the contaminated area.</li> <li>f. Detected the types of chemical agents or specific levels and types of radiological contamination as required by the mission.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
9. The headquarters (HQ) (if prescribed by the mission) assists the reconnaissance or survey unit recovery operations.		
*10. The element leader or operations officer (if prescribed by the mission) debriefs the returning reconnaissance or survey units and forwards the acquired information to higher HQ in NBC 4 or NBC 5 format, if required.		
*11. The radiological element leaders record, collate, and submit individual and unit radiation exposure status (RES) readings to higher HQ.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1M	2M	3M	4M	5M		TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title
05-3-1008	Conduct Minesweeping Operations
05-3-1220	Conduct Fire and Maneuver Operations
05-3-3006	Establish Jobsite Security
07-2-1125.05-T01A	Conduct Passage of Lines (Passing/Stationary)
07-2-1301.05-T01A	Conduct a Convoy
07-3-C211.05-T01A	Move Tactically

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

- ELEMENTS:** Battalion Headquarters  
Company Headquarters  
S1 Section  
S2 Section  
S3 Section  
S4 Section  
Division Engineer Section  
Communications Section  
Battalion Maintenance Section  
Assault and Barrier Platoon Headquarters  
Survivability Section  
Mobility and Countermobility Section  
Combat Medical Section  
Three Brigade Engineer Sections  
Unit Ministry Section  
Food Services Section  
Command Section  
Maintenance Section  
Assault and Obstacle Platoon  
Food Service Section  
Unit Ministry Team  
Equipment Platoon Headquarters  
Combat Medic Section  
S2 and S3 Section  
Maintenance Platoon Headquarters  
Headquarters and Headquarters Company Maintenance Section  
The Army Maintenance Management System and Prescribed Load List Section  
Three Company Maintenance Teams  
Recovery Section  
Support Platoon Headquarters  
Transportation Section  
Unit Maintenance Section  
Direct-Support Maintenance Section  
Direct-Support Maintenance Supply Section  
Construction Platoon Headquarters  
Two General Construction Sections  
Dump Truck Section  
Treatment Team  
Ambulance Team  
Combat Medic Team  
Direct Support Maintenance Supply Section  
Two Engineer Platoons  
Six Engineer Squads  
Equipment Section

**TASK:** Prepare for Operations Under Nuclear, Biological, and Chemical (NBC) Conditions (03-3-C201.05-T01A)

(FM 3-11.11)

(FM 3-11.4)

(FM 3-3)

**ITERATION:** 1M 2M 3M 4M 5M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** Higher headquarters (HQ) informs the unit that opposing forces (OPFOR) are conducting NBC warfare in the area. NBC equipment has been issued. Soldiers carry protective masks with their

load-carrying equipment (LCE), having mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) gear readily available (within the work area). This task is always performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The element uses collective protection or takes measures to limit the effects of NBC attacks and/or contamination and continues the mission.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The element leader checks accountability and serviceability of NBC defense equipment.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensured that NBC detection equipment was issued to trained operators.</li> <li>b. Ensured that NBC detection equipment was employed and operating within 15 minutes.</li> <li>c. Identified equipment shortages.</li> <li>d. Took action to obtain replacement equipment.</li> </ul> <p>2. The element assumes MOPP levels as directed by higher HQ or as the NBC situation dictates, and is prepared to operate at the time specified in the operation order (OPORD).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Donned masks and hoods within 15 seconds.</li> <li>b. Assumed MOPP4 within 8 minutes.</li> </ul> <p>3. Soldiers take actions to protect themselves against an NBC attack.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Set up and used collective protective shelters (if available).</li> <li>b. Prepared protective shelters, such as foxholes with overhead cover.</li> </ul> <p>* 4. The element leader adjusts the MOPP level using MOPP analysis.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Received and analyzed the enemy NBC threat capability and considered the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Was the unit targeted or could it be targeted?</li> <li>(2) Did the enemy have the capability to deliver chemical or nuclear weapons?</li> <li>(3) When or where could the enemy most likely deliver the chemical or nuclear weapons?</li> </ul> </li> <li>b. Collected and analyzed weather data and considered the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Was it day or night?</li> <li>(2) What were current weather conditions (see the chemical downwind message [CDM] or weather report)?</li> <li>(3) What are weather conditions 2, 4, and 6 hours in the future going to be (see the CDM or weather report)?</li> </ul> </li> <li>c. Analyzed the element status and mission and considered the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) What was the mission?</li> <li>(2) What was the work rate?</li> <li>(3) How long did the work take?</li> <li>(4) What were the training and physical levels of the unit?</li> <li>(5) How long did it take to warn all the soldiers of an NBC attack?</li> </ul> </li> </ul>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1M	2M	3M	4M	5M		TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

- ELEMENTS:** Battalion Headquarters  
 Company Headquarters  
 S1 Section  
 S2 Section  
 S3 Section  
 S4 Section  
 Division Engineer Section  
 Communications Section  
 Battalion Maintenance Section  
 Assault and Barrier Platoon Headquarters  
 Survivability Section  
 Mobility and Countermobility Section  
 Combat Medical Section  
 Three Brigade Engineer Sections  
 Unit Ministry Section  
 Food Services Section  
 Command Section  
 Maintenance Section  
 Assault and Obstacle Platoon  
 Food Service Section  
 Unit Ministry Team  
 Equipment Platoon Headquarters  
 Combat Medic Section  
 S2 and S3 Section  
 Maintenance Platoon Headquarters  
 Headquarters and Headquarters Company Maintenance Section  
 The Army Maintenance Management System and Prescribed Load List Section  
 Three Company Maintenance Teams  
 Recovery Section  
 Support Platoon Headquarters  
 Transportation Section  
 Unit Maintenance Section  
 Direct-Support Maintenance Section  
 Direct-Support Maintenance Supply Section  
 Construction Platoon Headquarters  
 Two General Construction Sections  
 Dump Truck Section  
 Treatment Team  
 Ambulance Team  
 Combat Medic Team  
 Direct Support Maintenance Supply Section  
 Two Engineer Platoons  
 Six Engineer Squads  
 Equipment Section

**TASK:** Prepare for a Chemical Attack (03-3-C202.05-T01A)  
 (FM 3-11.11) (FM 3-11.4)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)  
**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** Opposing forces (OPFOR) are conducting chemical warfare or intelligence indicates that its use is imminent. Higher headquarters (HQ) directs the implementation of actions to minimize casualties and limit contamination. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** Unit personnel assume mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4 within 8 minutes and complete preparation efforts before the attack or its effects reach their location. The element protects its personnel, equipment, food, and water and continues its mission. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in MOPP4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The unit leader issues a warning order.</p> <p>2. Unit personnel start defensive preparations for a chemical attack.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Assumed MOPP4 within 8 minutes after notification.</li> <li>b. Attached M9 detector paper to their right arms, left wrists, their right or left ankles, and the vehicles.</li> <li>c. Conducted MOPP field sanitation procedures.</li> <li>d. Emplaced chemical-agent alarms upwind of their position.</li> </ul> <p>3. Unit personnel prepare fighting positions or shelters.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Used existing, natural, or man-made facilities (such as caves, ditches, culverts, and tunnels) as fighting positions and shelters.</li> <li>b. Dug fighting positions and bunkers with overhead cover.</li> </ul> <p><b>NOTE: Fighting positions should have overhead cover consisting of a minimum of 18 inches of soil, if time permits.</b></p> <p>4. The noncommissioned officers (NCOs) check personnel and fighting positions.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensured that personnel were at MOPP4.</li> <li>b. Ensured that individual and element fighting positions were hardened with sandbags and overhead cover.</li> </ul> <p>* 5. The unit leader takes additional actions consistent with the tactical situation by increasing, decreasing, or modifying the MOPP level.</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
05-2-3000	Control Construction of Survivability Positions

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**



**ELEMENTS:** Battalion Headquarters  
 Company Headquarters  
 S1 Section  
 S2 Section  
 S3 Section  
 S4 Section  
 Division Engineer Section  
 Communications Section  
 Battalion Maintenance Section  
 Assault and Barrier Platoon Headquarters  
 Survivability Section  
 Mobility and Countermobility Section  
 Combat Medical Section  
 Three Brigade Engineer Sections  
 Unit Ministry Section  
 Food Services Section  
 Command Section  
 Maintenance Section  
 Assault and Obstacle Platoon  
 Food Service Section  
 Unit Ministry Team  
 Equipment Platoon Headquarters  
 Combat Medic Section  
 S2 and S3 Section  
 Maintenance Platoon Headquarters  
 Headquarters and Headquarters Company Maintenance Section  
 The Army Maintenance Management System and Prescribed Load List Section  
 Three Company Maintenance Teams  
 Recovery Section  
 Support Platoon Headquarters  
 Transportation Section  
 Unit Maintenance Section  
 Direct-Support Maintenance Section  
 Direct-Support Maintenance Supply Section  
 Construction Platoon Headquarters  
 Two General Construction Sections  
 Dump Truck Section  
 Treatment Team  
 Ambulance Team  
 Combat Medic Team  
 Direct Support Maintenance Supply Section  
 Two Engineer Platoons  
 Six Engineer Squads  
 Equipment Section

**TASK:** Respond to a Chemical Attack (03-3-C203.05-T01A)  
 (FM 3-11.4) (FM 3-11.11) (FM 3-3)  
 (FM 3-5)

**ITERATION:** 1M 2M 3M 4M 5M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The unit is deployed in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 2. Intelligence indicates that opposing forces (OPFOR) have initiated chemical warfare. The automatic alarm sounds or the detector paper changes color, causing the unit to react. This task is always performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The soldiers sound the alarm (vocal or nonvocal), immediately assume MOPP4, and use available shelter to prevent further exposure to contamination. The unit reacts to the chemical alarm within 9 seconds.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. Unit leaders ensure that soldiers react to the sound of the chemical-agent alarm or recognize the indicators of a chemical or biological attack.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Sounded the alarm (vocal or nonvocal).</li> <li>b. Ensured that soldiers put on their protective masks within 9 seconds.</li> <li>c. Assumed MOPP4 as soon as possible.</li> <li>d. Sought additional shelter, if available.</li> <li>e. Administered a nerve agent antidote (buddy aid) to other soldiers with symptoms of nerve agent poisoning (if applicable).</li> <li>f. Administered nerve agent antidotes to selves (if applicable).</li> <li>g. Ensured that each soldier followed protective measures.</li> </ul> <p>2. Soldiers take additional protective measures.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Protected exposed equipment and supplies.</li> <li>b. Monitored the area by testing it with detector kits.</li> <li>c. Applied prevention procedures, such as marking contaminated areas.</li> </ul> <p>3. Soldiers conduct immediate decontamination.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Conducted skin decontamination.</li> <li>b. Wiped down personal equipment with M291 or M280 decontamination kits.</li> <li>c. Conducted operator spray down of equipment.</li> </ul> <p>* 4. Unit leaders initiate unmasking procedures and report to higher headquarters (HQ).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensured that casualties were provided medical care.</li> <li>b. Reported casualties.</li> <li>c. Submitted a nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) 1 report to higher HQ immediately.</li> <li>d. Continued the mission or requested movement to an alternate location.</li> </ul>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1M	2M	3M	4M	5M		TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
12-1-0403.05-T01A	Report Casualties

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

- ELEMENTS:** Battalion Headquarters  
Company Headquarters  
S1 Section  
S2 Section  
S3 Section  
S4 Section  
Division Engineer Section  
Communications Section  
Battalion Maintenance Section  
Assault and Barrier Platoon Headquarters  
Survivability Section  
Mobility and Countermobility Section  
Combat Medical Section  
Three Brigade Engineer Sections  
Unit Ministry Section  
Food Services Section  
Command Section  
Maintenance Section  
Assault and Obstacle Platoon  
Food Service Section  
Unit Ministry Team  
Equipment Platoon Headquarters  
Combat Medic Section  
S2 and S3 Section  
Maintenance Platoon Headquarters  
Headquarters and Headquarters Company Maintenance Section  
The Army Maintenance Management System and Prescribed Load List Section  
Three Company Maintenance Teams  
Recovery Section  
Support Platoon Headquarters  
Transportation Section  
Unit Maintenance Section  
Direct-Support Maintenance Section  
Direct-Support Maintenance Supply Section  
Construction Platoon Headquarters  
Two General Construction Sections  
Dump Truck Section  
Treatment Team  
Ambulance Team  
Combat Medic Team  
Direct Support Maintenance Supply Section  
Two Engineer Platoons  
Six Engineer Squads  
Equipment Section

**TASK:** Prepare for a Friendly Nuclear Strike (03-3-C205.05-T01A)  
(FM 3-11.4) (FM 3-3)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)  
**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The unit receives a strike warning message from higher headquarters (HQ) directing specific actions to be implemented. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The unit completes preparations within 30 minutes of a friendly nuclear-strike warning. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>1. The designated radio operator acknowledges the strike warning message.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Authenticated the call.</li> <li>b. Acknowledged the warning by returning the message.</li> </ul> <p>* 2. The unit leader issues a warning order.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Warned subordinate and affected units.</li> <li>b. Ensured that subordinates executed actions as directed.</li> </ul> <p>3. Soldiers do the following before detonation occurs:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Placed vehicles and equipment for the best terrain shielding (for example, hill masses, slopes, culverts, or depressions).</li> <li>b. Disconnected nonessential electronic equipment.</li> <li>c. Tied down essential antennas.</li> <li>d. Took down nonessential antennas and antenna leads.</li> <li>e. Improved shelters, considering blast, thermal, and radiation effects.</li> </ul> <p><b>NOTE: Add sandbags to shelters, foxholes, or tents in the direction of the strike. Cover openings or position them away from the strike.</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>f. Zeroed dosimeters.</li> <li>g. Secured loose, flammable, or explosive items and food or water containers to protect them from nuclear weapons.</li> </ul> <p>4. Digital units ensure that the systems were prepared according to the unit tactical standing operating procedure (TACSOP).</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

- ELEMENTS:** Battalion Headquarters  
Company Headquarters  
S1 Section  
S2 Section  
S3 Section  
S4 Section  
Division Engineer Section  
Communications Section  
Battalion Maintenance Section  
Assault and Barrier Platoon Headquarters  
Survivability Section  
Mobility and Countermobility Section  
Combat Medical Section  
Three Brigade Engineer Sections  
Unit Ministry Section  
Food Services Section  
Command Section  
Maintenance Section  
Assault and Obstacle Platoon  
Food Service Section  
Unit Ministry Team  
Equipment Platoon Headquarters  
Combat Medic Section  
S2 and S3 Section  
Maintenance Platoon Headquarters  
Headquarters and Headquarters Company Maintenance Section  
The Army Maintenance Management System and Prescribed Load List Section  
Three Company Maintenance Teams  
Recovery Section  
Support Platoon Headquarters  
Transportation Section  
Unit Maintenance Section  
Direct-Support Maintenance Section  
Direct-Support Maintenance Supply Section  
Construction Platoon Headquarters  
Two General Construction Sections  
Dump Truck Section  
Treatment Team  
Ambulance Team  
Combat Medic Team  
Direct Support Maintenance Supply Section  
Two Engineer Platoons  
Six Engineer Squads  
Equipment Section

**TASK:** Prepare for a Nuclear Attack (03-3-C206.05-T01A)  
(FM 3-11.4) (FM 3-11) (FM 3-3)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)  
**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The unit receives notice that a nuclear attack is probable and must initiate actions to minimize casualties and damage. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The unit hardens and shields positions and equipment and conducts periodic monitoring. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The unit leader issues a warning order to subordinate units, and ensures that all soldiers understand the order.</p> <p>2. The unit begins defensive preparation for a nuclear attack.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Placed vehicles and equipment where the terrain shielding was best (for example, hill masses, slopes, culverts, and depressions).</li> <li>b. Turned off and disconnected nonessential electronic equipment according to the unit standing operating procedure (SOP).</li> <li>c. Tied down essential antennas.</li> <li>d. Took down nonessential antenna leads according to the unit SOP or other guidance.</li> <li>e. Improved shelters with consideration for blast, thermal, and radiation effects.</li> <li>f. Zeroed dosimeters.</li> <li>g. Secured loose, flammable, or explosive items and food or water containers to protect them from nuclear-weapons effects.</li> <li>h. Took cover in hardened shelters (if available).</li> <li>i. Used field-expedient shelters.</li> </ul> <p>3. The unit takes additional actions consistent with the tactical situation.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Continued periodic monitoring.</li> <li>b. Reported all dose rate and dosimeter readings to higher headquarters (HQ).</li> </ul>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

Task Number		Task Title
05-2-0018	Conduct Report Procedures	

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

- ELEMENTS:** Battalion Headquarters  
Company Headquarters  
S1 Section  
S2 Section  
S3 Section  
S4 Section  
Division Engineer Section  
Communications Section  
Battalion Maintenance Section  
Assault and Barrier Platoon Headquarters  
Survivability Section  
Mobility and Countermobility Section  
Combat Medical Section  
Three Brigade Engineer Sections  
Unit Ministry Section  
Food Services Section  
Command Section  
Maintenance Section  
Assault and Obstacle Platoon  
Food Service Section  
Unit Ministry Team  
Equipment Platoon Headquarters  
Combat Medic Section  
S2 and S3 Section  
Maintenance Platoon Headquarters  
Headquarters and Headquarters Company Maintenance Section  
The Army Maintenance Management System and Prescribed Load List Section  
Three Company Maintenance Teams  
Recovery Section  
Support Platoon Headquarters  
Transportation Section  
Unit Maintenance Section  
Direct-Support Maintenance Section  
Direct-Support Maintenance Supply Section  
Construction Platoon Headquarters  
Two General Construction Sections  
Dump Truck Section  
Treatment Team  
Ambulance Team  
Combat Medic Team  
Direct Support Maintenance Supply Section  
Two Engineer Platoons  
Six Engineer Squads  
Equipment Section

**TASK:** Cross a Radiologically Contaminated Area (03-3-C208.05-T01A)  
(FM 3-3) (FM 3-11.11) (FM 3-11.4)

**ITERATION:** 1M 2M 3M 4M 5M (Circle)  
**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The unit receives orders to cross a radiologically contaminated area. The approximate boundaries of the area are known or marked. This task is always performed in MOPP4.



**TASK STANDARDS:** The unit crosses the contaminated area by the shortest, fastest route available without incurring radiation casualties or spreading contamination.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. Unit leaders prepare for the crossing.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Directed individuals to cover their noses and mouths with handkerchiefs or clean rags, roll their sleeves down, and wear gloves.</li> <li>b. Received operational-exposure guidance (OEG) from the commander (turn-back dose rate).</li> <li>c. Ensured that radiac equipment operators checked the instruments.</li> </ul> <p>2. The unit prepares for the crossing.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Identified extra shielding requirements (for example, used sandbags on the vehicle floor).</li> <li>b. Placed externally stored equipment inside the vehicle or covered it with available material.</li> <li>c. Started continuous monitoring.</li> </ul> <p>3. The unit crosses the area.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Avoided stirring up dust.</li> <li>b. Kept out of the dust cloud by increasing the intervals and distances between vehicles.</li> <li>c. Conducted movement as rapidly as possible (tracked vehicles should have been buttoned up).</li> </ul> <p>4. The unit performs immediate decontamination of personnel and equipment.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Checked for casualties.</li> <li>b. Reported casualties.</li> <li>c. Conducted necessary decontamination.</li> <li>d. Evacuated casualties.</li> <li>e. Continued the mission.</li> </ul>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1M	2M	3M	4M	5M		TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
08-2-0314.05-T01A	Treat Unit Casualties (for Units With Medical Treatment Personnel)
08-2-C316.05-T01A	Transport Casualties (for Units Without Medical Treatment Personnel)
12-1-0403.05-T01A	Report Casualties

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

- ELEMENTS:** Battalion Headquarters  
 Company Headquarters  
 S1 Section  
 S2 Section  
 S3 Section  
 S4 Section  
 Division Engineer Section  
 Communications Section  
 Battalion Maintenance Section  
 Assault and Barrier Platoon Headquarters  
 Survivability Section  
 Mobility and Countermobility Section  
 Combat Medical Section  
 Three Brigade Engineer Sections  
 Unit Ministry Section  
 Food Services Section  
 Command Section  
 Maintenance Section  
 Assault and Obstacle Platoon  
 Food Service Section  
 Unit Ministry Team  
 Equipment Platoon Headquarters  
 Combat Medic Section  
 S2 and S3 Section  
 Maintenance Platoon Headquarters  
 Headquarters and Headquarters Company Maintenance Section  
 The Army Maintenance Management System and Prescribed Load List Section  
 Three Company Maintenance Teams  
 Recovery Section  
 Support Platoon Headquarters  
 Transportation Section  
 Unit Maintenance Section  
 Direct-Support Maintenance Section  
 Direct-Support Maintenance Supply Section  
 Construction Platoon Headquarters  
 Two General Construction Sections  
 Dump Truck Section  
 Treatment Team  
 Ambulance Team  
 Combat Medic Team  
 Direct Support Maintenance Supply Section  
 Two Engineer Platoons  
 Six Engineer Squads  
 Equipment Section

**TASK:** React to Smoke Operations (03-3-C209.05-T01A)  
 (FM 3-50)

<b>ITERATION:</b>	1	2	3	4	5	M	(Circle)
<b>COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:</b>			T	P	U		(Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The unit encounters friendly or enemy smoke while conducting operations. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The unit exploits the threat smoke or employs friendly smoke to conceal its own activities and continues the mission. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The unit does not allow smoke to impede the performance of the mission.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Performed its mission in the presence of smoke.</li> <li>b. Exploited threat smoke to conceal its own movements.</li> <li>c. Moved to alternate positions to reduce the effects of the smoke used by the threat.</li> <li>d. Considered using countersmoke to conceal their own activities.</li> </ol> </li> <li>2. The unit employs organic smoke grenade launchers, smoke pots, and smoke hand grenades.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Coordinated smoke operations with the unit commander or the supported unit.</li> <li>b. Determined the wind direction and speed.</li> <li>c. Determined where to release the smoke and where it would travel.</li> <li>d. Determined the duration of the smoke operations.</li> <li>e. Determined the effects of weather conditions on the smoke plan.</li> <li>f. Ensured that the smoke covered an area larger than the unit position.</li> <li>g. Requested smoke support from other units (if organic systems would not accomplish the task).</li> </ol> </li> <li>3. The unit uses target acquisition and guidance systems.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Determined what available target acquisition and guidance systems were effective in the smoke.</li> <li>b. Requested and used target acquisition and guidance systems that were effective in the smoke.</li> </ol> </li> <li>* 4. The noncommissioned officer in charge (NCOIC) requests a resupply of smoke munitions when required.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Requested smoke grenades and smoke pots.</li> <li>b. Distributed smoke grenades and smoke pots.</li> </ol> </li> </ol>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
05-2-7003	Receive and Distribute Throughput Supplies

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** Battalion Headquarters  
Company Headquarters  
S1 Section  
S2 Section  
S3 Section  
S4 Section  
Division Engineer Section  
Communications Section  
Battalion Maintenance Section  
Assault and Barrier Platoon Headquarters  
Survivability Section  
Mobility and Countermobility Section  
Combat Medical Section  
Three Brigade Engineer Sections  
Unit Ministry Section  
Food Services Section  
Command Section  
Maintenance Section  
Assault and Obstacle Platoon  
Food Service Section  
Unit Ministry Team  
Equipment Platoon Headquarters  
Combat Medic Section  
S2 and S3 Section  
Maintenance Platoon Headquarters  
Headquarters and Headquarters Company Maintenance Section  
The Army Maintenance Management System and Prescribed Load List Section  
Three Company Maintenance Teams  
Recovery Section  
Support Platoon Headquarters  
Transportation Section  
Unit Maintenance Section  
Direct-Support Maintenance Section  
Direct-Support Maintenance Supply Section  
Construction Platoon Headquarters  
Two General Construction Sections  
Dump Truck Section  
Treatment Team  
Ambulance Team  
Combat Medic Team  
Direct Support Maintenance Supply Section  
Two Engineer Platoons  
Six Engineer Squads  
Equipment Section

**TASK:** Respond to the Residual Effects of a Nuclear Attack (03-3-C222.05-T01A)  
(FM 3-11.4) (FM 3-11.11) (FM 3-3)

**ITERATION:** 1M 2M 3M 4M 5M (Circle)  
**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The unit is located within a predicted fallout area. The mission does not allow movement from the predicted fallout area. This task is always performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The unit takes actions to minimize exposure to residual radiation.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. Unit leaders prepare the unit for fallout.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensured that individuals covered their noses and mouths with handkerchiefs or clean rags, rolled their sleeves down, and wore gloves.</li> <li>b. Covered equipment; munitions; petroleum, oils, and lubricants (POL); and food and water containers or placed them inside shelters or vehicles.</li> <li>c. Used shelters, closed vehicles, or available shielding to protect personnel from fallout.</li> <li>d. Ensured that continuous monitoring was maintained using available nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) detection and identification equipment.</li> </ul> <p>2. Unit leaders designate personnel to monitor fallout.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Maintained total-dose information using available total-dose instruments.</li> <li>b. Ensured that exposure was minimized while the commander determined if relocation to a clean area was necessary or possible.</li> <li>c. Calculated the optimum time of exit.</li> <li>d. Sent NBC 4 reports to higher headquarters (HQ) using secure means when possible.</li> </ul> <p>* 3. The unit leader develops a contingency plan.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Used guidance from higher HQ based on the mission and previous radiation exposure.</li> <li>b. Planned for rotation of individuals to minimize exposure.</li> </ul> <p>* 4. The unit leader submits reports according to unit standing operating procedure (SOP).</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1M	2M	3M	4M	5M		TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title
05-2-0018	Conduct Report Procedures
12-1-0403.05-T01A	Report Casualties

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** Battalion Headquarters  
Company Headquarters  
S1 Section  
S2 Section  
S3 Section  
S4 Section  
Division Engineer Section  
Communications Section  
Battalion Maintenance Section  
Assault and Barrier Platoon Headquarters  
Survivability Section  
Mobility and Countermobility Section  
Combat Medical Section  
Three Brigade Engineer Sections  
Unit Ministry Section  
Food Services Section  
Command Section  
Maintenance Section  
Assault and Obstacle Platoon  
Food Service Section  
Unit Ministry Team  
Equipment Platoon Headquarters  
Combat Medic Section  
S2 and S3 Section  
Maintenance Platoon Headquarters  
Headquarters and Headquarters Company Maintenance Section  
The Army Maintenance Management System and Prescribed Load List Section  
Three Company Maintenance Teams  
Recovery Section  
Support Platoon Headquarters  
Transportation Section  
Unit Maintenance Section  
Direct-Support Maintenance Section  
Direct-Support Maintenance Supply Section  
Construction Platoon Headquarters  
Two General Construction Sections  
Dump Truck Section  
Treatment Team  
Ambulance Team  
Combat Medic Team  
Direct Support Maintenance Supply Section  
Two Engineer Platoons  
Six Engineer Squads  
Equipment Section

**TASK:** Respond to the Initial Effects of a Nuclear Attack (03-3-C223.05-T01A)  
(FM 3-11.4) (FM 3-11.11) (FM 3-3)

**ITERATION:** 1M 2M 3M 4M 5M (Circle)  
**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** Soldiers observe a brilliant flash of light and/or a mushroom-shaped cloud. This task is always performed in MOPP4.



**TASK STANDARDS:** The unit takes action to minimize exposure to the initial effects of a nuclear detonation in its area and continues its mission.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>1. Soldiers take immediate protective actions in response to a nuclear attack.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Without warning, soldiers—               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Closed their eyes immediately.</li> <li>(2) Dropped to the ground in a prone position, with their heads toward the blast (if in the hatch of an armored vehicle, immediately dropped down inside the vehicle).</li> <li>(3) Kept their heads and their faces down and helmets on.</li> <li>(4) Remained in a prone position until the blast wave passed and all debris stopped falling.</li> </ul> </li> <li>b. With warning, soldiers—               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Identified the best available shelter, such as fighting positions or inside shelters.</li> <li>(2) Moved to the shelter.</li> <li>(3) Took actions to protect themselves from the blast and radiation.</li> <li>(4) Kept clothing loosely fitted and their headgear on at all times.</li> <li>(5) Protected their eyes and minimized exposed skin areas.</li> </ul> </li> </ul> <p>* 2. Leaders reorganize the unit.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Reestablished the chain of command.</li> <li>b. Reestablished communications.</li> <li>c. Submitted a nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) 1 report to higher headquarters (HQ).</li> <li>d. Treated casualties.</li> <li>e. Reported casualties.</li> <li>f. Evacuated casualties.</li> <li>g. Evaluated facilities for protection from residual radiation.</li> <li>h. Implemented continuous monitoring.</li> <li>i. Submitted a damage assessment to higher HQ.</li> <li>j. Initiated an area damage control plan, as required.</li> <li>k. Extinguished all fires.</li> </ul> <p>* 3. Leaders ensure that weapon systems are operational.</p> <p>4. Soldiers right overturned vehicles.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Checked for loss of coolant, fuel, and battery fluids.</li> <li>b. Performed operator's maintenance to restore moderately damaged vehicles to combat use.</li> </ul> <p>5. Soldiers improve cover.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Chose dense covering material.</li> <li>b. Covered in depth.</li> <li>c. Provided strong support.</li> <li>d. Covered as much of the opening as practical.</li> </ul>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1M	2M	3M	4M	5M		TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title
05-1-0031	Control Area Damage Control (ADC) Operations
05-2-0018	Conduct Report Procedures
08-2-C316.05-T01A	Transport Casualties (for Units Without Medical Treatment Personnel)
12-1-0403.05-T01A	Report Casualties

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

- ELEMENTS:** Battalion Headquarters  
 Company Headquarters  
 S1 Section  
 S2 Section  
 S3 Section  
 S4 Section  
 Division Engineer Section  
 Communications Section  
 Battalion Maintenance Section  
 Assault and Barrier Platoon Headquarters  
 Survivability Section  
 Mobility and Countermobility Section  
 Combat Medical Section  
 Three Brigade Engineer Sections  
 Unit Ministry Section  
 Food Services Section  
 Command Section  
 Maintenance Section  
 Assault and Obstacle Platoon  
 Food Service Section  
 Unit Ministry Team  
 Equipment Platoon Headquarters  
 Combat Medic Section  
 S2 and S3 Section  
 Maintenance Platoon Headquarters  
 Headquarters and Headquarters Company Maintenance Section  
 The Army Maintenance Management System and Prescribed Load List Section  
 Three Company Maintenance Teams  
 Recovery Section  
 Support Platoon Headquarters  
 Transportation Section  
 Unit Maintenance Section  
 Direct-Support Maintenance Section  
 Direct-Support Maintenance Supply Section  
 Construction Platoon Headquarters  
 Two General Construction Sections  
 Dump Truck Section  
 Treatment Team  
 Ambulance Team  
 Combat Medic Team  
 Direct Support Maintenance Supply Section  
 Two Engineer Platoons  
 Six Engineer Squads  
 Equipment Section

**TASK:** Conduct Operational Decontamination (03-3-C224.05-T01A)  
 (FM 3-5) (FM 3-11.11)

**ITERATION:** 1M 2M 3M 4M 5M (Circle)  
**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The unit is operating in a contaminated environment and/or is contaminated. Performance degradation from mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4 is increasing, and protective gear is in danger of penetration by contamination. Time and the tactical situation permit the element to conduct operational decontamination. Replacement protective gear is available for each soldier. For a

nonsupported decontamination, element decontamination equipment and supplies are available and operational. For a supported decontamination, a decontamination element is available, operational, and tasked to provide decontamination support. This task is always performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The unit decontaminates its individual gear and conducts MOPP gear exchange (using the buddy system) without sustaining additional casualties from nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) contamination. The unit limits the contamination transfer hazard by removing gross chemical contamination on equipment and minimizes contamination on soldiers according to Field Manual (FM) 3-5. The unit reduces radiological contamination to negligible risk levels according to FM 3-5 and reduces chemical and biological contamination to accelerate the weathering process and eventually provide temporary relief from MOPP4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* 1. The contaminated unit determines the extent of contamination and establishes decontamination priorities.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Received input from staff and subordinate leaders.</li> <li>b. Established decontamination priorities.</li> </ul> </li>   <li>2. The contaminated unit submits a request for decontamination to higher headquarters (HQ). The request, as a minimum, includes the—                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Contaminated element designation.</li> <li>b. Contaminated element location.</li> <li>c. Contaminated element frequency and call sign.</li> <li>d. Time that the element was contaminated.</li> <li>e. Number of vehicles and equipment (by type) that were contaminated.</li> <li>f. Type of contamination.</li> <li>g. Special requirements (such as a patient decontamination station, recovery assets, and a element decontamination team).</li> </ul> </li>   <li>* 3. The contaminated unit leader coordinates with higher HQ.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Obtained permission to conduct decontamination and necessary support.</li> <li>b. Selected a linkup point to meet supporting units (a company supply section, company or battalion power-driven decontamination equipment [PDDE] crew, or decontamination squad or platoon).</li> <li>c. Coordinated with supporting units.</li> <li>d. Requested replacement MOPP gear.</li> <li>e. Coordinated with supporting units to determine if they would also conduct a MOPP gear exchange.</li> </ul> </li>   <li>* 4. The contaminated unit leader and NBC specialist select a site to conduct the operation, ensuring that the selected site provided—                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Adequate overhead concealment.</li> <li>b. Good drainage.</li> <li>c. Easy access and exit (but off the main routes).</li> <li>d. The proximity to a water source large enough to support vehicle wash down.</li> <li>e. An area large enough to accommodate units involved in the operational decontamination (100 square meters for both the vehicle washdown site and the MOPP gear exchange site).</li> </ul> </li>   <li>5. The contaminated unit coordinates for operational decontamination support (such as, a company or battalion PDDE crew or a decontamination unit).                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Requested operational decontamination support.</li> <li>b. Notified higher HQ of the area for the operational decontamination.</li> <li>c. Established communications with the decontamination element.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>d. Ensured that the decontamination element knew the locations of the linkup and the selected decontamination sites.</p> <p>6. The contaminated element and supporting elements move to the decontamination site.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Met at the linkup point as coordinated.</li> <li>b. Provided security at both the linkup point and the decontamination site by the contaminated element.</li> </ol> <p>7. The elements prepare for operational decontamination.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Set up the decontamination site. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) The supporting decontamination element crew set up the vehicle washdown site.</li> <li>(2) The contaminated unit set up the MOPP gear exchange site not less than 50 meters upwind of the vehicle washdown site.</li> <li>(3) The remainder of the element prepared its equipment for decontamination.</li> </ol> </li> <li>b. Conducted preparatory actions in the predecontamination area. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Vehicle crews (except for the operators) dismounted unless they had an operational overpressure system and an uncontaminated interior.</li> <li>(2) Dismounted crews removed mud and camouflage from the vehicles.</li> </ol> </li> </ol> <p><b>NOTE: The contaminated element provides personnel to do this when the crews do not dismount.</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(3) Separated vehicles and dismounted crews. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) Ensured that vehicle operators were briefed (included the use of overhead cover and concealment and the proper intervals).</li> <li>(b) Ensured that vehicles were buttoned up; for example, all doors, hatches, and other openings were closed or covered.</li> </ol> </li> <li>(4) Moved vehicles (with operators) to the vehicle washdown site.</li> <li>(5) Moved dismounted crews and all other soldiers in the contaminated unit to the MOPP gear exchange site.</li> </ol> <p>* 8. The noncommissioned officer in charge (NCOIC) of the decontamination element supervises the operation of the vehicle washdown site, ensuring that vehicle operators—</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Maintained the proper interval between vehicles while processing through the washdown station.</li> <li>b. Washed vehicles. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Started at the top and worked down.</li> <li>(2) Sprayed hot, soapy water for 2 to 3 minutes per vehicle.</li> <li>(3) Monitored water consumption.</li> </ol> </li> <li>c. Moved to the assembly area (AA) after the vehicle wash down.</li> <li>d. Moved to the MOPP gear exchange site and conducted MOPP gear exchange.</li> </ol> <p>9. The contaminated element conducts MOPP gear exchange.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Prepared the equipment decontamination station (with supertropical bleach [STB] dry mix).</li> <li>b. Briefed MOPP gear exchange participants on procedures to be followed.</li> <li>c. Placed the decontaminated individual equipment on a clean surface (such as plastic, a poncho, or similar material).</li> <li>d. Exchanged MOPP gear using the buddy system.</li> <li>e. Moved soldiers to the AA after completing MOPP gear exchange.</li> </ol>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p><b>NOTES:</b></p> <p><b>1. Ensure that the supporting units have the opportunity to use the MOPP gear exchange site before proceeding.</b></p> <p><b>2. The supporting decontamination element cleans and marks the site and reports the area of contamination (using an NBC 4 report) to higher HQ.</b></p> <p>*10. Element leaders account for all personnel and equipment after completing the operational decontamination.</p> <p>*11. The decontaminated element leader reports to higher HQ.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">a. Reported the completion and location of the vehicle washdown and MOPP gear exchange decontamination sites.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">b. Requested permission to perform unmasking procedures if no hazards were detected through testing.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">c. Determined the adequacy of decontamination and adjusted the MOPP level (after obtaining approval from higher HQ).</p> <p>12. The decontaminated element continues the mission.</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1M	2M	3M	4M	5M		TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title
05-2-0018	Conduct Report Procedures
05-3-3006	Establish Jobsite Security

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** Battalion Headquarters  
 Company Headquarters  
 S1 Section  
 S2 Section  
 S3 Section  
 S4 Section  
 Division Engineer Section  
 Communications Section  
 Battalion Maintenance Section  
 Assault and Barrier Platoon Headquarters  
 Survivability Section  
 Mobility and Countermobility Section  
 Combat Medical Section  
 Three Brigade Engineer Sections  
 Unit Ministry Section  
 Food Services Section  
 Command Section  
 Maintenance Section  
 Assault and Obstacle Platoon  
 Food Service Section  
 Unit Ministry Team  
 Equipment Platoon Headquarters  
 Combat Medic Section  
 S2 and S3 Section  
 Maintenance Platoon Headquarters  
 Headquarters and Headquarters Company Maintenance Section  
 The Army Maintenance Management System and Prescribed Load List Section  
 Three Company Maintenance Teams  
 Recovery Section  
 Support Platoon Headquarters  
 Transportation Section  
 Unit Maintenance Section  
 Direct-Support Maintenance Section  
 Direct-Support Maintenance Supply Section  
 Construction Platoon Headquarters  
 Two General Construction Sections  
 Dump Truck Section  
 Treatment Team  
 Ambulance Team  
 Combat Medic Team  
 Direct Support Maintenance Supply Section  
 Two Engineer Platoons  
 Six Engineer Squads  
 Equipment Section

**TASK:** Cross a Chemically Contaminated Area (03-3-C226.05-T01A)  
 (FM 3-3) (DA FORM 1248)

**ITERATION:** 1M 2M 3M 4M 5M (Circle)  
**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The unit is en route to a new location on a designated route. The unit cannot move off that route and still complete its assigned mission. The unit discovers contamination on the route and is directed to cross the contaminated area. This task is always performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The unit crosses the contaminated area without suffering chemical-agent casualties.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The unit leader selects a route across the contaminated area.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Employed a nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) 5 (chemical) report and/or DA Form 1248 (Road Reconnaissance Report) to select a route.</li> <li>b. Selected a route that minimized exposure consistent with the mission.</li> <li>c. Obtained a route clearance and approval.</li> </ul> <p>2. The unit prepares to cross the area.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Assumed mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4 for crossing the area.</li> <li>b. Ensured that all drivers, vehicle commanders, and leaders knew the march route or had strip maps.</li> <li>c. Ensured that all vehicles were buttoned up (mounted movement).</li> <li>d. Placed externally stored equipment inside the vehicle or covered it with available material.</li> <li>e. Attached M9 detector paper to soldiers and vehicles to provide warning of contamination.</li> </ul> <p>3. The unit crosses the area.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Avoided low ground, overhanging branches, and brush to the extent allowed by the tactical situation.</li> <li>b. Conducted dismounted movement, if necessary, as rapidly as possible.</li> <li>c. Crossed the area as quickly and carefully as possible.</li> </ul> <p>4. The unit exits the contaminated area.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Checked for casualties.</li> <li>b. Reported casualties.</li> <li>c. Conducted necessary decontamination.</li> <li>d. Continued the mission.</li> </ul>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1M	2M	3M	4M	5M		TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**



**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
12-1-0403.05-T01A	Report Casualties

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

- ELEMENTS:** Battalion Headquarters  
Company Headquarters  
S1 Section  
S2 Section  
S3 Section  
S4 Section  
Division Engineer Section  
Communications Section  
Battalion Maintenance Section  
Assault and Barrier Platoon Headquarters  
Survivability Section  
Mobility and Countermobility Section  
Combat Medical Section  
Three Brigade Engineer Sections  
Unit Ministry Section  
Food Services Section  
Command Section  
Maintenance Section  
Assault and Obstacle Platoon  
Food Service Section  
Unit Ministry Team  
Combat Medic Section  
S2 and S3 Section  
Maintenance Platoon Headquarters  
Headquarters and Headquarters Company Maintenance Section  
The Army Maintenance Management System and Prescribed Load List Section  
Three Company Maintenance Teams  
Recovery Section  
Support Platoon Headquarters  
Transportation Section  
Unit Maintenance Section  
Direct-Support Maintenance Section  
Direct-Support Maintenance Supply Section  
Construction Platoon Headquarters  
Two General Construction Sections  
Dump Truck Section  
Treatment Team  
Ambulance Team  
Combat Medic Team  
Direct Support Maintenance Supply Section  
Two Engineer Platoons  
Six Engineer Squads  
Equipment Section

**TASK:** Camouflage Vehicles and Equipment (05-2-3002)  
(FM 20-3)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The unit is tactically deployed. The enemy has air and ground surveillance capability, to include infrared sensors. Personnel and camouflage resources are available. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The vehicles, equipment, and individual fighting positions cannot be detected by ground forces within small arms range. The location or identity of the element cannot be determined through an aerial or ground surveillance. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The element leader selects the concealed vehicle positions and traffic routes.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensured that the vehicle operators used the concealed routes. Whenever possible, followed and paralleled hedges, woods, fences, cultivated fields, and other natural terrain features.</li> <li>b. Ensured that the vehicle track signature continued past the parked location to another logical spot.</li> </ul> <p>2. The operators maneuver the vehicles along concealed routes.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Used the existing tracks.</li> <li>b. Avoided movement near terrain features (such as hilltops and road intersections) that may have been used as a reference point by enemy ground or aerial fires.</li> <li>c. Obliterated the vehicle tracks where they turned and concealed the vehicle positions.</li> </ul> <p>3. The element conceals the vehicles and equipment.</p> <p><b>NOTE: The leader is provided intelligence data on enemy reconnaissance capabilities in the area of operations (AO).</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Positioned the vehicles and equipment under natural cover or in shadows.</li> <li>b. Positioned the vehicles and equipment so their shapes blended with the surroundings.</li> <li>c. Used natural materials to distort and combine with the shapes or shadows of the vehicles and equipment.</li> <li>d. Blended natural materials with the surrounding area.</li> <li>e. Replaced the cut vegetation when it withered or changed color.</li> <li>f. Used nets to create shadows.</li> <li>g. Used camouflage-screening systems to enhance natural materials.</li> <li>h. Kept heat sources (generators, engines, and mess areas) under the screening systems, even when using natural concealment.</li> <li>i. Covered shiny objects, such as windshields, headlights, cab windows, and wet vehicle bodies.</li> <li>j. Dug in (if in desert or open terrain) when the situation permitted.</li> <li>k. Concealed the vehicle track signatures in snow-covered terrain.</li> <li>l. Disguised the vehicles and equipment to change their appearance or to resemble something of a lesser or greater threat to the enemy.</li> </ul> <p>4. The element conceals positions.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Concealed fighting positions to prevent identification from ground level out to a distance equal to grenade range.</li> <li>b. Used natural materials to camouflage positions from aerial observation.</li> </ul> <p>* 5. The element leader enforces camouflage discipline.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensured that the element activities did not change the area appearance or reveal the presence of military equipment or positions.</li> <li>b. Enforced measures to maintain blackout conditions at night.</li> <li>c. Ensured that measures were taken to eliminate or reduce noise by muffling or masking it with the terrain, deflade positions, or shields.</li> <li>d. Ensured that the area was policed of debris promptly.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 6. The element leader knows when opposing forces (OPFOR) surveillance is overhead. a. Received satellite transmission (SATRAN) information from higher headquarters (HQ). b. Disseminated pertinent SATRAN information to subordinates. c. Incorporated SATRAN information into the tactical plan.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title
05-1-0023	Plan and Direct Engineer Intelligence Collection
05-1-6000	Identify Geospatial Support Requirements
05-1-6002	Request Nonstandard Geospatial Products

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** Battalion Headquarters  
 Company Headquarters  
 S1 Section  
 S2 Section  
 S3 Section  
 S4 Section  
 Division Engineer Section  
 Communications Section  
 Battalion Maintenance Section  
 Assault and Barrier Platoon Headquarters  
 Survivability Section  
 Mobility and Countermobility Section  
 Combat Medical Section  
 Three Brigade Engineer Sections  
 Unit Ministry Section  
 Food Services Section  
 Command Section  
 Maintenance Section  
 Assault and Obstacle Platoon  
 Food Service Section  
 Unit Ministry Team  
 Equipment Platoon Headquarters  
 Combat Medic Section  
 S2 and S3 Section  
 Maintenance Platoon Headquarters  
 Headquarters and Headquarters Company Maintenance Section  
 The Army Maintenance Management System and Prescribed Load List Section  
 Three Company Maintenance Teams  
 Recovery Section  
 Support Platoon Headquarters  
 Transportation Section  
 Unit Maintenance Section  
 Direct-Support Maintenance Section  
 Direct-Support Maintenance Supply Section  
 Construction Platoon Headquarters  
 Two General Construction Sections  
 Dump Truck Section  
 Treatment Team  
 Ambulance Team  
 Combat Medic Team  
 Direct Support Maintenance Supply Section  
 Two Engineer Platoons  
 Six Engineer Squads  
 Equipment Section

**TASK:** Defend a Convoy Against a Ground Attack (05-2-3003)

(FM 55-30)  
 (FM 24-35)

(FM 21-75)  
 (FM 3-90.1)

(FM 24-19)  
 (STP 5-12B24-SM-TG)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The unit is conducting convoy operations in support of a maneuver task force. The operation order (OPORD) and rules of engagement (ROE) provide guidance for the mission and the

actions to take upon contact. The enemy squad- to platoon-sized force attacks the main body of the convoy. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The convoy protects itself and attacks or disengages from the enemy. The convoy minimizes casualties or damage by taking immediate action. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The element leader prepares for combat operations.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Designated and positioned the security elements throughout the convoy (front, rear, and flank).</li> <li>b. Established radio communications with security elements.</li> <li>c. Designated actions upon enemy contact (action front, left, right, or rear; air attack; or indirect fire).</li> <li>d. Assigned each armed vehicle a sector of fire for the movement, and ensured that the convoy had 360° coverage while moving.</li> <li>e. Designated en route rally points and the actions to be taken at those points.</li> <li>f. Coordinated with the battalion Operations and Training Officer (US Army) (S3) for indirect fire along the planned route.</li> <li>g. Received an update from the battalion Intelligence Officer (US Army) (S2) on probable enemy actions influencing the convoy route or mission.</li> </ul> <p>2. The element prepares for combat operations.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Loaded vehicles, stowed or tied down all loose equipment, and ensured that there was enough space to bring weapons to bear.</li> <li>b. Ensured that weapons were functional and had their basic load of ammunition.</li> <li>c. Rehearsed the procedures for enemy contact before the start point (SP).</li> <li>d. Ensured that each vehicle commander knew the route and all standing operating procedures (SOPs).</li> </ul> <p>3. The element reduces the effectiveness of ambushes.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Hardened vehicles and covered loads.</li> <li>b. Spaced prime targets throughout the convoy.</li> <li>c. Wore protective clothing and used assistant drivers.</li> <li>d. Carried troops and supplies.</li> <li>e. Tracked the vehicle in front, and avoided driving on the shoulder of the road.</li> <li>f. Did not run over foreign objects, brush, or grass in the road (when possible).</li> <li>g. Avoided fresh earth in the road.</li> <li>h. Watched the local national traffic and the reactions of people on foot.</li> </ul> <p><b>NOTE: People on foot will frequently give away the location of any mines or booby traps.</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>i. Used heavy vehicles, such as tanks, to explode small mines that were deployed in front of the convoy.</li> <li>j. Briefed prearranged signals to warn the convoy of an ambush.</li> <li>k. Used escort vehicles (such as military police [MP], tanks, or armored vehicles) or gun trucks.</li> <li>l. Briefed and practiced immediate-action drills, thoroughly, with all convoy personnel.</li> <li>m. Maintained an interval between vehicles, and moved through the kill zone, if possible.</li> <li>n. Stopped short of the ambush, and did not block the road.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>o. Responded to orders rapidly, returned fire aggressively, and counterattacked with escort vehicles.</p> <p>p. Called for artillery support, tactical air (TACAIR) support, and reserve forces, if necessary.</p> <p>4. The convoy reacts to enemy contact.</p> <p>a. Scanned the area for the enemy, and returned fire at identified enemy positions.</p> <p>b. Sought available cover.</p> <p>c. Maneuvered vehicles to allow the gunner to engage the enemy, and moved all unarmed vehicles to cover.</p> <p>d. Provided suppressive gunnery fire on the enemy.</p> <p>e. Deployed the security teams, and reported the situation to the element leader.</p> <p>* 5. The element leader develops the situation.</p> <p>a. Initiated fire and maneuver.</p> <p>b. Requested indirect-fire support.</p> <p>c. Sought information on the enemy strength, composition, and disposition.</p> <p>d. Evaluated the direction and volume of enemy fire, and confirmed or suspected enemy positions and the terrain capacity for the masking forces.</p> <p>* 6. The element leader selects a course of action (COA) based on mission, enemy, terrain, troops, time available, and civilian considerations (METT-TC) and the developing situation.</p> <p>a. Maneuvered to attack the enemy flank.</p> <p>b. Conducted a frontal assault.</p> <p>c. Broke contact and moved away from the enemy position by fire and maneuver.</p> <p>7. The security element engages the enemy (within its capabilities).</p> <p>* 8. The element leader reports the tactical situation to higher headquarters (HQ).</p> <p>9. The element reorganizes and resumes its convoy.</p> <p>a. Reconstituted the security force.</p> <p>b. Reported casualties.</p> <p>c. Treated and evacuated casualties.</p> <p>d. Redistributed ammunition and equipment.</p> <p>e. Recovered any damaged equipment or destroyed it in place.</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
052-194-3500	Conduct a Patrol
071-326-5505	Issue an Oral Operation Order
071-326-5605	Control Movement of a Fire Team
071-326-5611	Conduct the Maneuver of a Squad
081-831-0101	Request Medical Evacuation
551-721-3352	Direct Convoy Defense Operations
551-721-4326	Perform Duties as Convoy Commander

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
07-2-1301.05-T01A	Conduct a Convoy
07-3-1112.05-T01A	React to an Ambush
10-2-0318.05-T01A	Perform Unit Graves Registration (GRREG) Operations

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**



- ELEMENTS:** Battalion Headquarters  
 Company Headquarters  
 S1 Section  
 S2 Section  
 S3 Section  
 S4 Section  
 Division Engineer Section  
 Communications Section  
 Battalion Maintenance Section  
 Assault and Barrier Platoon Headquarters  
 Survivability Section  
 Mobility and Countermobility Section  
 Combat Medical Section  
 Three Brigade Engineer Sections  
 Unit Ministry Section  
 Food Services Section  
 Command Section  
 Maintenance Section  
 Assault and Obstacle Platoon  
 Food Service Section  
 Unit Ministry Team  
 Equipment Platoon Headquarters  
 Combat Medic Section  
 S2 and S3 Section  
 Maintenance Platoon Headquarters  
 Headquarters and Headquarters Company Maintenance Section  
 The Army Maintenance Management System and Prescribed Load List Section  
 Three Company Maintenance Teams  
 Recovery Section  
 Support Platoon Headquarters  
 Transportation Section  
 Unit Maintenance Section  
 Direct-Support Maintenance Section  
 Direct-Support Maintenance Supply Section  
 Construction Platoon Headquarters  
 Two General Construction Sections  
 Dump Truck Section  
 Treatment Team  
 Ambulance Team  
 Combat Medic Team  
 Direct Support Maintenance Supply Section

**TASK:** Conduct an Extraction From a Minefield (05-2-3005)  
 (FM 20-32) (FM 5-250) (FM 5-34)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)  
**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The element is moving mounted or dismounted, and discovers minefield marking indicators or a mine strike occurs. Personnel have fragmentation armor and ballistic glasses (if available). Each vehicle is equipped with 30 meters of line and light grapnels. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The element extracts all vehicles and personnel from the minefield. The element submits reports to update the common operational picture. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p><b>DANGER: PERFORM THE STEPS IN THIS TASK EXACTLY AS FOLLOWS: STOP, ASSESS, NOTE, DRAW BACK, AND INFORM (SANDI). FAILURE TO DO THIS MAY RESULT IN SERIOUS INJURY OR DEATH.</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The element <b>stops</b> and gains control of the patrol.               <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Stopped and did not move.</li> <li>b. Warned the rest of the patrol.</li> </ol> </li> <li>* 2. The element leader <b>assesses</b> the situation of the mines and the individuals within the patrol.               <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Determined if the element was in the middle of the minefield.</li> <li>b. Determined the nearest safe location.</li> <li>c. Determined the shortest route to the known safe area.</li> </ol> </li> <li>* 3. The element leader <b>notes</b> the situation for future reference.               <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Made notes about mine indicators, exposed trip wires, and mines that were seen.</li> <li>b. Indicated the number of mines located.</li> <li>c. Annotated the terrain considerations.</li> <li>d. Indicated the location of the minefield.</li> </ol> </li> <li>4. The element <b>draws back</b> to the last known safe area.               <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Performed a self-extraction when dismounted and when footprints were not clearly visible by using the stepping-stone method.</li> <li>b. Performed the look-feel-probe drill.                   <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Looked for mine indicators on the ground or in the immediate area.</li> <li>(2) Felt for trip wires on the ground where the individual was to place their feet, and informed the element leader if a mine was found.</li> <li>(3) Probed the stepping-stone area.</li> </ol> </li> <li>c. Extracted casualties.</li> </ol> </li> </ol> <p><b>DANGER: ENTERING A MINEFIELD TO EXTRACT A FELLOW SOLDIER IS EXTREMELY HAZARDOUS AND CAN RESULT IN ADDITIONAL CASUALTIES. SOLDIERS MUST RESIST THE URGE TO RACE IN AND ASSIST THE CASUALTY.</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Used the single-casualty method in a minefield.               <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) Called for help. Established communication with the casualty if he was conscious. Instructed the casualty to remain still and to administer self-help first aid. Reassured the casualty by telling him that help was coming.</li> <li>(b) Identified the shortest and easiest route to reach the casualty. Cleared a 1-meter-wide path if the carry technique for a casualty extraction was to be used. Cleared a 2-meter-wide path if the casualty was to be extracted on a stretcher and used the look-feel-probe drill from the prone position. Marked the path while progressing down it.</li> <li>(c) Cleared a 1- or 2-meter area around the casualty (depending on the extraction technique) to provide a safe working area for the medical and litter teams. Cleared up to and under the casualty in case he was lying on a mine.</li> <li>(d) Removed the casualty and moved him to a medical facility.</li> <li>(e) Marked and reported the minefield after leaving it.</li> </ol> </li> </ol>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>(2) Used the vehicle or convoy extraction method.</p> <p>(a) Stopped immediately.</p> <p>(b) Used a radio to brief the situation to the appropriate higher headquarters (HQ).</p> <p>(c) Remained in the vehicle and awaited extraction, if assistance was available.</p> <p>(d) Extracted personnel from the rear of the vehicle, and walked carefully, following in the visible vehicle tracks, to the last known safe area.</p> <p><b>DANGER: TRACKED-VEHICLE TRACKS MAY ALSO BE FOLLOWED, BUT CAUTION MUST BE TAKEN BECAUSE SMALL ANTIPERSONNEL (AP) MINE FUZES ARE SOMETIMES MISSED BY THE TRACK PINS AND NOT DETONATED. THESE MINES STILL POSE A THREAT TO PERSONNEL WALKING ALONG THE VEHICLE TRACK MARKS. IF THERE ARE NO VISIBLE TIRE OR TRACK MARKS, CREWS MUST EXIT THE VEHICLE USING THE LOOK-FEEL-PROBE DRILL AND CLEAR THEIR WAY TO A SAFE AREA.</b></p> <p>* 5. The element leader <b>informs</b> higher HQ of the situation.</p> <p>6. The element marks the minefield.</p> <p>* 7. The element leader submits the proper report.</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title
052-192-1042	Perform Self-Extraction From a Mined Area
052-192-2026	Direct a Minefield Marking Party
052-193-1013	Neutralize Booby Traps
052-193-2030	Clear Misfires
052-254-1044	Recover Equipment With a Crawler Tractor Winch

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title
05-2-0018	Conduct Report Procedures

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

- ELEMENTS:** Two Engineer Platoons  
 Six Engineer Squads  
 Company Headquarters  
 Equipment Section  
 Assault and Obstacle Platoon  
 Mobility and Countermobility Section  
 Survivability Section  
 Assault and Barrier Platoon Headquarters  
 Construction Platoon Headquarters  
 Two General Construction Sections  
 Equipment Platoon Headquarters

**TASK:** Emplace a Hasty Protective Row Minefield (05-2-3008)  
 (FM 5-34) (DA FORM 1355-1-R) (FM 20-32)  
 (STANAG 2036)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The element is given an order to emplace a hasty protective row minefield to provide local security. The element is issued copies of Department of the Army (DA) Form 1355-1-R (Hasty Protective Row Minefield Record), M15 and M21 antitank (AT) mines, and M16A1 (Korea only) and M18A1 antipersonnel (AP) mines. Time is available to conduct a reconnaissance of the area. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** All mines are placed where they can be observed and covered by fire. The AT mines are placed to effect likely enemy-mounted avenues of approach (AAs). AP mines are intermixed with AT mines and affect dismounted approaches. Minefields are marked and guarded. DA Form 1355-1-R is completed and copies are submitted to the next higher headquarters (HQ). The unit sends reports according to regulatory guidance and the unit standing operating procedures (SOP). The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The element leader receives an operation order (OPORD) or fragmentary order (FRAGO) to lay a hasty protective row minefield.  <b>NOTE: The brigade combat team (BCT) commander has the initial authority to employ hasty protective row minefields. He may delegate emplacement authority to battalion- or company-level commanders on a mission basis. This information and authorization is found in the OPORD, which is passed to the emplacing unit. The digital units receive the OPORD or FRAGO through the Army Battle Command System (ABCS) according to the unit SOP.</b></p> <p>* 2. The element leader reports the intention to lay the minefield to higher HQ.  <b>NOTE: The intention to lay is the first of four reports. The other three are the initiation, status, and completion reports. All reports must be sent in a secure manner. In most situations, the element works together to emplace the minefield. For larger minefields, coordination for support from other combat arms must be made to supplement manpower.</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Determined the location of the minefield.</li> <li>b. Estimated the number and types of mines to be laid.</li> <li>c. Determined whether the mines would be buried.</li> <li>d. Determined the proposed start of the minefield and the completion date and time.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>e. Conducted precombat checks (PCCs) and precombat inspections (PCIs). f. Established security.</p> <p>* 3. The tank commanders (TCs) order the drivers to maneuver their vehicles using a covered and concealed route to the selected minefield location.</p> <p>* 4. The TCs instruct drivers to move their vehicles to an overwatch position. a. Used cover and concealment. b. Moved into a hull down position, if possible. c. Covered likely enemy positions and approaches.</p> <p>* 5. The element and subordinate leaders conduct a reconnaissance of the proposed minefield area to identify mine locations. a. Overwatched likely enemy AAs. b. Enhanced key weapon systems. c. Covered dead space and ensured that the minefield was covered by fire. d. Established an easily identifiable reference point (RP) between the minefield and the position of the unit.</p> <p>6. The element with subordinate leaders return to draw mines and needed equipment to emplace the minefield.</p> <p>* 7. The element leader divides personnel into four parties: siting and recording, marking, mine dump, and laying.</p> <p>* 8. The element leader reports the initiation of the minefield. a. Specified the emplacement start time. b. Specified the exact location. c. Specified the target number.</p> <p>* 9. The element leader directs the siting and recording party to lay out the minefield, RPs, landmarks, and row markers and then sends the initiation report to higher HQ.</p> <p><b>NOTE: Mines are not armed and do not have trip wires attached. Only metallic mines are used; no booby traps or antihandling devices (AHDs) are used. A general rule of thumb for spacing AT and AP (Korea only) mines is to place them no closer than 4 meters apart. There is no maximum distance; however, the distance should not pose any tactical impact to adjacent friendly units.</b></p> <p>a. Laid the minefield from right to left. b. Placed row markers at the beginning and end of each row, labeled them with the corresponding letter of each row, and used number 1 for the beginning of the row and number 2 for the end.</p> <p><b>NOTE: Markers should be easily identifiable objects, such as steel pickets, that can be found with an AN/PSS-12.</b></p> <p>c. Ensured that the rows were outside of hand grenade range, but within the range of small-caliber weapons. d. Placed individual mines far enough apart to prevent simultaneous detonation.</p> <p><b>NOTE: The mines should be no closer than 4 meters for surface-laid M15 mines and 7.6 meters for surface-laid M19 mines. The distance from the row marker to the first mine in that row is the spacing used throughout the row. The spacing between rows should be no closer than 8 meters or 15 meters if AP mines are used.</b></p> <p>e. Emplaced AT mines so they would affect likely enemy-mounted AAs. f. Intermixed AP mines with AT mines to deny enemy-dismounted AAs.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p><b>NOTE: M18A1 AP mines are command detonated when not used in Korea. M16A1 AP mines are used in Korea only.</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Buried M21 or M15 AT mines with only the tilt rod exposed.</li> <li>(2) Camouflaged the tilt rod with brush or tall grass, if time permitted.</li> <li>(3) Buried M16A1 AP mines (Korea only) up to the bottom of the release-pin ring, leaving only the pressure prongs aboveground to provide the stability required for proper employment.</li> </ul> <p>g. Submitted a strip record to the officer in charge (OIC) for recording on a DA Form 1355-1-R.</p> <p>*10. The element leader records the minefield on DA Form 1355-1-R.</p> <p><b>NOTE: All measurements are recorded in meters.</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Selected and recorded an easily identifiable and relatively permanent RP in front of the position.</li> </ul> <p><b>NOTE: A good RP should have some degree of survivability from an artillery barrage.</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>b. Determined the scale to be used in plotting the minefield on DA Form 1355-1-R.</li> </ul> <p><b>NOTE: The following formula is used to determine the scale:</b>  <math display="block">D+10 \text{ meters} / 4</math> <b>—where D = the distance from the RP to the farthest point in the minefield. Adding the 10 meters is a safety margin to ensure that the sum of the minefield sketch is entirely contained within the largest ring. Dividing by four is a constant and represents the concentric rings on DA Form 1355-1-R.</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>c. Plotted the RP in the center of the circles on DA Form 1355-1-R.</li> <li>d. Indicated the end of each row marker by labeling it with the letter of the row. Used number 1 for one end and number 2 for the other.</li> </ul> <p><b>NOTE: The row closest to the enemy is designated by using an A, while B, C, and so on are used for succeeding rows.</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>e. Recorded the azimuth and the distance to the last row.</li> </ul> <p><b>NOTE: Determine the magnetic azimuth in degrees from the RP to the first row marker, and record it as B1. Use B1 if there are two rows, C1 if there are three, and so forth. This marks the beginning of that row.</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>f. Recorded the azimuth and the distance to the next row, which would be A1 in this case.</li> <li>g. Measured and recorded the distance and the azimuth to each row marker.</li> </ul> <p><b>NOTE: Measure the distance and the azimuth from A1 to the first mine to be recorded, then measure the distance and the azimuth from the first mine to the second mine and so on until all mine locations are recorded. Continue this procedure for each row. As each mine is recorded, assign it a number to identify it in the tabular block on DA Form 1355-1-R.</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>h. Measured and recorded the distance and the azimuth from the RP to B2 and from B2 to A2.</li> <li>i. Tied in the RP with a permanent landmark.</li> </ul> <p><b>NOTE: This landmark may be used to help relocate the minefield if it is abandoned or handed over to another unit.</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>j. Completed the tabular information blocks. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Specified the unit.</li> <li>(2) Specified the precise description of the RP.</li> <li>(3) Recorded the type of markers used to identify the rows.</li> <li>(4) Recorded the map sheet number.</li> <li>(5) Specified the name and signature of the OIC or the noncommissioned officer in charge (NCOIC).</li> <li>(6) Recorded the date and time.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>(7) Specified the method used to measure the minefield; for example, the minefield was paced out and the paces were multiplied by 0.75.</p> <p>11. The element arms the mines.  <b>NOTE: The minimum safe distance is observed while arming, ensuring that 25 meters are maintained from other personnel and that rows are being armed simultaneously. The minefield must be fenced on all sides if M18A1 AP mines are employed and the minefield is to be in place for more than 72 hours.</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Worked from the enemy side or front of the minefield, to the friendly side, or rear of the minefield.</li> <li>b. Camouflaged the mines, if time permitted.</li> </ul> <p>*12. The element leader recovers the mine safeties and the shipping plugs.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Collected and stored safeties, shipping plugs, and any related items in a waterproof container.</li> <li>b. Placed pins, clips, and associated items 30 centimeters behind the row marker or the RP.</li> <li>c. Recorded the items and their location in the remarks block on DA Form 1355-1-R.</li> <li>d. Informed squad members of the location of the DA Form 1355-1-R, shipping plugs, safeties, and related items.</li> </ul> <p>*13. The element leader reports the completion of the minefield.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Reported to the authorizing commander using a secured means.</li> <li>b. Submitted the completed DA Form 1355-1-R to the authorizing commander.</li> </ul> <p><b>NOTE: The digital units place the location of the minefield on the digital overlay and populate the system to provide situational awareness (SA) to friendly units in the area of operations (AO).</b></p> <p>*14. The element leader ensures that the minefield is kept under observation at all times to prevent the enemy from breaching or booby-trapping the mines.</p> <p>*15. The element leader establishes a guard to protect friendly troops and to keep noncombatants from entering the mined area.  <b>NOTE: If AP mines (Korea only) are used in the minefield and are to remain in place for longer than 72 hours, the minefield must be fenced on all sides.</b></p> <p>*16. The element leader submits additional reports according to the unit SOP or as necessary.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Submitted oral progress reports during the emplacing process concerning the amount of work completed.</li> <li>b. Submitted a written report of transfer, if the responsibility for the minefield was altered.</li> </ul> <p><b>NOTE: The digital units can send and receive reports using frequency-modulated (FM) or digital means.</b></p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
052-192-1105	Install an M15 Antitank (AT) Mine Using the M624 Fuze
052-192-1107	Install an M15 Antitank (AT) Mine Using the M603 Fuze
052-192-1109	Install an M19 Antitank (AT) Mine
052-192-1154	Install an M5 Pressure-Release Firing Device on Antitank (AT) Mines
052-192-3210	Direct the Installation of a Hasty Protective Row Minefield

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
05-1-0081	Prepare an Operation Order (OPORD)
05-2-0018	Conduct Report Procedures

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**



- ELEMENTS:** Construction Platoon Headquarters  
 Two General Construction Sections  
 Survivability Section  
 Equipment Platoon Headquarters  
 Dump Truck Section  
 Six Engineer Squads  
 Equipment Section  
 Company Headquarters  
 Two Engineer Platoons  
 Support Platoon Headquarters  
 Assault and Barrier Platoon Headquarters  
 Mobility and Countermobility Section

**TASK:** Construct Bunkers and Shelters (05-3-3000)  
 (FM 5-34) (FM 5-103)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The element is directed to construct bunkers and shelters in the brigade support area. The element has organic hand tools, a bulldozer, a high-mobility engineer excavator (HMEE), a deployable universal combat earthmover (DEUCE), and a crane. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The element constructs bunkers and shelters, providing protection from direct-or-indirect fire and the weather, as outlined in Field Manual (FM) 5-103 and fulfilling their functional intent. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The element leader coordinates with the commander to determine the type and location of the bunkers and shelters.</p> <p><b>NOTE: Digital units can use the Army Battle Command System (ABCS) to conduct collaborative planning.</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Used natural shelters (such as caves, mines, and tunnels) when possible.</li> <li>b. Selected the shelter or bunker based on the mission, terrain, available labor, and time factors.</li> </ul> <p><b>NOTE: An underground bunker or shelter provides the highest level of protection and requires extensive labor and equipment. A cut-and-cover bunker or shelter requires partial excavation and backfill. An aboveground bunker or shelter can be constructed quickly and requires less labor. Aboveground shelters should only be used in forward areas when they are concealed in the woods, situated on a reverse slope, positioned among other buildings, or when the water table is excessively high.</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>c. Sited shelters on reverse slopes, in the woods, or in a natural defilade (ravines, valleys, wadis, and other hollows or depressions in the terrain) when possible.</li> <li>d. Prepared construction time estimates using the man-hours found in FM 5-103.</li> <li>e. Prepared a bill of materials (BOM) using the plans from FM 5-103.</li> <li>f. Constructed shelters out of the paths of natural drainage lines.</li> </ul> <p>2. The element constructs bunkers and shelters.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p><b>NOTE: The digital units report the completion of obstacles and the locations by populating the Force XXI Battle Command Brigade and Below (FBCB2) System and reporting to higher headquarters (HQ) according to the unit tactical standing operating procedure (TACSOP).</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Sloped or ditched the entrance sharply away from the shelter.</li> <li>b. Sloped the floor at least 1 percent toward a grenade sump at the entrance.</li> <li>c. Hung an entrance cover to block all of the light to the outside, if lights were used inside.</li> <li>d. Checked cracks and crevices to maintain light discipline.</li> <li>e. Circulated the air at a rate of 1 cubic foot per minute in the bunkers and shelters used by personnel remaining inside for long periods of time. Used stovepipes, tubes, or hollow logs to enhance the ventilation.</li> </ul> <p><b>NOTE: This condition was met when light drapes covering the vents were moved by incoming air.</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>f. Built two well-camouflaged entrances or exits on large shelters (15 or more personnel). Made the secondary exit more blast-resistant than the main exit by constructing it just large enough to crawl through.</li> <li>g. Made the overhead cover deep enough to provide the required level of protection.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) All the bunkers had 76 centimeters of overhead cover.</li> <li>(2) The container express (CONEX) shelters and the aboveground cavity wall shelters had 61 centimeters of overhead cover.</li> <li>(3) The steel-framed, fabric-covered shelters had 46 centimeters of overhead cover.</li> <li>(4) The hardened frame, fabric shelters, concrete-arch shelters, and metal-pipe arch shelters had 1.2 meters of overhead cover.</li> </ul> </li> <li>h. Camouflaged and concealed all shelters.</li> </ul> <p>3. The element improves the bunkers or shelters as time permits by adding an additional overhead cover and maintaining the camouflage.</p> <p>* 4. The element leader reports the construction status and mission completion to higher HQ according to the unit standing operating procedure (SOP).</p> <p><b>NOTE: The emplacing unit submits reports and locations using frequency-modulated or digital means. Digital units plot the locations of earth walls and berms on the FBCB2 to provide situational awareness to friendly units.</b></p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title
052-195-3060	Direct Construction of Combat Bunkers and Shelters
052-195-4055	Determine Logistical Requirements for Bunkers
052-236-1203	Construct a Wall System

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
052-243-1506	Classify a Soil Using the Unified Soil Classification System
052-243-1520	Determine the Flexural Strength of Concrete
052-253-1206	Backfill an Area Using a Small-Emplacement Excavator (SEE)
052-256-3042	Direct Drainage Operations
052-256-3043	Direct Crawler Tractor Operations
052-256-3046	Direct Compaction Operations
052-256-3047	Direct Scoop Loader Operations
052-256-3048	Direct Utility Tractor Operations

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
05-2-3000	Control Construction of Survivability Positions
05-2-3002	Camouflage Vehicles and Equipment
05-2-7008	Prepare an Operation Order (OPORD) (Company/Platoon)
05-5-3009	Prepare Crew-Served Weapons Fighting Positions

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** Two Engineer Platoons  
Six Engineer Squads  
Equipment Section

**TASK:** Construct Protective Earthen Walls and Berms (05-3-3002)  
(FM 5-103)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The element is directed to construct protective earthen walls and berms. Organic tools and equipment are available. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The element constructs earthen walls and berms, providing protection against direct-and-indirect fire without restricting the operational capability of the system. The dimensions of the earthen walls and berms are constructed according to Field Manual (FM) 5-103. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The element leader coordinates with the commander to determine the type and location of the walls and berms.</p> <p><b>NOTE: The digital units can use the Army Battle Command Systems (ABCS) to conduct collaborative planning.</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Advised the commander on the site selection and the walls and berms that would satisfy various weather, topographical, tactical, and other military requirements.</li> <li>b. Increased the effectiveness of the berms and walls by locating them in adequately defended areas.</li> <li>c. Integrated the walls and berms with other forms of protection (such as dispersion, concealment, and adjacent fighting positions).</li> <li>d. Constructed the inside area large enough to allow the unit members to perform operational duties.</li> <li>e. Constructed the wall and berm heights as close to the height of protected equipment as possible.</li> </ul> <p>2. The element constructs berms to withstand indirect-fire blasts and fragmentation from medium artillery impacting no closer than 1.5 meters.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Constructed berms entirely of compacted earth fill.               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Ensured that the sides had a ratio of 1:1 slope and were constantly maintained.</li> <li>(2) Used a waterproof covering or sandbags to stabilize the wall.</li> </ul> </li> <li>b. Ensured that the berms with revetments had a ratio of 1:1 slope, with the revetment located on the inside of the wall as close as possible to the protected equipment.</li> </ul> <p>3. The element constructs walls to withstand indirect-fire blasts and fragmentation from small artillery impacting no closer than 1.5 meters.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Constructed a freestanding soil cement wall with a slope ratio of 1:10.               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Used a mixture of 1 part portland cement (by weight) to 10 parts soil (by weight).</li> <li>(2) Used special equipment to construct the forms and prepare the soil cement mixture (cement mixers, wood tools, and hand tools).</li> </ul> </li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>b. Ensured that the construction of a soil bin wall was at least 30 centimeters thick and contained side revetments that were made from logs, dimensional timber, plywood, or corrugated metal.</p> <p>4. The element constructs a plywood portable wall to withstand mortar shell fragments impacting no closer than 1.5 meters.</p> <p>a. Braced both ends of each 2.8-meter wall section with guy cables that were 10 centimeters long to prevent it from being blown over by the blast wave.</p> <p>b. Filled the completed wall with a suitable soil material (sand, if possible) and waterproofed the top.</p> <p>5. The element constructs the walls and berms in the specified time. Constructed a 1.5 meters high and 3 meters long—</p> <p>a. Berm in 3 man-hours.</p> <p>b. Berm with a revetment in 20 man-hours.</p> <p>c. Soil cement wall in 25 man-hours.</p> <p>d. Soil bin wall with a revetment in 35 man-hours.</p> <p>e. Plywood portable wall in 5 man-hours.</p> <p>* 6. The element leader sends intermediate status and completion reports to higher headquarters (HQ).</p> <p><b>NOTES:</b></p> <p><b>1. The emplacing unit submits reports and locations using frequency modulated or digital means.</b></p> <p><b>2. The digital units plot the locations of the obstacles on the Force XXI Battle Command Brigade and Below (FBCB2) System to provide situational awareness (SA) to friendly units.</b></p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title
052-195-2000	Direct Construction of Fighting Positions in Field
052-195-4009	Determine Logistical Requirements for Nonexplosive Antivehicular Obstacles
052-195-4050	Prepare Engineer Estimates
052-225-3305	Estimate Requirements for Vehicle Fighting Positions
052-227-1005	Perform Operator Preventive-Maintenance Checks and Services (PMCS) on an Armored Combat Earthmover (ACE), M9
052-227-1103	Operate the Winch of an Armored Combat Earthmover (ACE), M9
052-227-1106	Operate a Fixed Fire Extinguisher on an Armored Combat Earthmover (ACE), M9
052-227-1110	Unfold the Blade of an Armored Combat Earthmover (ACE), M9
052-227-1111	Fold the Blade of an Armored Combat Earthmover (ACE), M9
052-227-1200	Perform Dozing Operations With an Armored Combat Earthmover (ACE), M9

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
052-227-1225	Drive an Armored Combat Earthmover (ACE), M9
052-227-1226	Construct Vehicle Fighting Positions With an Armored Combat Earthmover (ACE), M9
052-227-1233	Perform Forging Operations With an Armored Combat Earthmover (ACE), M9
052-227-1240	Perform Scraper Operations With an Armored Combat Earthmover (ACE), M9
052-227-1241	Handle Palletized Cargo With an Armored Combat Earthmover (ACE), M9
052-227-1250	Conduct Recovery Operations With an Armored Combat Earthmover (ACE), M9
052-227-3101	Direct Recovery Operations on an M9 Armored Combat Earthmover (ACE)
052-227-3110	Direct the Folding of the Blade of an M9 Armored Combat Earthmover (ACE)
052-227-3111	Direct Unfolding the Blade of an M9 Armored Combat Earthmover (ACE)
052-227-3120	Direct the Construction of a Vehicle Fighting Position
052-227-3302	Direct Armored Combat Earthmover (ACE) Dozer/Scraper Operations
052-253-1206	Backfill an Area Using a Small-Emplacement Excavator (SEE)
052-254-1037	Construct a Ditch With a Crawler Tractor
052-254-1038	Construct a Stockpile With a Crawler Tractor
052-254-1039	Excavate a Hull Defilade Position With a Crawler Tractor
052-254-1040	Spread a Stockpile With a Crawler Tractor
052-254-1041	Backfill Material Around a Below-Ground Structure Using a Crawler Tractor
052-254-1042	Level Fill Material in a Fill Area With the Angle Blade of the Crawler Tractor
052-254-1046	Remove Brush With a Crawler Tractor
052-254-1049	Rip Material With a Crawler Tractor
052-254-1057	Backfill With a Scoop Loader
052-254-1059	Excavate With a Scoop Loader
052-254-2041	Construct a Berm With a Crawler Tractor
052-254-2042	Make a Sidehill Excavation With a Crawler Tractor
052-254-2047	Construct a Berm With a Motorized Scraper
052-256-3033	Direct Construction of Protective Earth Walls and Berms
052-256-3041	Direct Soils Stabilization Operations
052-256-3042	Direct Drainage Operations
052-256-3043	Direct Crawler Tractor Operations
052-256-3044	Direct Motorized Scraper Operations
052-256-3045	Direct Motor Grader Operations
052-256-3046	Direct Compaction Operations
052-256-3047	Direct Scoop Loader Operations
052-256-3048	Direct Utility Tractor Operations

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
05-2-0018	Conduct Report Procedures
05-2-7008	Prepare an Operation Order (OPORD) (Company/Platoon)

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** Assault and Barrier Platoon Headquarters  
 Assault and Obstacle Platoon  
 Equipment Platoon Headquarters  
 Maintenance Platoon Headquarters  
 Support Platoon Headquarters  
 Construction Platoon Headquarters  
 Two Engineer Platoons  
 Six Engineer Squads  
 Equipment Section

**TASK:** Establish Jobsite Security (05-3-3006)  
 (FM 7-8) (FM 3-90.1) (FM 5-10)  
 (FM 5-34) (FM 7-7)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The element receives a fragmentary order (FRAGO) or an operation order (OPORD) to conduct a tactical mission at an 8-digit grid location. Security elements are coordinated. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The element establishes local security and tenable defensive positions that provide early warning and protection from an enemy attack. The presence of the enemy is not a surprise. The only time restraints are those specified in the FRAGO or the OPORD. They maintain situational awareness (SA) to conduct combat operations. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The element leader receives a FRAGO or an OPORD to conduct a tactical mission at an 8-digit grid location.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Conducted the following mission analysis:                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) If a maneuver force was providing security, the element followed procedures beginning with task step 4.</li> <li>(2) If the unit was working alone or in an isolated area, the element leader designated overwatch and reconnaissance or minesweeping teams and followed procedures beginning with task step 2.</li> </ul> </li> <li>b. Conducted a thorough map reconnaissance.</li> <li>c. Reviewed the unit tactical standing operating procedure (TACSOP) or standing operating procedure (SOP).</li> <li>d. Conducted troop-leading procedures.</li> <li>e. Conducted precombat checks (PCCs) and precombat inspections (PCIs).</li> </ul> <p>* 2. The element occupies a stationary overwatch position at the site. The element leader—</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Selected a covered and concealed position.</li> <li>b. Assigned a sector of observation and fire.</li> <li>c. Directed the overwatch team to use all available sights and other visual devices to scan the sector and identify enemy forces.</li> </ul> <p>3. The element reconnaissance or minesweeping team secures the site.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Checked for a possible enemy ambush at the site.</li> <li>b. Located, marked, and reported any mines or unexploded ordnance (UXO) on the site.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p><b>NOTE: The chain of command reported the hazard to explosive ordnance disposal (EOD) personnel for disposal.</b></p> <p>4. The element moves into and occupies the position after the site is clear.</p> <p>* 5. The element leader reconnoiters tentative fighting positions.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Identified avenues of approach.</li> <li>b. Identified observation posts (OP) or patrol routes to secure the perimeter.</li> <li>c. Identified crew-served weapons positions.</li> <li>d. Established withdrawal routes.</li> <li>e. Identified dismounted personnel positions.</li> <li>f. Positioned vehicles in covered and concealed positions.</li> <li>g. Established sectors of fire and general positions for crew-served weapons and vehicles.</li> <li>h. Designated which fighting positions (OPs or patrols) would be manned full time.</li> <li>i. Ensured that the patrol or OP team moved to an assigned position. The patrol or OP team—               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Provided early-warning and close-in security.</li> <li>(2) Offered cover and concealment for occupants.</li> <li>(3) Established a concealed route leading to and away from the OP.</li> <li>(4) Operated according to the unit TACSOP or SOP until relieved.</li> <li>(5) Maintained communications with the command post.</li> </ul> </li> <li>j. Supervised the positioning of the chemical alarm.               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Placed the alarm 150 meters upwind from the unit.</li> <li>(2) Ensured that the alarm was within visible site of the element position to prevent it from being tampered with by the enemy.</li> <li>(3) Did not place the alarm in a depression.</li> <li>(4) Moved the chemical alarm if the wind shifted.</li> </ul> </li> <li>k. Ensured that subordinate leaders designated individual positions.               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Designated primary fighting positions.</li> <li>(2) Designated alternate fighting positions.</li> <li>(3) Established sectors of fire for each individual and ensured that individual range cards and element sector sketches were complete according to the unit TACSOP or SOP.</li> </ul> </li> </ul> <p><b>NOTE: The unit TACSOP or SOP should have a set time standard for completing the range cards and sector sketches.</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>l. Maintained communications with the supported maneuver force and higher headquarters (HQ).</li> <li>m. Emplaced protective obstacles, if required, based on the five-step risk management process.</li> </ul> <p><b>NOTE: The unit should establish alert procedures and rehearse the procedures on site with a 100 percent occupation of the position.</b></p> <p>6. The element begins work.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Kept individual weapons within close reach.</li> <li>b. Maintained noise and light discipline.</li> <li>c. Maintained camouflage procedures.</li> <li>d. Maintained the directed MOPP level.</li> <li>e. Maintained communications with the supported maneuver force or higher HQ.</li> </ul>		



TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title
052-194-3500	Conduct a Patrol

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title
05-2-0018	Conduct Report Procedures
05-2-3002	Camouflage Vehicles and Equipment
05-2-3007	Conduct Quartering Party Operations
05-2-7008	Prepare an Operation Order (OPORD) (Company/Platoon)

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** Two Engineer Platoons  
 Six Engineer Squads  
 Company Headquarters  
 Equipment Section  
 Battalion Headquarters

**TASK:** Remove a Hasty Protective Row Minefield (05-3-3007)  
 (FM 20-32) (DA FORM 1355-1-R) (STANAG 2036)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The element is given an order from higher headquarters (HQ) to remove a hasty protective row minefield that the element emplaced within the assigned sector. The Department of the Army (DA) Form 1355-1-R (Hasty Protective Row Minefield Record) that shows the location of the minefield is available. Personnel and required equipment are available to assist in the removal of the minefield. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** All mines are rendered safe and removed or accounted for without damage to the mines or injury to personnel. All mines are repacked and stored according to the standing operating procedure (SOP). A report of change is filed and maintained until all mines are disarmed and removed. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The tank commander (TC) and the driver provide overwatch and security for personnel removing the minefield.  <b>NOTE: Squad members work together to accomplish this type of mission.</b></p> <p>* 2. The element leader directs the overwatch elements to a position that allows the best observation of the minefield and beyond.</p> <p>3. The security force secures and overwatches the area while it is cleared.                      a. Employed smoke on the farside to conceal mine removal, if necessary.                      b. Remained in position overwatching the removal team until the minefield was cleared.</p> <p>* 4. The element leader determines the best method for removing the mines.                      a. Directed the personnel who laid the mines to pick up the same mines, if the minefield was under constant observation from the time it was laid and was not tampered with. Used the DA Form 1355-1-R to direct the squad members on the location and types of mines to be removed.                      b. Used the DA Form 1355-1-R and mine detectors to direct squad members on the location and types of mines to be removed if the minefield was not under constant observation, may have been tampered with, the personnel who laid the mines were unavailable, or the personnel who laid the mines did not remember the location of the mines.</p> <p>* 5. The element leader retrieves safeties, shipping plugs, and other items that accompanied the emplaced mines.</p> <p>6. The removal team takes the safeties and removes the mines within the minefield.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p><b>NOTE: The team starts at the reference point (RP) and moves to B1 using the azimuth and the distance provided on the DA Form 1355-1-R. The team then moves from B1 to the mine and removes the mine. If B1 is destroyed, the team moves from the RP to B2 using that azimuth and distance. The team then shoots a back azimuth (subtract 180°) from the recorded azimuth at B2 to the first mine and removes the mine. This process is continued until all the mines are removed. The stakes at A1, B1, A2, and B2 are necessary because it is safer to find a stake than to find an armed mine.</b></p> <p>a. Observed basic safety precautions by maintaining a distance of 30 meters between removal personnel.</p> <p><b>NOTE: Ensure that the removal personnel do not run in the minefield and only move around in cleared areas.</b></p> <p>b. Started with the row closest to the defender and worked away from it. c. Checked the sides and bottoms of mines for antihandling devices (AHDs) and disarmed them as they were found.</p> <p><b>NOTE: AHDs are not used in hasty protective row minefields. However, as a safety precaution, all mines are considered to be equipped with AHDs until proven otherwise.</b></p> <p>d. Turned the arming dials to SAFE or UNARMED, if applicable. e. Removed the screw-type fuze cap, then removed the screw-type fuze. f. Removed the shipping plug or dust cover and the entire assembly. g. Replaced the shipping plug or dust cover (fuze assembly). h. Replaced all pins, clips, and other safety devices before the mine was removed from the ground. i. Lifted the mine from the hole after it had been placed on SAFE.     (1) Lifted the mine directly from the hole after rendering it safe, if it had been put in place and kept in sight by the individual who removed it.     (2) Attached a 60-meter-long rope or wire around the mine, took cover, and pulled the mine from the hole, if the mine had not been kept in sight. j. Placed a tick mark on the DA Form 1355-1-R beside each mine as it was removed.</p> <p>7. The removal team assembles all the mines in one location for accountability.</p> <p>* 8. The element leader confirms the safety of the mines and accounts for the number and types of mines as recorded on the DA Form 1355-1-R.</p> <p><b>NOTE: The element leader may find it necessary to confirm an exploded mine, if it is not witnessed, to account for all the mines. If a crater is found in the vicinity of a mine, ensure that it was caused by the land mine and not artillery. Depending on the size of the mine, a mine crater is shallow, circular, and shows traces of burnt soil. The impact and the soil dispersion of artillery is generally elongated.</b></p> <p>9. The removal team cleans and repacks the mines for future use.</p> <p><b>NOTE: This is done only after the element leader confirms that each mine is disarmed and safe.</b></p> <p>a. Repacked the mines in their original containers. b. Cased the mines to keep them functional and safe for future use. c. Stored the mines according to the unit SOP.</p> <p>10. The removal team removes and stores the row markers for future use.</p> <p>*11. The element leader submits a report of change to higher HQ stating that the minefield has been removed and the area is clear.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p><b>NOTE: The commander is responsible for the surveillance and maintenance of the minefield and makes a report of change as soon as any mines are removed.</b></p> <p>*12. The element leader destroys the DA Form 1355-1-R after the minefield has been removed and the report of change has been sent.</p> <p><b>NOTE: The digital units update the digital overlay to provide current situational awareness (SA).</b></p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title
052-192-1021	Locate Mines by Visual Means
052-192-1108	Remove an M15 Antitank (AT) Mine Using the M603 Fuze
052-192-1128	Locate Mines With the AN/PSS-12 Mine Detector
052-192-1266	Locate Mines By Probing
052-192-3050	Direct a Mine-Sweeping Party
052-192-3211	Direct the Removal of a Hasty Row Protective Minefield
052-192-4053	Supervise Minefield Breaching Operations

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title
05-2-0015	Report Obstacle Information
05-2-0018	Conduct Report Procedures
05-2-1005	Conduct Enemy or Unobserved Minefield Clearing Operations
05-2-7008	Prepare an Operation Order (OPORD) (Company/Platoon)

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** Six Engineer Squads  
 Equipment Section  
 Company Headquarters  
 Two Engineer Platoons  
 Support Platoon Headquarters  
 Mobility and Countermobility Section  
 Construction Platoon Headquarters  
 Two General Construction Sections  
 Survivability Section  
 Assault and Obstacle Platoon  
 Equipment Platoon Headquarters  
 Assault and Barrier Platoon Headquarters

**TASK:** Construct Vehicle Fighting Positions (05-3-3013)  
 (FM 5-103) (FM 5-34)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The element is supporting a maneuver unit during defensive operations. The supported unit occupied the position. The element has organic or augmented equipment. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The element constructs vehicle fighting positions, providing protection from direct and indirect fire without restricting the operational capability of the weapons system. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The element leader coordinates with the maneuver commander to determine the type and location of the positions.</p> <p>* 2. The element leader uses the unit planning factors to estimate the completion time based on the maneuver unit vehicles and the positions required.</p> <p>* 3. The element leader prioritizes construction based on directives from the maneuver commander.</p> <p>4. The element constructs positions according to the commander's priorities.</p> <p><b>NOTE: The commander's plans may have some positions constructed to turret defilade while others are hull defilade.</b></p> <p>a. Prepared hasty positions.</p> <p>(1) Formed parapets around the vehicles to improve protection from high-explosive antitank (HEAT) projectiles and provide limited concealment.</p> <p>(a) Excavated and built-up a frontal parapet as high as practical (without interfering with the vehicle weapons system).</p> <p>(b) Improved protection by excavating deeper and extending the parapet around the sides of the vehicles.</p> <p>(2) Improved hasty positions to deliberate positions as time permitted.</p> <p>b. Prepared deliberate positions to protect the vehicles from kinetic energy hypervelocity projectiles (such as the Sabot).</p> <p><b>NOTE: See Field Manual (FM) 5-103 for position dimensions of the fighting vehicles.</b></p> <p>(1) Constructed positions in the following four parts:</p> <p>(a) Hull defilade.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
( b ) Concealed access ramp or route. ( c ) Hiding location. ( d ) Turret defilade. (2) Adjusted position depths to those listed in FM 5-103 for the surrounding terrain (such as the position depth on a reverse slope not being as great as on level ground). c. Ensured that positions suited the vehicle requirements by driving the vehicles into position at various stages of construction. d. Flattened out or hauled away the spoil. * 5. The element leader submits status reports to the company and maneuver unit according to the unit standing operating procedure (SOP).		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title
052-195-2000	Direct Construction of Fighting Positions in Field
052-195-4009	Determine Logistical Requirements for Nonexplosive Antivehicular Obstacles
052-195-4050	Prepare Engineer Estimates
052-225-3305	Estimate Requirements for Vehicle Fighting Positions
052-227-1103	Operate the Winch of an Armored Combat Earthmover (ACE), M9
052-227-1106	Operate a Fixed Fire Extinguisher on an Armored Combat Earthmover (ACE), M9
052-227-1110	Unfold the Blade of an Armored Combat Earthmover (ACE), M9
052-227-1111	Fold the Blade of an Armored Combat Earthmover (ACE), M9
052-227-1200	Perform Dozing Operations With an Armored Combat Earthmover (ACE), M9
052-227-1225	Drive an Armored Combat Earthmover (ACE), M9
052-227-1226	Construct Vehicle Fighting Positions With an Armored Combat Earthmover (ACE), M9
052-227-1233	Perform Forging Operations With an Armored Combat Earthmover (ACE), M9
052-227-1240	Perform Scraper Operations With an Armored Combat Earthmover (ACE), M9
052-227-1241	Handle Palletized Cargo With an Armored Combat Earthmover (ACE), M9
052-227-1250	Conduct Recovery Operations With an Armored Combat Earthmover (ACE), M9
052-227-3101	Direct Recovery Operations on an M9 Armored Combat Earthmover (ACE)
052-227-3110	Direct the Folding of the Blade of an M9 Armored Combat Earthmover (ACE)
052-227-3111	Direct Unfolding the Blade of an M9 Armored Combat Earthmover (ACE)
052-227-3120	Direct the Construction of a Vehicle Fighting Position
052-254-1039	Excavate a Hull Defilade Position With a Crawler Tractor
052-254-1042	Level Fill Material in a Fill Area With the Angle Blade of the Crawler Tractor
052-254-1046	Remove Brush With a Crawler Tractor
052-254-1049	Rip Material With a Crawler Tractor

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
05-2-3001	Plan for Survivability Operations
05-2-7008	Prepare an Operation Order (OPORD) (Company/Platoon)
05-3-3002	Construct Protective Earthen Walls and Berms

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

- ELEMENTS:** Company Headquarters  
 Survivability Section  
 Mobility and Countermobility Section  
 Assault and Obstacle Platoon  
 Equipment Platoon Headquarters  
 Support Platoon Headquarters  
 Construction Platoon Headquarters  
 Two General Construction Sections  
 Two Engineer Platoons  
 Six Engineer Squads  
 Equipment Section

**TASK:** Construct Vehicle Protective Positions (05-3-3014)  
 (FM 5-103) (FM 20-3) (FM 5-34)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)  
**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The element is in support of a maneuver unit establishing a defensive position. The supported unit has occupied the position. The element has organic or augmented equipment. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The element constructs vehicle positions, providing protection from direct and indirect fire, without restricting the operational capability of the system. The dimensions of the positions and the time standards for construction are according to Field Manual (FM) 5-103. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The element leader coordinates with the maneuver commander to determine the type and location of positions. When possible, he sites the positions on reverse slopes, in heavy woods, or in natural defilades.</p> <p>* 2. The element leader estimates the completion time based on the type and number of maneuver unit vehicles requiring positions.  <b>NOTE: See FM 5-103 to compute estimates.</b></p> <p>* 3. The element leader prioritizes the construction based on the projected completion time.</p> <p>4. The element constructs vehicle protective positions.</p> <p>    a. Prepared parapet positions for field artillery or air defense artillery (ADA) weapons.</p> <p>        (1) Constructed the parapet with the material removed from the excavation and built it low enough to allow for direct howitzer fire and did not affect the fields of fire for ADA weapons.</p> <p>        (2) Stabilized the parapet walls with a waterproof cover or sandbags to prevent deterioration caused by the muzzle blast and the weather.</p> <p>        (3) Camouflaged the position with natural vegetation or netting.</p> <p>        (4) Ensured that positions were the correct length, width, depth, and parapet thickness.</p> <p><b>NOTE: See FM 5-103 for field artillery and ADA position dimensions.</b></p> <p>    b. Prepared deep-cut vehicle protective positions for the support vehicles.</p> <p>        (1) Positioned the vehicles so the tops were at least 30.5 centimeters below the top of the surrounding wall.</p>		



TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
(2) Prepared the positions (open on both ends) with an optional rear wall. (3) Placed camouflage netting across the top of the position. (4) Ensured that the positions were the correct length, width, and depth according to FM 5-103.		
* 5. The element leader reports intermediate status and mission completion to higher headquarters (HQ).		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

### SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
052-195-2000	Direct Construction of Fighting Positions in Field
052-195-4009	Determine Logistical Requirements for Nonexplosive Antivehicular Obstacles
052-195-4050	Prepare Engineer Estimates
052-225-3305	Estimate Requirements for Vehicle Fighting Positions
052-227-1005	Perform Operator Preventive-Maintenance Checks and Services (PMCS) on an Armored Combat Earthmover (ACE), M9
052-227-1103	Operate the Winch of an Armored Combat Earthmover (ACE), M9
052-227-1106	Operate a Fixed Fire Extinguisher on an Armored Combat Earthmover (ACE), M9
052-227-1110	Unfold the Blade of an Armored Combat Earthmover (ACE), M9
052-227-1111	Fold the Blade of an Armored Combat Earthmover (ACE), M9
052-227-1200	Perform Dozing Operations With an Armored Combat Earthmover (ACE), M9
052-227-1225	Drive an Armored Combat Earthmover (ACE), M9
052-227-1226	Construct Vehicle Fighting Positions With an Armored Combat Earthmover (ACE), M9
052-227-1233	Perform Forging Operations With an Armored Combat Earthmover (ACE), M9
052-227-1240	Perform Scraper Operations With an Armored Combat Earthmover (ACE), M9
052-227-1241	Handle Palletized Cargo With an Armored Combat Earthmover (ACE), M9
052-227-1250	Conduct Recovery Operations With an Armored Combat Earthmover (ACE), M9
052-227-3101	Direct Recovery Operations on an M9 Armored Combat Earthmover (ACE)
052-227-3110	Direct the Folding of the Blade of an M9 Armored Combat Earthmover (ACE)
052-227-3111	Direct Unfolding the Blade of an M9 Armored Combat Earthmover (ACE)
052-227-3120	Direct the Construction of a Vehicle Fighting Position
052-227-3302	Direct Armored Combat Earthmover (ACE) Dozer/Scraper Operations
052-254-1037	Construct a Ditch With a Crawler Tractor
052-254-1038	Construct a Stockpile With a Crawler Tractor
052-254-1039	Excavate a Hull Defilade Position With a Crawler Tractor
052-254-1040	Spread a Stockpile With a Crawler Tractor
052-254-1041	Backfill Material Around a Below-Ground Structure Using a Crawler Tractor
052-254-1042	Level Fill Material in a Fill Area With the Angle Blade of the Crawler Tractor
052-254-1046	Remove Brush With a Crawler Tractor

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
052-254-1049	Rip Material With a Crawler Tractor
052-254-1057	Backfill With a Scoop Loader
052-254-1059	Excavate With a Scoop Loader
052-254-1074	Excavate a Hull Defilade Position With a Deployable Universal Combat Earthmover (DEUCE)
052-254-2041	Construct a Berm With a Crawler Tractor
052-254-2047	Construct a Berm With a Motorized Scraper
052-256-3043	Direct Crawler Tractor Operations
052-256-3044	Direct Motorized Scraper Operations
052-256-3047	Direct Scoop Loader Operations
052-256-3048	Direct Utility Tractor Operations

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
05-2-0018	Conduct Report Procedures
05-2-3002	Camouflage Vehicles and Equipment
05-2-7008	Prepare an Operation Order (OPORD) (Company/Platoon)

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** Equipment Section  
Company Headquarters

**TASK:** Disable Critical Equipment and Material (05-3-7005)  
(FM 5-250) (TM 750-244-2) (TM 750-244-3)  
(TM 750-244-6) (TM 750-244-7)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** An enemy assault penetrates the element position. The element leader is ordered to evacuate the position and disable equipment that the platoon cannot haul or move. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The element evacuates the position and disables all critical items that cannot be hauled or moved. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* 1. The element leader prioritizes the equipment to be disabled.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Used information in the unit standing operating procedure (SOP).</li> <li>b. Identified critical equipment as communication assets (radios and keying material), transportation assets (tracked and wheeled vehicles and construction equipment), barrier material (mines, wire, and explosives), and weapons systems.</li> <li>c. Prioritized the disabling of equipment based on its value to the enemy.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 2. The element leader determines the method for disabling tracked and wheeled vehicles, including construction equipment, and directs the element as follows:                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Smashed vital elements (such as the gearbox, the starter, the battery, the engine block, the transmission, the instrument panel, and the communications equipment).</li> <li>b. Drained the hydraulic system and cut the hoses.</li> <li>c. Used explosives to disable transportation assets, such as tracked or wheeled vehicles and trailers.</li> <li>d. Used a bayonet or other cutting tool to slash all tires.</li> <li>e. Drained the oil and then ran the engine until it seized.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 3. The element leader determines the method for disabling communications equipment and directs the element to proceed as follows:                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Smashed vital elements using an ax, a pick, a sledgehammer, or any heavy implement. Smashed all dials, knobs, and gauges and demolished all antennas.</li> <li>b. Used explosives to disable communications equipment.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 4. The element leader determines the amount of barrier material (mines, wire, and explosives) to use, and destroys the remaining items with explosives.</li> <li>* 5. The element leader determines the method for disabling an organic bridge with demolitions.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Considered whether to use partial or complete destruction.</li> <li>b. Considered the quantity and type of explosive.</li> <li>c. Considered whether to use an electric or nonelectric firing system.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
d. Considered what the appropriate time would be to disable or demolish the bridge. e. Considered the method of coordination to use with adjacent forces. 6. The element disables critical equipment during the evacuation according to the plan of the element leader. * 7. The element leader submits status reports to the company according to the unit SOP.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title
052-193-1310	Construct Demolition Firing Systems
052-193-1311	Prime Military Explosives
052-193-1312	Construct Demolition Initiating System
052-193-1313	Identify Characteristics of Military Demolitions and Explosives
052-193-2014	Determine the Safe Distance When Firing Explosives
052-193-2016	Place Steel-Cutting Charges
052-193-2030	Clear Misfires
052-193-3023	Calculate Steel-Cutting Charges
052-193-3054	Prepare a Demolition Reconnaissance Report
052-193-4040	Manage Engineer Demolition Missions

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title
05-2-0018	Conduct Report Procedures

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

- ELEMENTS:** S1 Section  
 S2 Section  
 S3 Section  
 S4 Section  
 Communications Section  
 Battalion Maintenance Section  
 Assault and Barrier Platoon Headquarters  
 Survivability Section  
 Mobility and Countermobility Section  
 Three Brigade Engineer Sections  
 Maintenance Section  
 Assault and Obstacle Platoon  
 Equipment Platoon Headquarters  
 S2 and S3 Section  
 Maintenance Platoon Headquarters  
 Three Company Maintenance Teams  
 Recovery Section  
 Support Platoon Headquarters  
 Transportation Section  
 Unit Maintenance Section  
 Construction Platoon Headquarters  
 Two General Construction Sections  
 Dump Truck Section  
 Company Headquarters  
 Two Engineer Platoons  
 Six Engineer Squads  
 Equipment Section

**TASK:** Prepare Crew-Served Weapons Fighting Positions (05-5-3009)  
 (FM 5-34) (DA FORM 5517-R) (FM 5-103)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The element must construct its own crew-served weapons fighting position using organic equipment. The element leader selects and approves the location. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The element constructs crew-served weapons fighting positions (providing coverage for the sector of fire and final protective line [FPL] and protection from direct and indirect fire). The position does not restrict the operational capability of the weapon system. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
1. The element constructs a machine gun position that has a primary and secondary sector of fire and reports intermediate status and completion to the element leader. <b>NOTE: The digital units populate the Force XXI Battle Command Brigade and Below (FBCB2) System with the location of the unit to provide current situational awareness (SA).</b> a. Constructed the position so the gun fired to the front or oblique (firing across the front of the unit), with the oblique being the primary sector of fire.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>b. Constructed the position in an inverted T shape, with a firing platform in each corner.</p> <p>c. Used the tripod on the side with the primary sector of fire and the bipod with the secondary sector of fire.</p> <p>d. Used the earth removed during the construction of the position to provide frontal and flank protection, ensuring that it did not interfere with the sectors of fire.</p> <p>e. Ensured that the position was high enough to cover both soldiers when they were operating the weapon.</p> <p>f. Shaped the hole so the gunner and the assistant gunner could get to the weapon.</p> <p>g. Reduced the height of the weapon by digging the tripod platform down, as much as possible, but kept the weapon traversable across the entire sector of fire.</p> <p>h. Constructed a one-soldier supplemental fighting position to the flank for the ammunition bearer when there was a three-soldier crew for a machine gun.</p> <p><b>NOTE: The crew connected this position to the gun position by digging a crawl trench.</b></p> <p>i. Constructed the position to armpit depth.</p> <p>j. Sloped the floor outward toward each end of the hole.</p> <p>k. Constructed grenade sumps the width of the spade and the depth of one entrenching tool length at both ends of the hole.</p> <p>l. Built the overhead cover 46 centimeters thick over the middle of the position, when possible.</p> <p>m. Improved the position, if time permitted, by adding cover, digging trenches to adjacent positions, and maintaining camouflage.</p> <p>n. Completed the position in 7 man-hours without overhead cover or 12 man-hours with overhead cover.</p> <p>2. The element constructs a machine gun position without a secondary sector of fire and reports intermediate status and completion to the squad leader.</p> <p>a. Constructed the position in a V shape, with the firing position in the apex of the V.</p> <p>b. Constructed the position following the procedures in subtasks 1d to 1l.</p> <p>c. Completed it in 6 man-hours without overhead cover or 11 man-hours with overhead cover.</p> <p>3. The element constructs a Javelin position and reports intermediate status and completion to the element leader.</p> <p>a. Used earth removed during the construction of the position for frontal and flank protection. However, left both the muzzle blast and backblast areas clear of obstacles to prevent round deflection, fires, and pressure buildup. Cleared the backblast area of highly combustible material to a distance of 5 meters. The backblast area was either level or sloping down and away from the position.</p> <p><b>DANGER: CAUTION SHOULD BE USED IN THE PLACEMENT OF THE JAVELIN. THE FOUR CAUTION AREAS FOR THE BACKBLAST AND POSSIBILITIES FOR OVERPRESSURE IN THE POSITION ARE CONCERNS. THE PRIMARY DANGER ZONE EXTENDS 25 METERS TO THE REAR AT A 60° ANGLE FROM THE REAR OF THE WEAPON. NOT PAYING ATTENTION TO THESE CAUTIONS COULD CAUSE DEATH OR SERIOUS INJURY TO PERSONNEL IN DANGER AREAS.</b></p> <p>b. Ensured that it was high enough to cover both soldiers, if the element built cover on the flanks.</p> <p>c. Constructed the fighting position to armpit depth.</p> <p>d. Sloped the floor down toward each end of the hole.</p>		

<b>TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES</b>	<b>GO</b>	<b>NO-GO</b>
e. Constructed grenade sumps the width of the spade and the depth of one entrenching tool length at both ends of the hole. f. Ensured that the position width was narrow enough so the rear of the weapon extended over the rear of the hole when the soldier firing the Javelin stood at the front of the position. g. Improved the position, if time permitted, by digging trenches to adjacent positions and maintaining camouflage. <b>NOTE: Overhead cover is desired only if it protects the crew when they are not firing the weapon (due to the large backblast).</b> h. Completed the position in 6 man-hours.  4. The crew prepares and submits a DA Form 5517-R (Standard Range Card) to the element leader.		

<b>TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK</b>							
<b>ITERATION</b>	<b>1</b>	<b>2</b>	<b>3</b>	<b>4</b>	<b>5</b>	<b>M</b>	<b>TOTAL</b>
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

#### **SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
052-195-2000	Direct Construction of Fighting Positions in Field
052-195-3065	Direct Construction of Field Fortifications
052-253-1257	Excavate Fighting Positions Using a Small-Emplacement Excavator (SEE)

#### **SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
05-2-7008	Prepare an Operation Order (OPORD) (Company/Platoon)
05-4-1371	Provide Terrain Analysis Information

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** Battalion Headquarters  
Company Headquarters  
S1 Section  
S2 Section  
S3 Section  
S4 Section  
Division Engineer Section  
Communications Section  
Battalion Maintenance Section  
Assault and Barrier Platoon Headquarters  
Survivability Section  
Mobility and Countermobility Section  
Combat Medical Section  
Three Brigade Engineer Sections  
Unit Ministry Section  
Food Services Section  
Command Section  
Maintenance Section  
Assault and Obstacle Platoon  
Food Service Section  
Unit Ministry Team  
Equipment Platoon Headquarters  
Combat Medic Section  
S2 and S3 Section  
Maintenance Platoon Headquarters  
Headquarters and Headquarters Company Maintenance Section  
The Army Maintenance Management System and Prescribed Load List Section  
Three Company Maintenance Teams  
Recovery Section  
Support Platoon Headquarters  
Transportation Section  
Unit Maintenance Section  
Direct-Support Maintenance Section  
Direct-Support Maintenance Supply Section  
Construction Platoon Headquarters  
Two General Construction Sections  
Dump Truck Section  
Treatment Team  
Ambulance Team  
Combat Medic Team  
Direct Support Maintenance Supply Section  
Two Engineer Platoons  
Six Engineer Squads  
Equipment Section

**TASK:** React to an Ambush (07-3-1112.05-T01A)  
(FM 7-8) (FM 3-20.98) (FM 34-2-1)  
(FM 7-92)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The element is in a prepared kill zone. The enemy initiates the ambush with a casualty-producing device and a high volume of fire. The unit has guidance provided by the rules of engagement (ROE) and from mission instructions, such as the peace mandate terms of reference, the Status of Forces



Agreement (SOFA), and the rules of interaction (ROI). Civilians, government organizations, nongovernment organizations, private voluntary organizations, and the international press may be present on the battlefield. The presence of civilians can restrict the use of fires and reduce the combat power available to the commander. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The element reacts immediately to the ambush based on the type (near or far). The platoon disengages the element in the kill zone or forces the enemy to withdraw. The platoon continues follow-on operations. The unit complies with the ROE, mission instruction, and higher headquarters (HQ) and other special orders. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Leaders ensure that the ROE and the ROI are disseminated to subordinate personnel.</li> <li>2. Personnel in the kill zone react to a near ambush (within hand grenade range).               <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Returned fire immediately; assumed covered positions; and threw fragmentation, concussion, and smoke grenades.</li> <li>b. Assaulted individually through the ambush using individual fire and movement immediately after the grenades detonated.</li> </ol> </li> <li>3. Personnel not in the kill zone react to a near ambush.               <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Identified enemy positions.</li> <li>b. Initiated immediate suppressive fires against the enemy.</li> <li>c. Took up covered positions.</li> <li>d. Shifted fires as personnel in the kill zone assaulted through the ambush.</li> </ol> </li> <li>4. Personnel receiving fire in a far ambush (beyond hand grenade range) immediately return fire and take up covered positions.               <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Suppressed or destroyed enemy crew-served weapons first.</li> <li>b. Obscured the enemy position with smoke.</li> <li>c. Sustained suppressive fires and shifted them as the assaulting squads fought through the enemy position.</li> </ol> </li> <li>5. Personnel not receiving fire react to a far ambush.               <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Moved by a covered and concealed route to a vulnerable flank of the enemy position.</li> <li>b. Assaulted using fire and movement techniques.</li> </ol> </li> <li>6. The element forward observer (FO) calls for and adjusts indirect fires as directed by the element leader.               <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Used indirect fires to isolate the enemy position.</li> <li>b. Adjusted fires on any retreating enemy.</li> </ol> </li> <li>* 7. The platoon leader accounts for all personnel and equipment after the enemy has withdrawn.               <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Reported the situation to higher HQ.</li> <li>b. Consolidated and reorganized, as necessary.</li> <li>c. Continued the mission.</li> </ol> </li> </ol>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
05-2-0100	Coordinate the Synchronization and Integration of Fire Support (FS)
08-2-0314.05-T01A	Treat Unit Casualties (for Units With Medical Treatment Personnel)
12-1-0403.05-T01A	Report Casualties

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

- ELEMENTS:** Battalion Headquarters  
 Company Headquarters  
 S1 Section  
 S2 Section  
 S3 Section  
 S4 Section  
 Division Engineer Section  
 Communications Section  
 Battalion Maintenance Section  
 Assault and Barrier Platoon Headquarters  
 Survivability Section  
 Mobility and Countermobility Section  
 Combat Medical Section  
 Three Brigade Engineer Sections  
 Unit Ministry Section  
 Food Services Section  
 Command Section  
 Maintenance Section  
 Assault and Obstacle Platoon  
 Food Service Section  
 Unit Ministry Team  
 Equipment Platoon Headquarters  
 Combat Medic Section  
 S2 and S3 Section  
 Maintenance Platoon Headquarters  
 Headquarters and Headquarters Company Maintenance Section  
 The Army Maintenance Management System and Prescribed Load List Section  
 Three Company Maintenance Teams  
 Recovery Section  
 Support Platoon Headquarters  
 Transportation Section  
 Unit Maintenance Section  
 Direct-Support Maintenance Section  
 Direct-Support Maintenance Supply Section  
 Construction Platoon Headquarters  
 Two General Construction Sections  
 Dump Truck Section  
 Treatment Team  
 Ambulance Team  
 Combat Medic Team  
 Direct Support Maintenance Supply Section  
 Two Engineer Platoons  
 Six Engineer Squads  
 Equipment Section

**TASK:** React to Unexploded Ordnance (UXO) (09-2-0337.05-T01A)  
 (FM 21-16)

<b>ITERATION:</b>	1	2	3	4	5	M	(Circle)
<b>COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:</b>			T	P	U		(Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** During combat operations, the unit encounters a UXO hazard. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The element reacts to the UXO hazard while continuing the mission without loss of personnel or equipment. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The element recognizes the UXO hazard.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Identified the UXO by type.</li> <li>b. Identified the UXO by subgroup.</li> <li>c. Observed all safety precautions.</li> </ol> </li> <li>* 2. The element leader takes immediate action for the UXO hazard.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Evacuated the area, as appropriate.</li> <li>b. Determined the appropriate action to take.                                     <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Avoided the UXO hazard.</li> <li>(2) Instituted protective measures.</li> </ol> </li> </ol> </li> <li>* 3. The element leader designates the element to mark the area.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Chose leaders to mark the area.</li> <li>b. Briefed leaders on the area to be marked.</li> </ol> </li> <li>* 4. The element marks the UXO hazard.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Marked all the logical approach routes.</li> <li>b. Ensured that the UXO was visible from all markers.</li> </ol> </li> <li>* 5. The element reports the UXO hazard.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Initiated the UXO spot report.</li> <li>b. Determined the priority based on the current situation.</li> <li>c. Forwarded the report to the next higher headquarters (HQ) by the fastest means available.</li> </ol> </li> </ol>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
05-2-0018	Conduct Report Procedures

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

- ELEMENTS:** Battalion Headquarters  
 Company Headquarters  
 S1 Section  
 S2 Section  
 S3 Section  
 S4 Section  
 Division Engineer Section  
 Communications Section  
 Battalion Maintenance Section  
 Assault and Barrier Platoon Headquarters  
 Survivability Section  
 Mobility and Countermobility Section  
 Combat Medical Section  
 Three Brigade Engineer Sections  
 Unit Ministry Section  
 Food Services Section  
 Command Section  
 Maintenance Section  
 Assault and Obstacle Platoon  
 Food Service Section  
 Unit Ministry Team  
 Equipment Platoon Headquarters  
 Combat Medic Section  
 S2 and S3 Section  
 Maintenance Platoon Headquarters  
 Headquarters and Headquarters Company Maintenance Section  
 The Army Maintenance Management System and Prescribed Load List Section  
 Three Company Maintenance Teams  
 Recovery Section  
 Support Platoon Headquarters  
 Transportation Section  
 Unit Maintenance Section  
 Direct-Support Maintenance Section  
 Direct-Support Maintenance Supply Section  
 Construction Platoon Headquarters  
 Two General Construction Sections  
 Dump Truck Section  
 Treatment Team  
 Ambulance Team  
 Combat Medic Team  
 Direct Support Maintenance Supply Section  
 Two Engineer Platoons  
 Six Engineer Squads  
 Equipment Section

**TASK:** Use Passive Air Defense Measures (44-1-C220.05-T01A)  
 (FM 44-100) (FM 44-64) (FM 44-8)  
 (FM 44-80)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The element is in a tactical position. Hostile aerial platforms (rotary-wing, fixed-wing, or unmanned aerial vehicles [UAVs]) have been operating in the general area. The element weapon control status (WCS) is weapons hold. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) element aerial platforms (rotary-wing, fixed-wing, and UAVs) do not detect the unit. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* 1. The element leader uses passive air defense measures in a tactical position.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Used all available resources (camouflage, cover, concealment, and dispersion) to hide personnel and equipment to limit vulnerability.</li> <li>b. Covered or shaded any shiny items, particularly windshields and optics.</li> <li>c. Established and rehearsed the air attack alarms.</li> <li>d. Dispersed vehicles, tents, and supplies to reduce vulnerability to an air attack.</li> <li>e. Constructed field fortifications with organic equipment (as necessary) to protect personnel and vulnerable mission-essential equipment.</li> <li>f. Manned observation posts (OPs) during the day and night to provide warning of approaching aerial platforms.</li> <li>g. Established a listening watch on the air defense early warning net, if the equipment was available and operational.</li> </ul> </li>   <li>* 2. The element leader achieves air situational awareness (SA) by monitoring with simplified handheld terminal units (SHTUs).</li>   <li>* 3. The element leader uses passive air defense measures in a convoy.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensured that all personnel received the convoy commander's briefing.</li> <li>b. Camouflaged vehicles and equipment before moving out.</li> <li>c. Selected a column interval based on instructions, the mission, and the terrain.</li> <li>d. Placed crew-served weapons throughout the convoy to cover the avenues of approach (front, rear, and flank).</li> <li>e. Assigned soldiers to air guard duties with specific search sectors covering 360°.</li> <li>f. Identified threat aerial platforms visually.</li> <li>g. Reported all aircraft actions to higher headquarters (HQ).</li> <li>h. Established and rehearsed the air attack alarms.</li> </ul> </li>   <li>4. Element personnel use passive air defense measures when occupying or displacing a position.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Maintained the vehicle interval specified in the movement order.</li> <li>b. Staggered vehicles to avoid linear patterns.</li> <li>c. Assigned air guards to the sectors of search that covered 360°, and maintained the coverage until the convoy completed the movement.</li> <li>d. Identified threat aerial platforms visually.</li> <li>e. Reported all aircraft actions to higher HQ.</li> <li>f. Established the vehicle order of precedence.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title
05-2-0018	Conduct Report Procedures
05-2-3002	Camouflage Vehicles and Equipment

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

- ELEMENTS:** Battalion  
Battalion Headquarters  
Company Headquarters  
S1 Section  
S2 Section  
S3 Section  
S4 Section  
Division Engineer Section  
Communications Section  
Battalion Maintenance Section  
Assault and Barrier Platoon Headquarters  
Survivability Section  
Mobility and Countermobility Section  
Combat Medical Section  
Three Brigade Engineer Sections  
Unit Ministry Section  
Food Services Section  
Section  
Command Section  
Maintenance Section  
Assault and Obstacle Platoon  
Food Service Section  
Unit Ministry Team  
Equipment Platoon Headquarters  
Combat Medic Section  
S2 and S3 Section  
Maintenance Platoon Headquarters  
Headquarters and Headquarters Company Maintenance Section  
The Army Maintenance Management System and Prescribed Load List Section  
Three Company Maintenance Teams  
Recovery Section  
Support Platoon Headquarters  
Transportation Section  
Unit Maintenance Section  
Direct-Support Maintenance Section  
Direct-Support Maintenance Supply Section  
Construction Platoon Headquarters  
Two General Construction Sections  
Dump Truck Section  
Treatment Team  
Ambulance Team  
Combat Medic Team  
Direct Support Maintenance Supply Section  
Two Engineer Platoons  
Six Engineer Squads  
Equipment Section

**TASK:** Take Active Combined Arms Air Defense Measures Against Hostile Aerial Platforms (44-1-C221.05-T01A)

(FM 44-100)  
(FM 44-80)

(FM 44-64)

(FM 44-8)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)



**CONDITIONS:** The element receives an early warning of aerial platforms (rotary-wing, fixed-wing, or unmanned aerial vehicles [UAVs]) in the area. Unit personnel detect unknown or hostile aerial platforms. The element is in a tactical position. The weapon control status (WCS) is weapons tight. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The element destroys or forces attacking aerial platforms away from friendly positions. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO																					
<p>* 1. Leaders direct combined arms air defense measures against the hostile aerial platforms not attacking a stationary unit.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Gave the air attack alarm.</li> <li>b. Organized the element to defensive positions.</li> <li>c. Ordered a search of the assigned sectors for aerial platforms.</li> <li>d. Identified and reported the presence of aerial platforms in the area and sent priority intelligence requirements (PIR) to higher headquarters (HQ).</li> <li>e. Made the engagement decision.</li> <li>f. Engaged the element in attacking the aerial platforms with all available small arms, such as rifles and machine guns.</li> </ul> <p><b>NOTE: Expect the firing signature from small arms to disclose the element position.</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>g. Performed all precautionary measures to ensure that no fratricide occurred during the engagement.</li> <li>h. Directed soldiers to reload weapons following the engagement.</li> <li>i. Sent the PIR to higher HQ.</li> </ul> <p><b>NOTES:</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Aim points for propeller-driven aircraft are the same as for helicopters.</li> <li>2. Select the aim points in football field lengths: one football field equals about 91 meters.</li> <li>3. Once the lead distance is estimated, the riflemen and machine gunners aim and fire their weapons at the aim point until the aircraft has flown past that point. Maintain the aim point, not the lead distance. The weapon should not move once the firing cycle starts.</li> <li>4. Establish preselected aim points when the unit is in a static position.</li> <li>5. Accuracy in relation to target hits is not necessary. Accuracy in relation to the aim point is necessary. Volume fire (a coordinated, high volume of fire that the aircraft has to fly through) will achieve the desired results.</li> </ol> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>TYPE OF AERIAL PLATFORMS</th> <th>COURSE</th> <th>AIM POINT</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Jet/cruise missile</td> <td>Crossing</td> <td>Two football fields in front of the aerial platform nose</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Jet/cruise missile</td> <td>Overhead</td> <td>Two football fields in front of the aerial platform nose</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Jet/cruise missile</td> <td>Directly at you</td> <td>Slightly above the aerial platform nose</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Helicopter/UAV</td> <td>Crossing</td> <td>One-half football field in front of the aerial platform nose</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Helicopter/UAV</td> <td>Directly at you</td> <td>Slightly above the helicopter/UAV body</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Helicopter/UAV</td> <td>Hovering</td> <td>Slightly above the helicopter/UAV body</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	TYPE OF AERIAL PLATFORMS	COURSE	AIM POINT	Jet/cruise missile	Crossing	Two football fields in front of the aerial platform nose	Jet/cruise missile	Overhead	Two football fields in front of the aerial platform nose	Jet/cruise missile	Directly at you	Slightly above the aerial platform nose	Helicopter/UAV	Crossing	One-half football field in front of the aerial platform nose	Helicopter/UAV	Directly at you	Slightly above the helicopter/UAV body	Helicopter/UAV	Hovering	Slightly above the helicopter/UAV body		
TYPE OF AERIAL PLATFORMS	COURSE	AIM POINT																					
Jet/cruise missile	Crossing	Two football fields in front of the aerial platform nose																					
Jet/cruise missile	Overhead	Two football fields in front of the aerial platform nose																					
Jet/cruise missile	Directly at you	Slightly above the aerial platform nose																					
Helicopter/UAV	Crossing	One-half football field in front of the aerial platform nose																					
Helicopter/UAV	Directly at you	Slightly above the helicopter/UAV body																					
Helicopter/UAV	Hovering	Slightly above the helicopter/UAV body																					

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>j. Evaluated the situation and moved the unit position as directed by the unit commander.</p> <p>* 2. Leaders direct small arms air defense measures against hostile aerial platforms not attacking a moving target.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Gave the air attack alarm.</li> <li>b. Dispersed vehicles laterally and in-depth or had the vehicle operators continue to move the unit.</li> <li>c. Moved vehicles to covered and concealed positions. All personnel not assigned crew-served weapons dismounted and prepared to engage the aircraft or increased dispersion.</li> <li>d. Engaged nonattacking aircraft only as directed.</li> <li>e. Identified threat aerial platforms visually.</li> <li>f. Reported all aerial platform actions to higher HQ.</li> <li>g. Prepared the element to engage on orders of the senior leader.</li> <li>h. Engaged the element (when ordered to do so by the senior leader) in attacking the aerial platforms with all available small arms.</li> <li>i. Directed soldiers to reload weapons following the engagement.</li> </ul> <p>* 3. Leaders direct combined arms air defense measures against aerial platforms attacking a stationary unit.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Gave the air attack alarm.</li> <li>b. Engaged all available personnel immediately in attacking the aerial platforms per the tactical standing operating procedure (TACSOP).</li> <li>c. Directed soldiers to reload weapons following the engagement.</li> <li>d. Ensured that soldiers assigned to observation posts (OPs) continued to scan their assigned sectors.</li> <li>e. Reported any aircraft action to higher HQ.</li> <li>f. Reported any casualties to higher HQ.</li> <li>g. Evaluated the situation and moved the element position as directed by the tactical situation or the TACSOP.</li> </ul> <p>* 4. The element leader or noncommissioned officers (NCOs) direct small arms air defense measures during the convoy movement.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Alerted vehicle commanders of an impending attack.</li> <li>b. Dispersed vehicles, alternately, to the shoulders of the road or off the road if possible. Turned to covered and concealed positions, if the terrain permitted.</li> <li>c. Maintained vehicle intervals or increased the interval or dispersion by using evasive driving techniques.</li> <li>d. Ordered the element to dismount and take up firing positions.</li> <li>e. Prepared personnel to fire on the orders of the senior individual present or automatically returned fire (per engagement procedures) if an aircraft was attacking.</li> <li>f. Identified aerial platforms.</li> <li>g. Engaged the element in attacking aerial platforms with all available small arms, such as rifles and machine guns.</li> <li>h. Directed soldiers to reload weapons following the engagement.</li> <li>i. Reported the attack and submitted the PIR to higher HQ.</li> <li>j. Reported any casualties to higher HQ.</li> </ul>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title
05-2-0018	Conduct Report Procedures
05-2-3000	Control Construction of Survivability Positions
07-2-1301.05-T01A	Conduct a Convoy

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

- ELEMENTS:** Battalion  
Battalion Headquarters  
Company Headquarters  
S1 Section  
S2 Section  
S3 Section  
S4 Section  
Division Engineer Section  
Communications Section  
Battalion Maintenance Section  
Assault and Barrier Platoon Headquarters  
Survivability Section  
Mobility and Countermobility Section  
Combat Medical Section  
Three Brigade Engineer Sections  
Unit Ministry Section  
Food Services Section  
Command Section  
Maintenance Section  
Assault and Obstacle Platoon  
Food Service Section  
Unit Ministry Team  
Equipment Platoon Headquarters  
Combat Medic Section  
S2 and S3 Section  
Maintenance Platoon Headquarters  
Headquarters and Headquarters Company Maintenance Section  
The Army Maintenance Management System and Prescribed Load List Section  
Three Company Maintenance Teams  
Recovery Section  
Support Platoon Headquarters  
Transportation Section  
Unit Maintenance Section  
Direct-Support Maintenance Section  
Direct-Support Maintenance Supply Section  
Construction Platoon Headquarters  
Two General Construction Sections  
Dump Truck Section  
Treatment Team  
Ambulance Team  
Combat Medic Team  
Direct Support Maintenance Supply Section  
Two Engineer Platoons  
Six Engineer Squads  
Equipment Section

**TASK:** Perform Risk Management Procedures (71-2-0326.05-T01A)  
(AR 385-10) (FM 3-0) (FM 7-0)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The element is deployed, performing its combat mission. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** Leaders and soldiers are aware of potential safety problems when conducting the task. The element trains to standard and does not take shortcuts that endanger element members. All risks taken are necessary to accomplish the training objectives. Appropriate measures are taken to minimize risks. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* 1. The commander identifies the risk or safety hazards.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Analyzed the operation plan (OPLAN), the fragmentary order (FRAGO), and the operation order (OPORD) for specified and implied missions (tasks).</li> <li>b. Integrated safety into every phase of the planning process.</li> <li>c. Assessed the risks before issuing a FRAGO when the mission or conditions changed.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 2. Leaders evaluate the risk or safety hazards identified in the operation.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Compared the risk to the acceptable level of risk in the commander's intent, based on the stated training objective.</li> <li>b. Determined the likelihood of equipment and personnel losses from accidents.</li> <li>c. Described the operation in terms of high, medium, or low risk.</li> <li>d. Prepared courses of action (COAs) that minimized accidental losses.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 3. The commander (or leaders) eliminates or reduces the risk or safety hazards.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Chose a COA that maximized the operation and minimized the risk.</li> <li>b. Developed procedures that reduced the risk or safety hazards.</li> <li>c. Prescribed the safety or protective equipment.</li> <li>d. Briefed the elements before all operations.</li> </ul> </li> <li>4. The element carries out safety procedures.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Received safety briefings before all operations.</li> <li>b. Practiced the safety procedures during all mission rehearsals.</li> <li>c. Made on-the-spot safety corrections.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

ARTEP 5-026-11-MTP

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

- ELEMENTS:** Battalion Headquarters  
 Company Headquarters  
 S1 Section  
 S2 Section  
 S3 Section  
 S4 Section  
 Communications Section  
 Battalion Maintenance Section  
 Assault and Barrier Platoon Headquarters  
 Survivability Section  
 Mobility and Countermobility Section  
 Combat Medical Section  
 Three Brigade Engineer Sections  
 Unit Ministry Section  
 Food Services Section  
 Command Section  
 Maintenance Section  
 Assault and Obstacle Platoon  
 Food Service Section  
 Unit Ministry Team  
 Equipment Platoon Headquarters  
 Combat Medic Section  
 S2 and S3 Section  
 Maintenance Platoon Headquarters  
 Headquarters and Headquarters Company Maintenance Section  
 The Army Maintenance Management System and Prescribed Load List Section  
 Three Company Maintenance Teams  
 Recovery Section  
 Support Platoon Headquarters  
 Transportation Section  
 Unit Maintenance Section  
 Direct-Support Maintenance Section  
 Direct-Support Maintenance Supply Section  
 Construction Platoon Headquarters  
 Two General Construction Sections  
 Dump Truck Section  
 Treatment Team  
 Ambulance Team  
 Combat Medic Team  
 Direct Support Maintenance Supply Section  
 Two Engineer Platoons  
 Six Engineer Squads  
 Equipment Section

**TASK:** Provide Opposing Forces (OPFOR) Support to Training Exercises (05-2-9001)  
 (FM 5-415)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The element is assigned to provide a squad-or platoon-sized element to act as an opposing force in support of combat training. The element has all organic equipment and any additional resources required to perform the specific and/or assigned OPFOR missions. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The OPFOR element executes the OPFOR tasks at the specified times and locations to accomplish a desired training effect. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
1. The element provides OPFOR support to training exercises.		
2. The element uses the OPFOR tasks to provide realistic training to the supported unit.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

**TASK:** Conduct Reconnaissance (07-OPFOR-0010)

**CONDITION:** Red forces are conducting operations independently or as part of a larger force. The Red force is directed to obtain tactical information pertaining to Blue force location, disposition, intent, and or activities. All assigned Red force equipment and personnel are available. The Red force has engineer support available.

**STANDARD:** The Red force conducts the reconnaissance mission by penetrating Blue force outposts with mounted or dismounted patrols and obtaining and reporting required information IAW the OPORD and or commander's guidance. The Red force maintains focus; continuity; aggressiveness; timeliness; camouflage, concealment, and deception; accuracy; and reliability. Red force reconnaissance elements complete the reconnaissance mission undetected.

Note: During training exercises, the Blue force commander or leader should select the size of the Red force element based on threat doctrine.

**TASK:** Conduct Counterreconnaissance (07-OPFOR-0011)

**CONDITION:** Red forces are conducting operations independently or as part of a larger force. The Red force is ordered to deny information to Blue force reconnaissance elements by active and passive means. All necessary personnel and equipment are available.



**STANDARD:** The Red force conducts the counter reconnaissance IAW the OPORD and or commander's guidance. The Red force conceals friendly information through operational security (OPSEC) measures and engages and destroys Blue force reconnaissance elements.

Note: During training exercises, the Blue force commander/leader should select the size of the Red force element based on threat doctrine.

**TASK:** Conduct An Attack (07-OPFOR-0012)

**CONDITION:** Red forces are conducting operations independently or as part of a larger force. Red forces have determined that Blue forces are occupying defensive positions, conducting convoy operations, occupying an assembly or rear area, or are otherwise susceptible to attack. All assigned Red force equipment and personnel are available. Red forces have indirect fire support available.

**STANDARD:** The Red force conducts the attack IAW the OPORD and or commander's guidance. The Red force executes the attack by completely neutralizing, destroying, deceiving, or disrupting Blue forces at the designated time and location specified in the operation order and or commander's guidance.

Note: During training exercises, the Blue force commander or leader should select the size of the Red force element based on threat doctrine.

**TASK:** Conduct A Raid (07-OPFOR-0013)

**CONDITION:** Red forces are conducting operations independently or as part of a larger force. Red forces are occupying an objective rally point (ORP) with orders to conduct a raid against Blue force elements. All assigned Red force equipment and personnel are available. The Red force has indirect fire support available.

**STANDARD:** The Red force executes the raid IAW the OPORD and or commander's guidance. The Red force uses surprise, firepower, and maneuver to destroy Blue force position(s), capture prisoners, capture equipment, or free prisoners friendly to the Red force. The Red force avoids decisive engagement and withdraws all personnel from the objective(s) within the specified time. Red forces obtain all required priority intelligence requirements (PIR).

Note: During training exercises, the Blue force commander or leader should select the size of the Red force element based on threat doctrine.

**TASK:** Conduct Terrorist and Saboteur Attacks (07-OPFOR-0016)

**CONDITION:** Red forces are conducting operations independently or as part of a larger force. The Red force has dispatched small teams into Blue force rear area to disrupt CSS operations. All necessary personnel and equipment are available. The red force has indirect fire support available.

**STANDARD:** The Red force locates Blue force rear support bases and command and control (C2) facilities. The Red force destroys supplies and equipment, delays and disrupts CSS operations, and or inflicts casualties through probes in accordance with (IAW) the operation order and or commander's guidance.

**TASK:** Conduct Electronic Combat (07-OPFOR-0021)

**CONDITION:** Red forces are conducting operations independently or as part of a larger force. All necessary personnel and equipment are available. Blue forces are conducting command and control of operations using digital equipment, radio, messenger, or other tactical communications.

**STANDARD:** The Red force conducts electronic combat in accordance with (IAW) the operation order and or commander's guidance. The Red force employs signals reconnaissance, electronic jamming, electronic protection measures (EPM), destruction, and electronic counter reconnaissance to disrupt Blue force command and control. Note: During training exercises, the Blue force commander or leader should select the size of the Red force element based on threat doctrine.

**TASK:** Evade/Resist Capture (07-OPFOR-0024)

**CONDITION:** Red forces are conducting operations independently or as part of a larger force. Red force soldiers are being overrun or conducting covert operations against the Blue force that makes them susceptible to capture.

**STANDARD:** The Red force evades/resists capture. If captured, Red force personnel refrain from divulging information about their operations/unit and attempt to escape using every means available. Note: During training exercises, the Blue force commander/leader can select the size of the Red force element his unit will face based on current doctrine.

**TASK:** Conduct Biological/Chemical Operations (07-OPFOR-0027)

**CONDITION:** Red forces are conducting defensive or offensive operations independently or as part of a larger force. A decision has been made to employ biological or chemical weapons. Wind and weather conditions are right for the employment of biological or chemical weapons. All assigned Red force equipment and personnel are available.

**STANDARD:** The Red force conducts biological and or chemical operations IAW the OPORD and or commander's guidance. The Red force attacks the Blue force with nerve, blood, blister, choking, incapacitant, and or irritant agents or pathogenic microbes and or microorganism toxins. The Red force delivers agents and or toxins using aircraft, multiple rocket launchers (MRLs), artillery, mines, rockets, missiles, and or special operations forces. The Red force causes disruption of Blue force operations, suspension of operations, and or casualties. Note: During training exercises, the Blue force commander or leader should select the size of the Red force element based on threat doctrine.

**TASK:** Conduct Air Attack (07-OPFOR-0029)

**CONDITION:** Red forces are conducting offensive operations independently or as part of a larger force. Blue force positions, formations, or soldiers have been identified and are susceptible to air attack. All necessary personnel and equipment are available. Red force fixed wing combat aircraft and attack helicopters are available to provide aerial fire support to ground maneuver forces.

**STANDARD:** The Red force executes the air attack using fixed and rotor winged aircraft IAW the OPORD and or commander's guidance. Blue force positions, formations, and or soldiers are destroyed, delayed, or forced to retreat. Note: During training exercises, the Blue force commander and or leader should select the size of the Red force element based on threat doctrine.

**TASK:** Employ Deception Measures (07-OPFOR-0030)

**CONDITION:** Red forces are conducting operations independently or as part of a larger force. Red forces are ordered to employ deception measures to confuse Blue forces and to prevent them from determining Red force intentions or activities. All assigned Red force equipment and personnel are available. Red forces have indirect fire, close air, and engineer support available.

**STANDARD:** The Red force employs deception measures IAW the OPORD and or commander's guidance. The Red force constructs dummy positions; simulates troop movements by such means as use of civilian vehicles to portray movement to radar or marching refugees to portray movement of troops in the rear; conducts feints or demonstrations; employs manipulative, simulative, and imitative deception electronic measures; and or avoids patterns or obvious movements that reveal the time or intent of an operation. Note: During training exercises, the Blue force commander and or leader should select the size of the Red force element based on threat doctrine.

**TASK:** Conduct Reconnaissance (Revised) (07-OPFOR-0078)

**CONDITION:** Red forces are conducting operations independently or as part of a larger force. The Red force is directed to obtain tactical information pertaining to Blue force location, disposition, intent, and or activities. All assigned Red force equipment and personnel are available. The Red force has engineer support available.

**STANDARD:** The Red force conducts the reconnaissance mission by penetrating Blue force outposts with mounted or dismounted patrols and obtaining and reporting required information IAW the OPORD and or commander's guidance. The Red force maintains focus; continuity; aggressiveness; timeliness; camouflage, concealment, and deception; accuracy; and reliability. Red force reconnaissance elements complete the reconnaissance mission undetected.

Note: During training exercises, the Blue force commander or leader should select the size of the Red force element based on threat doctrine.

**TASK:** DISRUPT ASSEMBLY AREA ACTIVITIES (07-OPFOR-1001)

**CONDITION:** The enemy is in the process of or has already occupied an assembly area and is conducting assembly area activities.

**STANDARD:** Assembly area activities are halted or disrupted by an air attack, ground attack, sniper operations, special operations etc.

**TASK:** MAINTAIN CONTACT (07-OPFOR-1011)

**CONDITION:** OPFOR element is tactically engaged with enemy base defense forces. Enemy forces are withdrawing under pressure.

**STANDARD:** Engage enemy forces decisively. Advance own unit or forces as enemy withdraws. Inflict casualties.

**TASK:** DEFEND A BATTLE POSITION (07-OPFOR-1100)

**CONDITION:** The OPFOR has conducted a hasty or deliberate occupation of a battle position (BP), that may or may not be supported by obstacles. It observes an advancing enemy or is alerted to an enemy unit by a spot report from higher headquarters. Automatic weapons and antiarmor systems are available.

**STANDARD:** 1. The OPFOR completes all defensive preparations NLT the time specified in the order. 2. The OPFOR main body is not surprised by the enemy. 3. The OPFOR destroys, blocks, or canalizes the enemy unit when it enters the engagement area. 4. The OPFOR retains control of the designated terrain and forces the withdrawal of the enemy unit. 5. Prevents destruction of obstacles.

**TASK:** Execute Actions On Contact (07-OPFOR-1101)

**CONDITION:** Red forces are conducting operations independently or as part of a larger force. The Red force makes contact with Blue forces visually or by receiving direct or indirect fire. All necessary personnel and equipment are available. The red force has indirect fire support available. T

**STANDARD:** The Red force executes actions on contact in accordance with (IAW) the operation order and/or commander's guidance. Red forces execute a hasty defense and fix, destroy, or force Blue forces to withdraw. Note: During training exercises, the Blue force commander/leader should select the size of the Red force element based on threat doctrine.

**TASK:** Defend A Building (Revised) (07-OPFOR-1110)

**CONDITION:** Red forces are conducting operations independently or as part of a larger force. The Red force has received an order to defend a building. All necessary personnel and equipment are available. The Red force has automatic weapons, antiarmor systems, and indirect fire support available.

**STANDARD:** The Red force defends the building according to the operation order and/or commander's guidance. The Red force prevents the Blue force from isolating and entering the building. The Red force blocks or canalizes the Blue force to destroy them or force them to withdraw. The Red force retains control of the designated building or counterattacks to regain and maintain control. NOTE: During training exercises, the Blue force commander/leader can select the size of the Red force element his unit will face based on current doctrine.

**TASK:** Conduct an Ambush (07-OPFOR-1112)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) are operating separately or as part of a larger unit. The OPFOR is ordered to conduct an ambush along the enemy's lines of communications. The OPFOR has designated priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other intelligence requirements (IR). Light automatic weapons, light mortars, and antiarmor systems are available.

**STANDARD:** 1. The OPFOR emplaces the ambush not later than the time specified in the order. 2. The OPFOR surprises the enemy. 3. The OPFOR engages, fixes, and/or destroys the specified enemy element in the kill zone. OR 4. The OPFOR engages and destroys all of the specified vehicles in the kill zone. 5. The OPFOR withdraws all personnel and equipment from the objective, on order. 6. All specified PIR and IR are obtained from the ambush site.

**TASK:** Disrupt Command and Control (07-OPFOR-1113)

**CONDITION:** The enemy is preparing for or conducting operations.

**STANDARD:** Command and control is disrupted by interdicting enemy lines of communications, disrupting the decision making process, and/or disrupting the employment of forces.

**TASK:** CONDUCT MRC(+) ATTACK (07-OPFOR-1115)

**CONDITION:** A reinforced motorized rifle company (MRC) conducting offensive operations is on the march or in direct contact with an enemy unit. The OPFOR encounters or receives a spot report locating an enemy unit. Battalion-level indirect fire support assets and armored vehicles are available.

**STANDARD:** 1. The OPFOR exploits the platoon's flanks, gaps, and weaknesses; inflicts heavy casualties; and destroys the enemy unit's vehicles and equipment. 2. The OPFOR fixes and destroys the enemy unit before it can withdraw its combat elements. 3. The OPFOR bypasses or penetrates the enemy unit with a squad or more.

**TASK:** Attack (07-OPFOR-1118)

**CONDITION:** Red forces are conducting operations independently or as part of a larger force. The Red force encounters or receives a spot report locating a platoon to company size element. All necessary personnel and equipment are available. The Red force has battalion-level direct and indirect fire support, automatic weapons, and antiarmor systems available. The Blue force has indirect fire support and close air assets available.

**STANDARD:** The Red force moves elements through the company area of responsibility, makes contact with the main body, and forces the platoon to displace and or withdraw. The Red forces gain intelligence requirements (IR) and or attack the main body before the screening force gives the warning. Red forces place direct and or indirect fire on the main body. NOTE: During training exercises, the Blue force commander or leader should select the size of the Red force element based on threat doctrine.

**TASK:** Attack (07-OPFOR-1120)

**CONDITION:** Red forces are conducting operations independently or as part of a larger force. The Red force is ordered to execute an attack. All necessary personnel and equipment are available. The Red force has indirect fire, automatic weapons, and close air support available. The Blue force has at or near 100% strength and has indirect fire support assets available.

**STANDARD:** The Red force executes the attack IAW the OPORD and or commander's guidance. Red forces are not detected by Blue forces. Red forces prevent Blue forces from fixing their position(s). Red forces penetrate the defense(s), force the Blue forces to withdraw, and seize the objective. NOTE: During training exercises, the Blue force commander or leader should select the size of the Red force element based on threat doctrine.

**TASK:** GATHER INTELLIGENCE (07-OPFOR-1122)

**CONDITION:** The OPFOR conducts tactical operations to gather intelligence.

**STANDARD:** 1. The OPFOR locates 70 percent or more of battalion elements. 2. The OPFOR reports the battalion's intentions. 3. The OPFOR reports the battalion's strength, plus/minus 10 percent, or echelon of the unit (platoon, company, battalion). 4. The OPFOR obtains specified PIR on friendly units. 5. The OPFOR reports all information to higher headquarters.

**TASK:** DISRUPT LOGISTICAL SUPPORT (07-OPFOR-1123)

**CONDITION:** The enemy is conducting logistical support operations.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR delays resupply and maintenance through probes and ambushes by preventing the unit from being prepared (by the time specified) to conduct operations.

**TASK:** Defend a Danger Area (07-OPFOR-1135)

**CONDITION:** The enemy is crossing an open area, road or trail, minefield, stream, or wire obstacle or he is passing a friendly position or village. The danger area is observed and covered by friendly fires.

**STANDARD:** The unit detects the crossing/passing decisively engages the enemy while he is in the danger area. The unit destroys or forces the enemy to withdraw. NOTE: During training exercises, the commander/leader can select the size of the OPFOR element his unit will face based on his unit's tactical proficiency.

**TASK:** DISRUPT ARMORED MOVEMENT (07-OPFOR-1140)

**CONDITION:** The OPFOR platoon/squad is ordered to disrupt enemy armored movement. The OPFOR is equipped with mines, antitank guns, and ATGMs. The OPFOR also has indirect fire and CAS available. The OPFOR may operate separately or as part of a larger unit.

**STANDARD:** 1. The OPFOR prevents the platoon from employing the armored forces. 2. The OPFOR fixes the platoon.

**TASK:** Disrupt Movement (07-OPFOR-1303)

**CONDITION:** Red forces are conducting offensive operations independently or as part of a larger force. Situational awareness indicates Blue forces are conducting convoys and tactical road marches in the area. Tactical movement, airmobile operations, and or amphibious operations and water crossings have also been noted. All assigned Red forces equipment and personnel are on hand and equipment is operational. Blue forces are at or near 100% strength and have indirect fires support available.

**STANDARD:** Red forces attack Blue forces along their route of march with mines, obstacles, sniper fire, or special operations forces. The Blue force is destroyed or forced to deviate from its route(s). Blue forces do not reach their intended destination.

Note: During training exercises, the Blue force commander and or leader should select the size of the Red force element based on threat doctrine.

**TASK:** CAPTURE COMPANY EQUIPMENT (07-OPFOR-1311)

**CONDITION:** The unit is conducting mounted or dismounted presence patrols. OPFOR elements ambush the presence patrol and capture company equipment.

**STANDARD:** 1. The OPFOR captures company tactical vehicles before destruction. 2. The OPFOR captures company spare parts before unit can destroy them.

**TASK:** CONDUCT TERRORIST AND SABOTEUR ATTACKS (07-OPFOR-1401)

**CONDITION:** The OPFOR is operating separately or as part of a larger element. The OPFOR are conducting unconventional operations to support future offensive maneuvers. The OPFOR infiltrates small teams in the enemy's rear area to attack command and control (C2) and CSS operations. Light automatic weapons and antiarmor systems are available.

**STANDARD:** 1. The OPFOR locates C2 and CSS sites in the sector. 2. The OPFOR delays or disrupts CSS operations through probes and raids. 3. The OPFOR infiltrates C2 and CSS bases to conduct sabotage and terrorist operations. 4. The OPFOR teams are not compromised during infiltration to their target(s).

**TASK:** Infiltrate/Exfiltrate Enemy Lines/Positions (07-OPFOR-1402)

**CONDITION:** The enemy has established roadblocks/checkpoints or is occupying an assembly area, rear area, patrol base, or defensive position. The unit has been order to infiltrate/exfiltrate enemy's lines/positions.

**STANDARD:** The unit infiltrates/exfiltrates enemy lines/positions without being detected in accordance with commander's guidance.

**TASK:** Conduct Obstacle Breach (Revised) (07-OPFOR-1404)

**CONDITION:** Red forces are conducting operations independently or as part of a larger force. Red forces are on the offense and encounter a minefield or other obstacle that it cannot bypass. All necessary personnel and equipment are available. Red forces have indirect fire and close air support available.

**STANDARD:** The Red force executes the breach IAW the OPORD and or commander's guidance. Red force engineers conduct reconnaissance of the obstacle and the combined arms unit breaches the obstacle.

Note: The Movement Support Detachment (MSD) has the task of mine clearing during the march.

Note: During training exercises, the Blue force commander/leader should select the size of the Red force element based on threat doctrine.

**TASK:** COUNTER ECCM (07-OPFOR-1414)

**CONDITION:** The OPFOR discovers enemy ECCM and takes action.

**STANDARD:** 1. OPFOR locates battalion frequency; initiates ECM. 2. OPFOR reacts to battalion ECCM. 3. OPFOR disrupts battalion communication capabilities.

**TASK:** Disrupt Mission Preparation (07-OPFOR-1601)

**CONDITION:** Red forces are in the process of preparing for an upcoming mission as part of a larger force. The Red force is disrupted by a hasty attack, air attack, indirect fire, or employment of special operations forces. All Red forces personnel and equipment are available. The red force has indirect fire support available.

**STANDARD:** The Red force completes mission preparation in accordance with (IAW) the operation order and/or commander's guidance. NOTE: During training exercises, the commander/leader can select the size of the OPFOR element his unit will face based on his unit's tactical proficiency.

**TASK:** DETECT GUIDES (07-OPFOR-1873)

**CONDITION:** An OPFOR element is positioned along the Guides' route.

**STANDARD:** 1. The OPFOR detects the scout guides. 2. The OPFOR identifies the movement route from the linkup point to the release point. 3. The OPFOR disrupts the completion of the linkup. 4. The OPFOR engages the guided unit during movement. 5. The OPFOR inflicts more than 10 percent casualties.

**TASK:** Maintain Operation Security (07-OPFOR-1972)

**CONDITION:** The Blue Force is conducting reconnaissance/surveillance operations to gain information on the Red Force.

**STANDARD:** The Red Force maintains operation security by ensuring noise, litter, and light discipline is enforced.

**TASK:** CONDUCT A DEFENSE (07-OPFOR-3003)

**CONDITION:** The OPFOR conducts company (+) defense.

**STANDARD:** 1. The OPFOR can determine time and location of the attack. 2. The OPFOR fires on the battalion task force and stops the lead company(s). 3. The OPFOR delays the battalion task force.

**TASK:** PERFORM TACTICAL MOVEMENT AND/OR ZONE RECONNAISSANCE (07-OPFOR-3014)

**CONDITION:** The OPFOR is conducting tactical movement along an avenue of approach through an enemy security zone. It may or may not be attempting to infiltrate the zone for the purpose of conducting a reconnaissance of the enemy's main body forces.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR completes movement through the zone and/or completes its reconnaissance mission without being detected or destroyed by enemy forces.

**TASK:** Conduct A Counterattack (Revised) (07-OPFOR-3104)

**CONDITION:** Red forces are conducting operations independently or as part of a larger force. Red forces have been ordered to counterattack following a disrupted or halted Blue force penetration attempt or while the Blue force is consolidating and reorganizing on the objective. All assigned Red force equipment and personnel are available. Red forces have indirect fire and engineer support available. Red forces have gained air superiority.

**STANDARD:** The Red force conducts the counterattack IAW the OPORD and or commander's guidance. The Red force uses short but intense artillery and air preparation, attacks Blue force flanks or rear, and or exploits gaps and ruptures in Blue force formations. The Red force prevents consolidation and reorganization and evacuation of wounded Blue force personnel. The Red force gains/regains terrain and destroys or captures remaining Blue force personnel and equipment.  
Note: During training exercises, the Blue force commander/leaders should select the size of the Red force element based on threat doctrine.

**TASK:** Counter Air Movement/Air Assault Operations (07-OPFOR-3126)

**CONDITION:** The enemy is conducting an air movement or air assault operation to reinforce elements or to mass combat power at a particular place and time on the battlefield. Attack helicopter assets may be part of the operation.

**STANDARD:** The unit surprises and engages the platoon at the landing zone (LZ) or the pickup zone (PZ). The air movement or air assault operation is disrupted and enemy forces are destroyed or forced to withdraw.

**TASK:** CONDUCT COUNTERRECONNAISSANCE (07-OPFOR-3405)

**CONDITION:** The OPFOR is ordered to conduct tactical operations along a suspected enemy route. The enemy is operating along lines of communication or avenues of approach and can be reinforced with an armor platoon, a mechanized infantry platoon, air support, and/or indirect fires.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR denies the enemy from collecting and reporting data of the suspected route IAW the commander's intent.

**TASK:** ATTACK (07-OPFOR-3419)

**CONDITION:** The OPFOR is conducting offensive operations and has been ordered to attack to destroy the enemy and/or seize terrain. Based on analysis of the terrain, enemy disposition, and the number and type of enemy vehicles/weapons, the OPFOR has the capability to destroy the enemy.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR executes the attack, destroys the enemy, and/or seizes the designated terrain.

**TASK:** COUNTER HELICOPTER MOVEMENT (07-OPFOR-3426)

**CONDITION:** The OPFOR is ordered to conduct tactical operations to counter helicopter movement.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR engages and fixes enemy elements at the LZ or PZ and/or prevents helicopters from landing at the LZ or PZ.

**TASK:** CONDUCT AN MRC(+) ATTACK (07-OPFOR-3429)

**CONDITION:** The OPFOR, a motorized rifle company (MRC)(+), is on the march or in direct contact with enemy force.



**STANDARD:** The OPFOR prevents the enemy from withdrawing its combat elements and bypasses or penetrates the enemy main body with a squad or larger element.

**TASK:** EXECUTE A HASTY ATTACK (07-OPFOR-4008)

**CONDITION:** The enemy is in the process of consolidating, reorganizing, or is moving and does not have situational awareness.

**STANDARD:** The enemy is destroyed, disrupted, or caused to retreat and the objective is seized.

**TASK:** DEFEND A BATTLE POSITION (07-OPFOR-4100)

**CONDITION:** The OPFOR has conducted a hasty or deliberate occupation of a BP, which may or may not be supported by obstacles. It observes an advancing enemy or is alerted to an enemy unit by a SPOTREP from higher headquarters.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR destroys, blocks, or canalizes the enemy force when it enters the engagement area. On order, the OPFOR displaces in accordance with the commander's intent before being overrun by the enemy force in the sector.

**TASK:** Employ Deception Measures (Revised) (07-OPFOR-4200)

**CONDITION:** Red forces are conducting operations independently or as part of a larger force. Red forces are ordered to employ deception measures to confuse Blue forces and to prevent them from determining Red force intentions or activities. All assigned Red force equipment and personnel are available. Red forces have indirect fire, close air, and engineer support available.

**STANDARD:** The Red force employs deception measures IAW the OPORD and or commander's guidance. The Red force constructs dummy positions; simulates troop movements by such means as use of civilian vehicles to portray movement to radar or marching refugees to portray movement of troops in the rear; conducts feints or demonstrations; employs manipulative, simulative, and imitative deception electronic measures; and or avoids patterns or obvious movements that reveal the time or intent of an operation.

Note: During training exercises, the Blue force commander/leader should select the size of the Red force element based on threat doctrine.

**TASK:** Attack (5-OPFOR-0001)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) element has located the enemy. The priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other intelligence requirements have been obtained by OPFOR patrols. The OPFOR element has automatic and antiarmor weapons and light mortars.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR element attempts to seize the terrain, vehicles, or equipment. 1. Develops an attack plan. 2. Surprises the main body of the enemy. 3. Initiates the attack using a scheme of maneuver that exploits enemy flanks, gaps, and weaknesses. 4. Uses covered and concealed routes to approach enemy force flanks, gaps, or weakly held areas. 5. Employs indirect fire to support the attack. 6. Penetrates enemy defenses. 7. Destroys equipment and supplies. 8. Inflicts heavy casualties. 9. Isolates the combat service support (CSS) base by blocking reinforcements. 10. Forces enemy units to displace. 11. Avoids being fixed in one position. 12. Withdraws before the CSS base is reinforced with tactical combat forces.

**TASK:** Conduct Air Attacks (5-OPFOR-0002)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) element in the rear area has forwarded the positions of the enemy support sites or the locations of moving elements. The OPFOR aircraft have been dispatched to attack enemy installations or convoys.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR element attempts to delay, disrupt, or damage the enemy targets by air.

1. Locates the target (support sites or convoys). 2. Makes attack runs on the designated targets. 3. Inflicts heavy damage to the selected target. 4. Sustains no loss of aircraft. 5. Delays moving the force for more than one hour.

**TASK:** Maintain Contact (5-OPFOR-0003)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) element is engaged with enemy base defense forces. The enemy forces are withdrawing under pressure.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR element maintains enemy contact while the enemy withdraws. 1. Engages the enemy forces decisively. 2. Advances the OPFOR as the enemy forces withdraw. 3. Inflicts heavy casualties. 4. Captures the members of the enemy force. 5. Captures documents and equipment. 6. Safeguards captured documents, equipment, and personnel.

**TASK:** Conduct a Raid (5-OPFOR-0004)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) element has occupied an objective rally point and has orders to conduct a raid on a combat service support (CSS) base.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR element infiltrates the enemy base and destroys all of the targets. 1. Surprises the enemy forces. 2. Assaults the support base and accomplishes the assigned tasks. 3. Destroys the specified equipment and supplies. 4. Avoids being decisively engaged. 5. Withdraws all personnel from the objective areas within the time prescribed. 6. Obtains all priority intelligence requirements (PIR) from the raid site. 7. Sustains only light casualties from enemy fire.

**TASK:** Conduct Terrorist and Saboteur Attacks (5-OPFOR-0005)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) element dispatches small teams into the enemy rear area to disrupt combat service support (CSS) operations.

**STANDARD:** The enemy sustains disrupted command and control (C2), destroyed equipment and supplies, and light casualties. 1. Locates rear support bases and C2 facilities. 2. Delays and disrupts CSS operations through probes. 3. Infiltrates CSS bases to conduct sabotage and terrorist activities. 4. Inflicts light casualties. 5. Destroys supplies and equipment.

**TASK:** Conduct Sniper Operations (5-OPFOR-0006)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) element has assigned snipers (regular or irregular elements) in the enemy rear area along the main supply route (MSR) and near support sites.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR element kills or wounds targets. 1. Sets up a well-concealed location. 2. Engages vehicle drivers or personnel on foot with short bursts of semiautomatic fire. 3. Kills or wounds selected targets. 4. Prevents the position from being discovered by enemy forces. 5. Evacuates the area without being spotted. 6. Reports all specified priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other intelligence requirements to the OPFOR headquarters (HQ).

**TASK:** Conduct an Ambush (5-OPFOR-0007)

**CONDITION:** The enemy is moving in a convoy. The opposing forces (OPFOR) element is positioned along the enemy route.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR element inflicts casualties on the enemy and causes vehicle and equipment damage. 1. Prepares an ambush site before the element arrives. 2. Surprises march element forces. 3. Inflicts heavy casualties within the designated kill zone. 4. Inflicts heavy damage to vehicles and equipment within the designated kill zone. 5. Delays the march element from reaching a specified destination for a specified period of time. 6. Withdraws on order. 7. Sustains no casualties. 8. Reports actions to superiors.

**TASK:** Conduct an Attack (5-OPFOR-0008)

**CONDITION:** The enemy is conducting tactical operations. The opposing forces (OPFOR) element receives orders to attack the enemy, the area of occupation, or the main supply route (MSR) with smoke.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR element disrupts enemy movement and smoke operations. 1. Determines the delivery method of the smoke attack. 2. Locates the target. 3. Delivers the smoke attack downwind. 4. Attacks the enemy with smoke and surge attacks when the enemy responds to the smoke.

**TASK:** Defeat Obstacles (5-OPFOR-0009)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) element encounters an obstacle that blocks the avenue of approach as it advances upon the enemy forces.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR element bypasses or breaches the enemy obstacle. 1. Detects the obstacle before halting its main body. 2. Defeats the obstacle. a. Bypasses the obstacle without entering the engagement areas. b. Breaches the obstacle within 45 minutes and passes its entire force through the obstacle. 3. Does not incur degradation to the point that the mission must be discontinued.

**TASK:** Conduct an Aerial Reconnaissance (5-OPFOR-0010)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) headquarters (HQ) element requires intelligence on the locations and identification of enemy elements. An aircraft is dispatched to take photographs and make a visual inspection of the enemy rear area.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR element gathers photograph intelligence of the enemy. 1. Photographs the assigned sectors. 2. Makes quick visual checks where the ceiling is low. 3. Locates enemy positions in the area, particularly support and storage bases, and command and control (C2) facilities. 4. Sustains no loss of aircraft. 5. Reports priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other information requirements to the OPFOR HQ.

**TASK:** Gather Intelligence (5-OPFOR-0011)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) small element, operating in the rear area, is planning attacks on enemy bases. Information is needed to complete the plans.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR element infiltrates, gathers intelligence information, and submits its findings to the command. 1. Identifies all priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other intelligence requirements. 2. Passes through any outpost, defensive wire, or warning devices undetected. 3. Moves to an observation point that offers cover and concealment and is clear enough to gather PIR and other intelligence requirements. 4. Gathers all PIR and other intelligence requirements. 5. Withdraws from the area undetected. 6. Reports all information to the OPFOR headquarters (HQ).

**TASK:** Counter Passage of Lines (5-OPFOR-0012)

**CONDITION:** Enemy forces are in defensive positions, but they are expected to attempt passage-of-lines operations. The opposing forces (OPFOR) receive orders to disrupt enemy passage-of-lines operations.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR element delays or prevents enemy passage of lines. 1. Delays the passage. 2. Prevents the company from moving all personnel through the stationary unit. 3. Engages the main body of either the moving or the stationary unit.

**TASK:** Disrupt Assembly Area (AA) Activities (5-OPFOR-0013)

**CONDITION:** Intelligence reports indicate that platoon- and company-size enemy units are operating in the opposing forces (OPFOR) area of operations. Enemy units can defend from AAs with direct fire, antiarmor weapons, and indirect fire. The enemy has close air support (CAS) and nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) capabilities.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR element locates and disrupts enemy AA activities. 1. Locates the element AA. 2. Probes the AA with squad- or team-size elements. 3. Inflicts more than 5 percent casualties on the element. 4. Disrupts element preparations (prevents or delays beyond the allotted time of the element).

**TASK:** Disrupt Movement (5-OPFOR-0014)

**CONDITION:** The enemy is expected to move through the opposing forces (OPFOR) element area of operations. The OPFOR element has received an operation order (OPORD) or fragmentary order (FRAGO) to disrupt enemy movement. The enemy has the capability to defend with direct fire and antiarmor weapons.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR element delays enemy movement. 1. Delays the element. 2. Forces the element to deviate from its route. 3. Prevents the element from reaching its destination. 4. Surprises the main body of the element.

**TASK:** Disrupt Enemy Movement and Operations Using Persistent and Nonpersistent Chemical Weapons (5-OPFOR-0015)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) element has located the enemy. Priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other intelligence requirements have been obtained by OPFOR patrols. The OPFOR units deliver chemical agents by means of conventional artillery weapons or aircraft, along selected supply routes and key bases in the rear area.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR element disrupts enemy movement and operations using persistent and nonpersistent chemical weapons. 1. Delivers chemical agents in low and densely wooded areas. 2. Delays the movement of enemy supplies and equipment to the forward areas. 3. Restricts the movement of the enemy units in the rear area. 4. Channels the movement of enemy units into predesignated ambush areas. 5. Contaminates enemy supplies and equipment. 6. Inflicts a high rate of casualties on enemy forces.

**TASK:** Disrupt Enemy Movement and Operations Using Tactical Nuclear Weapons (5-OPFOR-0016)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) element has located the enemy. Priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other intelligence requirements have been obtained by OPFOR patrols. Tactical nuclear weapons are employed against key locations in the rear area.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR element disrupts enemy movement and operations. 1. Disrupts or delays the movement of enemy equipment and supplies to the forward areas. 2. Destroys enemy equipment and supplies. 3. Inflicts a high rate of nuclear casualties among the enemy forces. 4. Denies the enemy the use of specified areas. 5. Contaminates enemy equipment and supplies.

**TASK:** Disrupt Quarters Party Operations (5-OPFOR-0017)

**CONDITION:** The enemy is conducting quarters party operations. It has established an assembly area (AA) but has not moved in the main body.

**STANDARD:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) element attempts to disrupt quartering party operations and infiltrates the enemy AA. 1. Locates the quartering party and the AA. 2. Surprises the main body. 3. Penetrates the AA with squad-size probes. 4. Inflicts personnel casualties and vehicle damage. 5. Disrupts unit preparations (prevents or delays beyond unit allotted time).

**TASK:** Disrupt Defensive Preparations (5-OPFOR-0018)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) element has located the enemy. Priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other intelligence requirements obtained by OPFOR patrols indicate that the enemy elements are establishing defensive positions. The OPFOR element has automatic and antiarmor weapons and light mortars.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR element disrupts and delays enemy defensive preparations. 1. Locates and penetrates the enemy security system. 2. Forces the enemy to delay defensive preparations. 3. Disrupts enemy obstacle preparations.

**TASK:** Disrupt a Net Control Station (NCS) (5-OPFOR-0019)

**CONDITION:** The enemy has established a NCS. The opposing forces (OPFOR) element has radio and jamming equipment.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR element attempts to disrupt an NCS. 1. Attempts to locate the radio frequency that the unit is operating on. 2. Attempts to enter the radio net. 3. Attempts to issue bogus orders to a unit on the net. 4. Jams the radio frequency and forces the unit to go to an alternate frequency.

**TASK:** Disrupt Construction of Vehicle Fighting Positions (5-OPFOR-0020)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) element has located the enemy. The priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other intelligence obtained by OPFOR patrols indicate that the enemy is constructing vehicle fighting positions within its defensive area. The OPFOR element has automatic and antiarmor weapons and light mortars.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR element attempts to disrupt enemy efforts to establish vehicle fighting positions. 1. Locates the defensive area. 2. Surprises the main body. 3. Penetrates the defensive area with squad-size probes. 4. Inflicts casualties on the unit. 5. Destroys vehicles. 6. Disrupts unit preparations (prevents or delays beyond the allotted time of the unit).

**TASK:** Disrupt a Route Reconnaissance (5-OPFOR-0021)

**CONDITION:** The enemy is conducting a route reconnaissance. The opposing forces (OPFOR) element is positioned along the enemy route.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR element attempts to disrupt a squad or section conducting a route reconnaissance. 1. Prevents the unit from meeting its specified time schedule. 2. Forces the unit to deviate from its specified route. 3. Prevents the unit from reaching its assigned destination. 4. Surprises the squad or section. 5. Inflicts casualties on the unit.

**TASK:** Disrupt an Engineer Reconnaissance (5-OPFOR-0022)

**CONDITION:** The enemy is conducting an engineer reconnaissance. The opposing forces (OPFOR) element is positioned along the enemy route.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR element disrupts an engineer reconnaissance. 1. Prevents the unit from meeting its specified time schedule. 2. Forces the unit to deviate from its specified route. 3. Prevents the unit from accomplishing its assigned engineer reconnaissance. 4. Surprises the unit conducting the reconnaissance.

**TASK:** Defend a Minefield (5-OPFOR-0023)

**CONDITION:** The enemy is conducting a minefield sweeping operation. The opposing forces (OPFOR) element has a minefield placed in the enemy path. The minefield is under constant observation and fire.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR element defends a minefield against an enemy element conducting a minefield sweeping operation. 1. Prevents the unit from detecting the obstacle. 2. Disrupts the minefield sweeping operation. 3. Prevents the unit from conducting the minefield sweeping operation, prevents the unit from moving all personnel through the breach or delays the completion of the minefield sweeping operation for more than 45 minutes.

**TASK:** Surrender to the Capturing Unit on the Battlefield (5-OPFOR-0024)

**CONDITION:** The enemy has captured opposing forces (OPFOR) element soldiers, documents, and equipment sensitive to the OPFOR tactical operations.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR soldiers retain or destroy documents and equipment. The OPFOR element surrenders documents and equipment of no tactical use to the enemy and attempts to conceal or destroy items of tactical value. The OPFOR element attempts escape and evasion. 1. Prevents the successful capture of documents and equipment. 2. Destroys documents and equipment. 3. Removes identifying markings from equipment. 4. Removes unit-identifying insignia. 5. Provides misleading information. 6. Plans an escape. 7. Delays movement to the nearest collection point. 8. Prevents safeguarding of enemy prisoners of war (EPWs) in order to cause embarrassment to the United States (US).

**TASK:** GATHER INTELLIGENCE (63-OPFOR-1008)

**CONDITION:** Small OPFOR elements, operating in the rear area, are planning attacks on enemy bases. Information is needed to complete plans.

**STANDARD:** 1. Identify all PIR and other intelligence requirements. 2. Pass through any outpost, defensive wire, or warning devices undetected. 3. Move to an OP that offers cover and concealment and is close enough to gather PIR and other intelligence requirements. 4. Gather all PIR and other intelligence requirements. 5. Withdraw from area undetected. 6. Report all information to OPFOR HQ.

- ELEMENTS:** Assault and Barrier Platoon Headquarters  
 Mobility and Countermobility Section  
 Company Headquarters  
 Assault and Obstacle Platoon  
 Survivability Section  
 Support Platoon Headquarters  
 Two Engineer Platoons  
 Six Engineer Squads  
 Equipment Section  
 Construction Platoon Headquarters  
 Two General Construction Sections  
 Equipment Platoon Headquarters

**TASK:** Construct an Expedient Landing Zone (LZ) for Helicopters (05-3-1010)  
 (FM 5-430-00-1) (FM 3-21.38) (FM 5-34)  
 (FM 5-430-00-2)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)  
**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The element receives an operation order (OPORD) to construct an expedient LZ for helicopters. The general location of the site is given. The LZ will be used by single UH-60 helicopters for a short duration. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The element constructs an expedient LZ capable of supporting UH-60 and UH-1B helicopter operations within 3 hours. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The element leader conducts troop-leading procedures and coordinates with the company for additional tools and supplies.</p> <p>* 2. The element leader or sergeant selects the site.  <b>NOTE: The approach or departure zone requires a surface ratio of 10:1.</b>                      a. Conducted a map reconnaissance identifying the possible sites and ensured that the site—                          (1) Met the tactical requirements.                          (2) Had slopes of less than 3 percent.                      b. Conducted a ground reconnaissance of possible sites and ensured that the site selected had—                          (1) A minimum number of trees.  <b>NOTE: The UH-60 or the UH-1B requires a 30.5- by 30.5-meter clear area.</b>                          (2) No approach or departure obstructions.                          (3) Ground access.</p> <p>* 3. The element leader or sergeant directs the site layout.                      a. Defined the boundaries of the LZ.                      b. Designated the approach and departure zone.                      c. Set up material storage areas containing vehicle turnarounds and camouflaged the areas according to the tactical situation.</p> <p>4. The element clears the LZ and the glide path.                      a. Cleared obstructions from the glide path.                      b. Removed trees.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
c. Cleared brush from the LZ. d. Marked the LZ. (1) Marked the four corners with regulation panels that were 50 centimeters by 65 centimeters. (2) Marked obstructions (such as wires and tree stumps) near the LZ. * 5. The element leader or sergeant reports the mission progress and completion to higher headquarters (HQ). <b>NOTE: Digital units send reports and populate the Army Battle Command System (ABCS) with the location of the LZ according to the unit tactical standing operating procedure (TACSOP).</b>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title
052-193-1310	Construct Demolition Firing Systems
052-193-1311	Prime Military Explosives
052-193-1312	Construct Demolition Initiating System
052-193-3022	Calculate Timber-Cutting Charges
052-243-1506	Classify a Soil Using the Unified Soil Classification System
052-256-3043	Direct Crawler Tractor Operations
052-256-3047	Direct Scoop Loader Operations
052-256-3048	Direct Utility Tractor Operations
071-334-4002	Establish a Helicopter Landing Point

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title
05-1-0017	Integrate Augmentation Support
05-1-6001	Request a Standard Geospatial Product
05-1-6002	Request Nonstandard Geospatial Products
05-2-0018	Conduct Report Procedures
05-2-7008	Prepare an Operation Order (OPORD) (Company/Platoon)

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**



**ELEMENTS:** Assault and Barrier Platoon Headquarters  
 Mobility and Countermobility Section  
 Six Engineer Squads  
 Two Engineer Platoons  
 Equipment Section

**TASK:** Place Airfield Matting on Prepared Surfaces (05-3-5100)  
 (FM 5-430-00-1) (FM 5-34) (FM 5-430-00-2)  
 (FM 5-436)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)  
**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The element receives an operation order (OPORD) to place airfield matting on a prepared surface. The mission statement specifies the runway, taxiway, and apron dimensions and completion time. Airfield membrane and matting is pre-positioned at the site. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The element places airfield matting at a rate of 32.5 square meters per man-hour (for trained troops). The matting is certified for use. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* 1. The element leader conducts troop-leading procedures. In addition, the element leader coordinates with the company for construction equipment, tools, and materials.</li> <li>* 2. The element leader or element sergeant establishes job-site security.</li> <li>3. The element inventories pre-positioned matting to ensure that adequate stocks are on hand.</li> <li>* 4. The element leader inspects the airfield surface to ensure that it has been properly prepared (leveled, no depressions, and minimum grade changes) and ensures that the element repairs the surface or requests assistance as appropriate.</li> <li>* 5. The element leader organizes the element and assigns specific tasks.</li> <li>6. The element places membrane and airfield matting.                         <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Located and marked the centerline of the runway, taxiway, and apron.</li> <li>b. Placed the matting.</li> <li>c. Ensured that it was certified for use by the Army aviation safety officer or the Air Force combat control team.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 7. The element leader submits status reports to the company according to the unit standing operating procedure (SOP).</li> </ul> <p><b>NOTE: Digital units send reports using frequency-modulated (FM) or digital systems. The unit populates the Army Battle Command System (ABCS) according to the unit's tactical SOP (TACSOP).</b></p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
052-239-3029	Schedule Work
052-254-1055	Spread Piles of Loose Material With a Motorized Grader
052-256-3045	Direct Motor Grader Operations
052-256-3046	Direct Compaction Operations
052-256-4143	Schedule Work in a Construction Project

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
05-2-0018	Conduct Report Procedures
05-2-7008	Prepare an Operation Order (OPORD) (Company/Platoon)
05-3-0013	Conduct Troop-Leading Procedures
05-3-3006	Establish Jobsite Security
05-3-5231	Replace Damaged Airfield Matting

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

- ELEMENTS:** Battalion  
 Battalion Headquarters  
 Company Headquarters  
 S1 Section  
 S2 Section  
 S3 Section  
 S4 Section  
 Division Engineer Section  
 Communications Section  
 Battalion Maintenance Section  
 Assault and Barrier Platoon Headquarters  
 Survivability Section  
 Mobility and Countermobility Section  
 Combat Medical Section  
 Three Brigade Engineer Sections  
 Unit Ministry Section  
 Food Services Section  
 Section  
 Command Section  
 Maintenance Section  
 Assault and Obstacle Platoon  
 Food Service Section  
 Unit Ministry Team  
 Equipment Platoon Headquarters  
 Combat Medic Section  
 S2 and S3 Section  
 Maintenance Platoon Headquarters  
 Headquarters and Headquarters Company Maintenance Section  
 The Army Maintenance Management System and Prescribed Load List Section  
 Three Company Maintenance Teams  
 Recovery Section  
 Support Platoon Headquarters  
 Transportation Section  
 Unit Maintenance Section  
 Direct-Support Maintenance Section  
 Direct-Support Maintenance Supply Section  
 Construction Platoon Headquarters  
 Two General Construction Sections  
 Dump Truck Section  
 Treatment Team  
 Ambulance Team  
 Combat Medic Team  
 Direct Support Maintenance Supply Section

**TASK:** Receive a Logistics Package (LOGPAC) (05-3-7004)  
 (FM 5-10) (FM 5-71-2) (FM 5-71-3)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The element requires logistical support for follow-on missions. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** Logistical support is required in order to maintain combat effectiveness. The platoon receives the LOGPAC according to the unit tactical standing operating procedure (TACSOP). The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The element leader or sergeant determines the need for combat service support (CSS) for an operation and initiates the request.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Forwarded the request to the company first sergeant (1SG), if not attached to a support unit.</li> <li>b. Forwarded the request to the supported maneuver unit 1SG, if attached, and provided a copy of the report to engineer higher headquarters (HQ).</li> </ul> <p><b>NOTE: The digital units request CSS through the Force XXI Battle Command Brigade and Below (FBCB2) System or frequency-modulated (FM) means according to the unit TACSOP.</b></p> <p>* 2. The element leader or sergeant coordinates with the 1SG for the technique, time, and location of the LOGPAC.</p> <p>3. The element assists the 1SG with pickup and delivery of supplies, when required.</p> <p>* 4. The element leader or sergeant supervises resupply operations.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Organized for resupply.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Moved the element tactically to the company resupply point, if delivered by the service station method.</li> <li>(2) Instructed the squad on the order of supply, if received by the tailgate method.</li> </ul> </li> <li>b. Welcomed new personnel and assigned them to a squad, if received in the element.</li> <li>c. Transferred enemy prisoners of war (EPWs), if required.</li> <li>d. Ensured that all medical needs were met.</li> <li>e. Ensured that all vehicles; weapons; radios; and nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) equipment were maintained.</li> <li>f. Ensured that requirements for all petroleum, oils, and lubricants (POL) were met.</li> <li>g. Ensured that all administration needs were met.</li> <li>h. Ensured that all mail was received.</li> <li>i. Ensured that all classes of supply were received.</li> <li>j. Inspected each squad before they left the resupply point.</li> </ul> <p>* 5. The element leader ensures that security is maintained throughout the resupply operation.</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
071-326-5611	Conduct the Maneuver of a Squad
071-326-5626	Prepare an Oral Operation Order

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
05-2-7003	Receive and Distribute Throughput Supplies

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

- ELEMENTS:** Battalion  
Battalion Headquarters  
Company Headquarters  
S1 Section  
S2 Section  
S3 Section  
S4 Section  
Division Engineer Section  
Communications Section  
Battalion Maintenance Section  
Assault and Barrier Platoon Headquarters  
Survivability Section  
Mobility and Countermobility Section  
Combat Medical Section  
Three Brigade Engineer Sections  
Unit Ministry Section  
Food Services Section  
Command Section  
Maintenance Section  
Assault and Obstacle Platoon  
Food Service Section  
Unit Ministry Team  
Equipment Platoon Headquarters  
Combat Medic Section  
S2 and S3 Section  
Maintenance Platoon Headquarters  
Headquarters and Headquarters Company Maintenance Section  
The Army Maintenance Management System and Prescribed Load List Section  
Three Company Maintenance Teams  
Recovery Section  
Support Platoon Headquarters  
Transportation Section  
Unit Maintenance Section  
Direct-Support Maintenance Section  
Direct-Support Maintenance Supply Section  
Construction Platoon Headquarters  
Two General Construction Sections  
Dump Truck Section  
Treatment Team  
Ambulance Team  
Combat Medic Team  
Direct Support Maintenance Supply Section  
Two Engineer Platoons  
Six Engineer Squads  
Equipment Section

**TASK:** Transport Casualties (for Units Without Medical Treatment Personnel) (08-2-C316.05-T01A)  
(FM 8-10-6) (AR 200-1) (AR 385-10)  
(DA FORM 1155) (DA FORM 1156) (FM 12-6)  
(FM 3-21.38)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)  
**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** Unit personnel are wounded and some may be chemically contaminated. The unit has no organic medical-treatment personnel. Threat force contact has been broken. Unit defenses have been reorganized. Casualties are transported from defensive positions to designated casualty collection points. All methods of transport are employed. Some wounded enemy prisoner of war (EPW) casualties may require transport. This task is performed simultaneously with other reorganization tasks. The tactical standing operating procedure (TACSOP) and higher headquarters (HQ) operation order (OPORD) are available. Simplified collective-protection equipment (SCPE) is on hand and/or field-expedient and natural shelters are available. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** Casualties are transported as soon as the tactical situation permits according to the TACSOP, the OPORD, the provisions of the Geneva Convention, and Field Manual (FM) 8-10-6. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The commander and leaders supervise the transport of casualties.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Monitored casualty transport operations for compliance with FM 8-10-6 and the TACSOP.</li> <li>b. Identified casualty collection points.</li> <li>c. Identified transport requirements.</li> <li>d. Supervised the preparation of casualties for transport.</li> <li>e. Coordinated the transport of casualties from the unit area with the higher HQ personnel element according to FM 8-10-6 and the TACSOP.</li> <li>f. Coordinated security requirements for the pickup site with subelements and the higher HQ operations element.</li> <li>g. Disseminated transport information to unit personnel.</li> <li>h. Forwarded Department of the Army (DA) Forms 1155 (Witness Statement on Individual) and 1156 (Casualty Feeder Report) to the higher HQ personnel element according to FM 12-6 and the TACSOP.</li> </ul> <p>2. Element personnel prepare casualties for transport.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Provided first aid treatment to casualties.</li> <li>b. Reported casualties.</li> <li>c. Collected classified documents, such as signal operation instructions (SOI), standing signal instructions (SSI), maps, overlays, and key lists.</li> <li>d. Secured the custody of organizational equipment according to the TACSOP.</li> <li>e. Forwarded casualty feeder reports to unit HQ according to the TACSOP.</li> </ul> <p>3. Element personnel transport casualties to casualty collection points using manual carries.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Selected the type of manual carry appropriate to the situation and the injury.</li> <li>b. Transported the casualty without causing further injury according to FM 8-10-6.</li> </ul> <p>4. Unit personnel transport casualties to casualty collection points using litter carries.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Identified the litter teams.</li> <li>b. Constructed an improvised litter from available material, as required.</li> <li>c. Secured the casualty on the litter.</li> <li>d. Transported the casualty without causing further injury according to FM 8-10-6.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>5. Element personnel transport casualties to a medical-treatment facility (MTF) using available vehicles.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Loaded the maximum number of casualties according to FM 8-10-6.</li> <li>b. Secured casualties in the vehicle.</li> <li>c. Transported casualties without causing further injury according to FM 8-10-6.</li> </ul> <p>* 6. The commander and leaders request an aeromedical evacuation.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Transmitted the request according to FM 8-10-6, the OPOD, and the TACSOP.</li> <li>b. Selected the landing site (which provides sufficient space for helicopter hover, landing, and take-off) according to FMs 8-10-6 and 3-21.38.</li> <li>c. Supervised the removal of all dangerous objects likely to be blown about before aircraft arrival.</li> <li>d. Supervised the security of the landing site according to the TACSOP.</li> <li>e. Ensured that the landing zone (LZ) was appropriately marked (such as, light sets and smoke) according to the TACSOP, if required.</li> </ul> <p>7. Element personnel assist in loading the ambulance.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Employed the proper carrying and loading techniques according to FM 8-10-6.</li> <li>b. Loaded casualties in the sequence directed by the crew.</li> <li>c. Loaded casualties without causing unnecessary discomfort.</li> <li>d. Employed safety procedures according to Army Regulation (AR) 385-10, FM 8-10-6, and the TACSOP.</li> <li>e. Employed environmental protection procedures according to AR 200-1 and the TACSOP.</li> </ul> <p>8. Element personnel transport chemically contaminated casualties.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Assumed MOPP4.</li> <li>b. Marked contaminated casualties according to the TACSOP.</li> <li>c. Notified the supporting MTF that contaminated casualties were en route to their location.</li> <li>d. Transported casualties directly to a designated decontamination and treatment station.</li> <li>e. Protected casualties from further contamination during transport.</li> </ul> <p>9. Unit personnel transport EPW casualties.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Maintained security of EPW casualties according to the TACSOP.</li> <li>b. Searched EPW casualties for weapons and ordnance before transport.</li> <li>c. Transported EPW casualties according to the provisions of the Geneva Convention and the TACSOP.</li> </ul>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.



**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
08-2-0314.05-T01A	Treat Unit Casualties (for Units With Medical Treatment Personnel)
12-1-0403.05-T01A	Report Casualties

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

- ELEMENTS:** Battalion Headquarters  
Company Headquarters  
S1 Section  
S2 Section  
S3 Section  
S4 Section  
Division Engineer Section  
Communications Section  
Battalion Maintenance Section  
Assault and Barrier Platoon Headquarters  
Survivability Section  
Mobility and Countermobility Section  
Combat Medical Section  
Three Brigade Engineer Sections  
Unit Ministry Section  
Food Services Section  
Command Section  
Maintenance Section  
Assault and Obstacle Platoon  
Food Service Section  
Unit Ministry Team  
Equipment Platoon Headquarters  
Combat Medic Section  
S2 and S3 Section  
Maintenance Platoon Headquarters  
Headquarters and Headquarters Company Maintenance Section  
The Army Maintenance Management System and Prescribed Load List Section  
Three Company Maintenance Teams  
Recovery Section  
Support Platoon Headquarters  
Transportation Section  
Unit Maintenance Section  
Direct-Support Maintenance Section  
Direct-Support Maintenance Supply Section  
Construction Platoon Headquarters  
Two General Construction Sections  
Dump Truck Section  
Treatment Team  
Ambulance Team  
Combat Medic Team  
Direct Support Maintenance Supply Section  
Two Engineer Platoons  
Six Engineer Squads  
Equipment Section

**TASK:** Conduct Battlefield Stress Reduction and Stress Prevention Procedures (08-2-R303.05-T01A)  
(FM 8-51) (FM 22-51)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)  
**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** Combat health support (CHS) operations have commenced. Element personnel are deployed in support of higher headquarters (HQ) operations. Leaders implement the sleep plan according to the tactical standing operating procedure (TACSOP) to manage battle fatigue (BF). Personnel have been cross-trained on critical tasks. Operations are continuous over a prolonged period, causing stressful

situations for personnel. The commander has directed that procedures for managing battlefield stress be implemented. Simplified collective-protection equipment (SCPE) is on hand or field-expedient and natural shelters are available. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The element applies techniques that counter battlefield stress. At mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4, performance degradation factors increase the need for stress prevention implementation. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in MOPP4.

**NOTE: Due to the technical knowledge and skills required to perform some military occupational specialty (MOS) specific tasks, caution must be exercised when cross-training personnel. For instance, nonmedical personnel cannot be cross-trained to perform MOS specific medical tasks.**

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* 1. The commander and leaders perform stress prevention actions.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Issued warning orders, operation orders (OPORDs), and fragmentary orders (FRAGOs) to the lowest possible level.</li> <li>b. Provided soldiers with an accurate assessment of the friendly and enemy situation.</li> <li>c. Briefed the leaders' intention to all unit personnel.</li> <li>d. Spoke positively concerning the unit missions, purpose, and abilities.</li> <li>e. Encouraged a positive attitude throughout the unit.</li> <li>f. Instituted an information dissemination plan designed to quell and prevent rumors.</li> <li>g. Informed personnel of the availability of religious support.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 2. The commander and leaders implement the sleep plan.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Provided a safe and secure area away from vehicles and other high-noise activities.</li> <li>b. Adjusted the sleep plan as dictated by the tactical situation.</li> <li>c. Enforced the sleep plan according to the TACSOP.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 3. Leaders implement task rotation or restructuring procedures.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Alternated cross-trained unit personnel on critical tasks, as required.</li> <li>b. Rotated unit personnel between demanding and nondemanding tasks.</li> <li>c. Assigned two soldiers to function independently on tasks requiring a high degree of accuracy.</li> <li>d. Adjusted task rotation policies and procedures to the tactical situation.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 4. Leaders implement stress coping and management techniques.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Integrated new unit members into the unit immediately.</li> <li>b. Assisted soldiers in resolving home front problems.</li> <li>c. Implemented a buddy system to observe signs of stress or BF among soldiers and leaders.</li> <li>d. Provided instruction on relaxation techniques to all personnel before deployment.</li> <li>e. Conducted after-action debriefings.</li> <li>f. Scheduled a critical-event debriefing after any traumatic event according to Field Manual (FM) 22-51.</li> <li>g. Conducted unit award, decoration, recognition, and memorial ceremonies.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 5. The commander and leaders implement stress control techniques.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Implemented a plan to deal with mild, seriously stressed, or BF cases.</li> <li>b. Assigned soldiers showing signs of severe stress or BF to simple tasks.</li> <li>c. Directed personnel to be supportive of stressed or BF soldiers.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
d. Referred soldiers showing signs of serious stress or BF to the supporting medical-treatment facility (MTF) for evaluation. e. Reintegrated return-to-duty soldiers into their specific element.  6. Element personnel employ stress prevention measures. a. Maintained a positive attitude concerning the unit mission, purpose, and abilities. b. Complied with the commander's sleep plan. c. Identified other soldiers with signs of stress or BF. d. Provided immediate buddy aid support. e. Reported signs of stress or BF in other soldiers to their immediate supervisor. f. Accepted new unit members immediately. g. Practiced relaxation techniques at appropriate times and places. h. Participated in buddy systems and after-action debriefings.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title
05-2-7008	Prepare an Operation Order (OPORD) (Company/Platoon)

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

- ELEMENTS:** Battalion Headquarters  
 Company Headquarters  
 Assault and Barrier Platoon Headquarters  
 Equipment Platoon Headquarters  
 Maintenance Platoon Headquarters  
 Headquarters and Headquarters Company Maintenance Section  
 Support Platoon Headquarters  
 Construction Platoon Headquarters  
 Two Engineer Platoons  
 Six Engineer Squads  
 Equipment Section

**TASK:** Perform Field Sanitation Functions (08-2-R315.05-T01A)  
 (FM 21-10) (AR 200-1) (AR 385-10)  
 (AR 40-5) (FM 4-25.12)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** Health hazards exist that require field sanitation measures. The element is in the field without permanent sanitation or water facilities. The commander has selected and trained the unit field sanitation team (FST). The combat health support (CHS) plan, the tactical standing operating procedure (TACSOP), and the higher headquarters (HQ) operation order (OPORD) are available. All required sanitation equipment is available. Field sanitation measures are continuous and are performed simultaneously with other operational tasks. Simplified collective-protection equipment (SCPE) is on hand and field-expedient and natural shelters are available. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The FST performs field sanitation measures according to the TACSOP, Field Manuals (FMs) 21-10 and 4-25.12, and the commander's guidance. At mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4, only minimum-essential field sanitation activities are performed. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in MOPP4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. The commander directs field sanitation measures. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Directed field sanitation activities to counter a medical threat.</li> <li>b. Monitored field sanitation activities for compliance with FMs 21-10 and 4-25.12 and the TACSOP.</li> <li>c. Enforced individual field sanitation measures.</li> <li>d. Requested assistance from the supporting preventive medicine (PVNTMED) element for sanitation problems that were beyond the expertise of the unit FST according to the TACSOP and the OPORD.</li> <li>e. Corrected field sanitation deficiencies.</li> <li>f. Reported field sanitation deficiencies that could not be corrected by unit personnel to the FST.</li> <li>g. Enforced safety procedures according to Army Regulation (AR) 385-10 and the TACSOP.</li> <li>h. Enforced environmental-protection procedures according to AR 200-1 and the TACSOP.</li> </ul> 2. The FST supervises the unit field sanitation measures. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Maintained the field sanitation basic load according to AR 40-5 and FM 4-25.12.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>b. Supervised the distribution of field sanitation basic-load items according to AR 40-5 and FM 4-25.12.</p> <p>c. Tested the unit water supply for the required chlorine residual level according to FM 4-25.12 and the TACSOP.</p> <p>d. Inspected water containers and trailers according to FM 4-25.12 and the TACSOP.</p> <p>e. Monitored personnel to ensure that they used personal protective measures (skin, clothing, and bed net repellent) against arthropods and rodents according to applicable directives and the commander's guidance.</p> <p>f. Conducted rodent surveys, as required.</p> <p>g. Monitored personnel for the employment of correct hygiene measures.</p> <p>h. Monitored waste facilities and procedures for compliance with AR 40-5, FM 4-25.12, and the TACSOP, as required.</p> <p>i. Inspected latrines and urinals according to FM 4-25.12 and the TACSOP.</p> <p>j. Inspected liquid and solid waste-disposal facilities for compliance with AR 40-5, FM 4-25.12, and the TACSOP.</p> <p>k. Inspected hand-washing devices according to FM 4-25.12 and the TACSOP.</p> <p>l. Inspected the transport, storage, preparation, and service of food for compliance with FM 4-25.12 and the TACSOP.</p> <p>m. Provided advice, recommendations, and training requirements to the commander.</p> <p>n. Enforced safety procedures according to AR 385-10 and the TACSOP.</p> <p>o. Enforced environmental-protection procedures according to AR 200-1 and the TACSOP.</p> <p>3. Unit personnel employ field sanitation measures.</p> <p>a. Maintained the prescribed load of water purification materials according to AR 40-5, FM 21-10, and the TACSOP.</p> <p>b. Prepared nonpotable water for personal use according to FM 21-10 and the TACSOP.</p> <p>c. Consumed only water designated as potable.</p> <p>d. Maintained latrines and hand-washing facilities according to FM 21-10 and the TACSOP.</p> <p>e. Employed preventive measures against cold and heat injuries.</p> <p>f. Employed personal-hygiene measures.</p> <p>g. Employed preventive measures against arthropod and rodent infestation, to include using skin, clothing, and bed net repellent.</p> <p>h. Reported field sanitation deficiencies to the FST.</p> <p>i. Employed safety procedures according to AR 385-10 and the TACSOP.</p> <p>j. Employed environmental-protection procedures according to AR 200-1 and the TACSOP.</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** Company Headquarters  
 Two General Construction Sections  
 Two Engineer Platoons  
 Six Engineer Squads  
 Equipment Section  
 Three Company Maintenance Teams

**TASK:** Perform Unit Graves Registration (GRREG) Operations (10-2-0318.05-T01A)  
 (FM 10-64) (FM 3-11.4) (FM 3-5)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)  
**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The element has sustained fatalities. The tactical situation permits GRREG operations to be performed. Some remains may be contaminated. The tactical standing operating procedure (TACSOP) is available. There are no GRREG personnel available; nonmortuary affairs personnel perform the task. The theater commander has authorized emergency burials. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The element recovers the killed in action (KIA) and evacuates them to a designated mortuary-affairs collection point or performs an emergency burial. Personal possessions are not lost. Locations of the emergency graves are recorded and reported to higher headquarters (HQ). These activities are curtailed in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in MOPP4.

**NOTE:** Only those tasks deemed mission-essential by the commander are performed in MOPP4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* 1. The element commander designates a search-and-recovery team.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Selected a team leader.</li> <li>b. Issued guidance.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 2. The search-and-recovery team leader prepares for the search.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Performed a map or aerial reconnaissance of the search area.</li> <li>b. Identified additional support requirements.</li> <li>c. Requested additional support requirements from higher HQ.</li> <li>d. Identified the search pattern to be used.</li> <li>e. Coordinated nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) and explosive ordnance disposal (EOD) assistance with higher HQ.</li> <li>f. Coordinated area security with higher HQ.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 3. The search-and-recovery team leader supervises the search-and-recovery and the evacuation operations.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Briefed the search-and-recovery team on operational procedures.</li> <li>b. Issued personal effects bags, human remains pouches (if available), and NBC agent tags.</li> <li>c. Assigned the search area.</li> <li>d. Monitored the search-and-recovery team operations for compliance with the TACSOP and the commander's guidance.</li> <li>e. Coordinated evacuation operations with higher HQ.</li> <li>f. Forwarded the situation report (SITREP) to higher HQ according to the TACSOP.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>		



TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>4. The search-and-recovery team conducts the search.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Checked the area for mines and booby traps immediately.</li> <li>Searched the assigned areas for remains and personal effects.</li> <li>Marked the terrain location of the remains with pegs.</li> <li>Collected all disassociated personal effects.</li> <li>Recorded the 8-digit grid coordinates of the recovery site.</li> </ol> <p>5. The search-and-recovery team recovers remains.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Established tentative identification.</li> <li>Attached the NBC tag or a tag marked with a large C to the contaminated and contagious remains.</li> <li>Attached personal effects to the remains.</li> <li>Shrouded the remains with available materials.</li> <li>Prepared a sketch of the recovery site.</li> <li>Prepared a map overlay of the recovery site.</li> </ol> <p>6. The search-and-recovery team evacuates remains.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Verified that personal effects were attached to the remains.</li> <li>Loaded the remains in ground transportation, feet first and in aircraft, headfirst.</li> <li>Transported the remains in a covered vehicle or aircraft to a designated mortuary-affair collection point.</li> </ol> <p>* 7. The search-and-recovery team leader supervises emergency burials.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Identified the specific burial site.</li> <li>Supervised the marking of the grave site.</li> <li>Supervised the burying of all recovered remains and their personal effects.</li> </ol> <p>8. The search-and-recovery team performs emergency burials.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Prepared the grave site.</li> <li>Placed the remains in the grave.</li> <li>Marked all grave sites.</li> <li>Buried the US, allied, and enemy forces remains with their personal effects in separate grave sites.</li> </ol>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

ARTEP 5-026-11-MTP

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENT:** Company Headquarters

**TASK:** Receive Airdrop Resupply (10-2-0319.05-T01A)  
 (FM 10-27-1) (FM 10-27-2) (FM 4-20.41)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** Since the normal supply support transportation is unavailable, supplies and equipment are requested by airdrop. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The company derigs and recovers supplies, equipment, and rigging gear. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

**NOTE:** An airdrop of supplies and equipment may be preplanned or immediate.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The element requests supplies and equipment by airdrop.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Identified the required supplies and equipment.</li> <li>b. Identified the drop zone (DZ).</li> <li>c. Determined the date and time of the airdrop request.</li> <li>d. Forwarded the request for a preplanned or immediate airdrop to the Supply Officer (US Army) (S4).</li> </ol> </li> <li>* 2. The element commander and leaders develop the airdrop supply and equipment receipt plan.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Designated a recovery officer and a safety officer.</li> <li>b. Verified the delivery time and location with the S4.</li> <li>c. Coordinated the survey of the DZ or area of operations (AO) with the pathfinders, the combat control team (CCT), or the DZ support team (DZST) through the Intelligence Officer (US Army) (S2) or the Operations and Training Officer (US Army) (S3).</li> <li>d. Prepared the recovery and alternate plans.</li> <li>e. Identified the number of people, equipment, and vehicles required for the recovery of supplies and equipment.</li> <li>f. Coordinated the transportation and materials-handling equipment (MHE) support with the S4.</li> <li>g. Briefed personnel on the tactical situation and the recovery and alternative plans.</li> </ol> </li> <li>3. The company receives supplies and equipment.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Secured the DZ or AO.</li> <li>b. Derigged supplies and equipment.</li> <li>c. Recorded shortages.</li> <li>d. Identified the damaged items.</li> <li>e. Evacuated supplies and equipment.</li> <li>f. Retrieved the airdrop rigging equipment.</li> <li>g. Buried or destroyed the airdrop rigging equipment that could not be removed.</li> <li>h. Inspected the DZ to make certain that no serviceable airdrop equipment was left behind.</li> </ol> </li> </ol>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
i. Forwarded the airdrop equipment to the nearest collection point or other location as directed by the S4. j. Forwarded the situation report (SITREP) to the S2 or S3 and the S4.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

- ELEMENTS:** Company Headquarters  
 S1 Section  
 S2 Section  
 S3 Section  
 S4 Section  
 Division Engineer Section  
 Communications Section  
 Battalion Maintenance Section  
 Assault and Barrier Platoon Headquarters  
 Survivability Section  
 Mobility and Countermobility Section  
 Combat Medical Section  
 Three Brigade Engineer Sections  
 Unit Ministry Section  
 Food Services Section  
 Maintenance Section  
 Assault and Obstacle Platoon  
 Food Service Section  
 Unit Ministry Team  
 Equipment Platoon Headquarters  
 Combat Medic Section  
 S2 and S3 Section  
 Maintenance Platoon Headquarters  
 Headquarters and Headquarters Company Maintenance Section  
 The Army Maintenance Management System and Prescribed Load List Section  
 Three Company Maintenance Teams  
 Recovery Section  
 Support Platoon Headquarters  
 Transportation Section  
 Unit Maintenance Section  
 Direct-Support Maintenance Section  
 Direct-Support Maintenance Supply Section  
 Construction Platoon Headquarters  
 Two General Construction Sections  
 Dump Truck Section  
 Treatment Team  
 Ambulance Team  
 Combat Medic Team  
 Direct Support Maintenance Supply Section  
 Two Engineer Platoons  
 Six Engineer Squads  
 Equipment Section

**TASK:** Provide a Field Cable or Wire System (11-5-0121.05-T01A)  
 (FM 24-19) (TC 24-20) (TM 11-5805-262-12)  
 (TM 11-5805-294-12)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The unit receives a fragmentary order (FRAGO) and a briefing on the size and shape of the facility or supported command post (CP), the location of each element, the required instruments, and the installation priority. Digital units have performed functionality checks, and systems are operational. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The internal communications network is set up according to the unit standing operating procedure (SOP) or the commander's guidance, and is operational by the time specified in the order. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The section leader prepares a telephone cable or wire installation plan.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Selected a wire route (based on a map study) that met the requirements of the tactical situation and was easy to construct and maintain.</li> <li>b. Selected the most direct primary and alternate wire routes after conducting a ground reconnaissance.</li> <li>c. Prepared an interim plan indicating the routes of the wire lines.</li> <li>d. Allocated the manpower and materials to accomplish the task.</li> <li>e. Prepared a telephone traffic diagram showing the number of telephone circuits in the communications system.</li> <li>f. Prepared a telephone directory according to the signal operation instructions (SOI) or the standing signal instructions (SSI). Included the names and numbers of the telephone system users.</li> </ul> <p>2. The section installs a telephone switchboard (SB).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Inspected the equipment for accountability and serviceability according to the packing list and the appropriate technical manual (TM). Used the end-item list if no packing list was available.</li> <li>b. Positioned the telephone SB on a flat surface, such as a table, packing box, or ledge in a foxhole, but not directly on the ground. Used a poncho, shelter half, or canvas to protect the SB from adverse elements.</li> <li>c. Laid the SB on its side with the nameplate up.</li> <li>d. Grounded the equipment using proper grounding techniques according to the appropriate TM.</li> <li>e. Performed SB preoperation procedures according to the appropriate TM.</li> <li>f. Labeled the SB according to the traffic diagram.</li> <li>g. Connected the local and trunk wire lines.</li> </ul> <p>3. The section installs internal wiring and telephones.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Installed the distribution box.</li> <li>b. Tested the field cable or wire before installing.</li> <li>c. Laid the field wire and installed telephones according to the priority established by the communications section leader.</li> <li>d. Secured the field wire at all the starting points and at any changes of direction to reduce the strain.</li> <li>e. Used proper hardware (anything that did not cut or damage the wire) and ties (basket hitch, loop knot, clove hitch, or drop loop) for hanging tension bridges and securing points.</li> <li>f. Tagged the wire ties.</li> <li>g. Used the terrain and vegetation to enhance concealment.</li> <li>h. Ensured that all overhead wire construction met clearance requirements of at least 5.5 meters above secondary roads and 7.2 meters above primary roads.</li> <li>i. Finished the line route map indicating the routes of wire lines, SBs, switching centrals, and test stations; the number of circuits along a route; and the type of wire construction.</li> </ul> <p>4. The section operates the telephone SB.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Tested the SB to ensure that it was operational.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
b. Used the turning hand-ringing generator on the telephone (TA 312/PT) to terminate and ring off circuits as they became available to called parties. c. Processed calls. d. Updated the traffic diagram, as required. e. Performed operator preventive-maintenance checks and services (PMCS) on the SB according to the appropriate TM.  5. The section performs PMCS on the field cable or wire lines. a. Maintained a 20 percent slack in the field cable or wire lines. b. Kept all wire splices and cable locks clear of standing water.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
05-3-5230	Perform Preventive Maintenance on Building Systems

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** Battalion Headquarters  
Company Headquarters  
S1 Section  
S2 Section  
S3 Section  
S4 Section  
Division Engineer Section  
Communications Section  
Battalion Maintenance Section  
Assault and Barrier Platoon Headquarters  
Survivability Section  
Mobility and Countermobility Section  
Combat Medical Section  
Three Brigade Engineer Sections  
Unit Ministry Section  
Food Services Section  
Command Section  
Maintenance Section  
Assault and Obstacle Platoon  
Food Service Section  
Unit Ministry Team  
Equipment Platoon Headquarters  
Combat Medic Section  
S2 and S3 Section  
Maintenance Platoon Headquarters  
Headquarters and Headquarters Company Maintenance Section  
The Army Maintenance Management System and Prescribed Load List Section  
Three Company Maintenance Teams  
Recovery Section  
Support Platoon Headquarters  
Transportation Section  
Unit Maintenance Section  
Direct-Support Maintenance Section  
Direct-Support Maintenance Supply Section  
Construction Platoon Headquarters  
Two General Construction Sections  
Dump Truck Section  
Treatment Team  
Ambulance Team  
Combat Medic Team  
Direct Support Maintenance Supply Section  
Two Engineer Platoons  
Six Engineer Squads  
Equipment Section

**TASK:** Handle Enemy Prisoners of War (EPWs) (19-3-3106.05-T01A)  
(FM 3-19.40) (AR 190-8) (DD FORM 2745)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)  
**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The enemy soldiers surrendered or were captured. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.



**TASK STANDARDS:** The capturing element takes charge of and evacuates the EPWs according to the unit standing operating procedure (SOP) and the search, silence, segregate, speed, safeguard, and tag (5 Ss and T) method. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The element searches the EPWs.               <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Removed weapons and documents that had intelligence value.</li> <li>b. Returned the personal items of no military intelligence value, such as protective clothing and equipment.</li> <li>c. Furnished receipts to the prisoners for their personal property that was taken.</li> </ol> </li> <li>2. The element segregates the EPWs.               <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Segregated the EPWs by rank, sex, desertion status, civilian status, nationality, and ideology.</li> <li>b. Turned the wounded EPWs over to the medical personnel for evacuation through the medical channels.</li> </ol> </li> <li>3. The element silences the EPWs.               <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Prevented the EPW leaders from giving orders.</li> <li>b. Prevented the EPWs from planning an escape.</li> <li>c. Did not talk in front of the EPWs except to issue orders and maintain discipline.</li> </ol> </li> <li>4. The element safeguards the EPWs.               <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Removed the EPWs from the dangers of the battlefield.</li> <li>b. Did not allow anyone to abuse the EPWs.</li> <li>c. Treated the EPWs humanely.</li> </ol> </li> <li>5. The element tags the EPWs with a Department of Defense (DD) Form 2745 (Enemy Prisoner of War [EPW] Capture Tag).               <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Annotated the date and time of the capture, the capturing unit, the grid coordinates of the capture, and the circumstances of the capture.</li> <li>b. Attached Part A to the EPWs.</li> <li>c. Retained Part B for the unit records.</li> <li>d. Attached Part C to the property.</li> </ol> </li> <li>6. The element speeds the EPWs to the rear.               <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Notified higher headquarters (HQ) that the company had EPWs.</li> <li>b. Removed the EPWs rearward to the nearest military police (MP) collecting point.</li> <li>c. Exploited the intelligence information.</li> </ol> </li> </ol>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
05-2-0018	Conduct Report Procedures

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** Battalion Headquarters  
 Company Headquarters  
 Two Engineer Platoons  
 Six Engineer Squads

**TASK:** Integrate Augmentation Support (05-1-0017)  
 (FM 5-100-15) (FM 3-34)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)  
**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The element is conducting missions in support of higher headquarters (HQ). The element is tasked with a mission that requires additional resources and augmentation support from nonorganic elements. Augmentation support is available. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The element determines the augmentation support necessary to accomplish the mission, submits the request immediately after the estimate process, and effects coordination and logistical support that provides for unhindered mission execution by the attached element. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. The element leader performs mission analysis and determines resource requirements and availability during the estimate process. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Determined the resources required to accomplish the mission.</li> <li>b. Determined the availability of organic resources.</li> <li>c. Included requirements for rations, maintenance, fuel, and lubricants to support augmentation element(s), to include shortfalls such as equipment maintenance.</li> </ul> 2. The element submits a request for augmentation support. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Requested augmentation support from higher HQ.</li> <li>b. Submitted the request immediately after the estimate process was complete.</li> <li>c. Included, as a minimum, the following information in the request.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Type of command support relationship.</li> <li>(2) Amount and type of personnel and equipment needed.</li> <li>(3) Length of time augmentation support is required.</li> <li>(4) Mission of the supported element.</li> <li>(5) Mission of the augmentation support element.</li> </ul> </li> </ul> 3. The element modifies the estimate process based on the actual augmentation support received. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Prioritized the missions for the supporting element.</li> <li>b. Established the coordination for logistical support based on the command support relationship, such as food, fuel, and maintenance.</li> </ul> 4. The coordinating element coordinates with the augmentation element. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Determined the operation order (OPORD) requirements.</li> <li>b. Determined the time and place for the liaison between the augmentation element and the supported element.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
5. The element receiving support monitors the supporting element. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Received personnel strength, maintenance status, mission status, and updates as required from the augmented element.</li> <li>b. Shifted assets as necessary.</li> <li>c. Visited the element to maintain high morale.</li> </ul> 6. The supported element— <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Provided the augmentee(s) with the subordinate unit work requirements.</li> <li>b. Accounted for equipment and personnel.</li> <li>c. Reported the status and disposition of supporting units personnel and equipment according to the unit standing operating procedures (SOP).</li> <li>d. Supervised the execution of the mission(s).</li> <li>e. Inspected the quality of the workmanship.</li> <li>f. Reported mission accomplishment to higher and receiving HQ.</li> </ul> 7. The augmented element releases the augmentee(s) back to their parent unit. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Reported departure of the augmentee element.</li> <li>b. Updated the augmented unit status.</li> </ul>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title
171-145-0004	Prepare/Send Logistical Status Reports Using FBCB2

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title
05-1-0081	Prepare an Operation Order (OPORD)
05-2-0018	Conduct Report Procedures
05-6-0002	Prepare an Engineer Estimate
12-2-0338.05-T01A	Maintain Troop Morale and Combat Capability

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** Company Headquarters  
 Assault and Barrier Platoon Headquarters  
 Assault and Obstacle Platoon  
 Mobility and Countermobility Section

**TASK:** Plan and Control Tactical Obstacles (05-2-2013)  
 (FM 90-7) (FM 20-32)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)  
**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The element is providing support to a maneuver task force (TF). The TF is preparing for defensive operations. Obstacle and survivability plans are approved. The element leader has task-organized the engineer assets needed to emplace directed obstacles. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The obstacles are correctly sited, built to standard, and handed over to maneuver forces according to the established timelines. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* 1. The element leader conducts a mission analysis.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Determined the facts and developed assumptions.</li> <li>b. Analyzed higher headquarters (HQ) mission and the commander's intent.</li> <li>c. Analyzed the relative combat power.</li> <li>d. Issued the commander's guidance.</li> </ul> </li> <li>2. The element develops a course of action (COA).                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Conducted a fires analysis.</li> <li>b. Developed an obstacle intent integration.</li> <li>c. Directed obstacle priorities.</li> </ul> </li> <li>3. The element conducts a COA analysis.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Analyzed enemy reactions at obstacle groups versus the desired obstacle effect.</li> <li>b. Planned obstacle locations that inhibit friendly maneuver.</li> <li>c. Determined compatible obstacle effects and weapon system capabilities.</li> <li>d. Planned adequate fire control measures to support obstacle effect.</li> </ul> </li> <li>4. The element war-games and adjusts the COA.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Changed locations of the directed obstacle groups, if required.</li> <li>b. Changed the obstacle effect at a specific location, if required.</li> <li>c. Identified other mobility requirements, if required.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 5. The element leader issues the decision and execution guidance.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Issued a scheme-of-obstacles overlay.</li> <li>b. Issued an obstacle execution matrix.                                     <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Assigned the zone, belt, or group designation and individual obstacle numbers.</li> <li>(2) Provided the location, grid coordinates or a center of mass grid for the group, start and end points of the group trace, or grid coordinates for individual obstacles, if known.</li> <li>(3) Identified effects of the obstacle group.</li> <li>(4) Provided priorities for the obstacle group.</li> </ul> </li> </ul> </li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
(5) Assigned the emplacing and owning unit. (6) Provided the location of any lanes and closure instructions or reference to a reserve obstacle matrix, if appropriate. (7) Allocated materials or assets for the group. (8) Assigned the location of obstacle materials (Class IV and Class V point or other site).  * 6. The element leader supervises an obstacle emplacement. a. Ensured that fire support targets were refined. b. Coordinated for critical friendly zones (CFZs). c. Coordinated for air defense artillery (ADA) coverage. d. Coordinated the linkups between the engineer elements and the supported units. e. Briefed higher HQs on the intent of the obstacle group, to include a tentative obstacle group design. f. Informed higher HQs on the type of mine distribution method to use. g. Provided higher HQs with a timeline for countermobility efforts. h. Coordinated for maneuver support to assist in the obstacle emplacement.  7. The element command post (CP) monitors the obstacle emplacement. a. Monitored the progress, reported the status, and adjusted the execution matrix, as required. b. Tracked the turnover of completed obstacles to the overwatching maneuver units.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title
052-192-2083	Perform Troubleshooting Procedures on a Volcano
052-192-3125	Direct a Row Minefield Siting Party

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title
05-1-0006	Integrate Engineer Elements Into the Fire Support (FS) Planning Process
05-2-0100	Coordinate the Synchronization and Integration of Fire Support (FS)
05-2-2012	Provide Support for Countermobility Operations

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** Company Headquarters  
 S3 Section  
 Assault and Barrier Platoon Headquarters  
 Mobility and Countermobility Section  
 S2 and S3 Section  
 Maintenance Platoon Headquarters  
 Support Platoon Headquarters  
 Two Engineer Platoons  
 Six Engineer Squads  
 Equipment Section

**TASK:** Prepare an Operation Order (OPORD) (Company/Platoon) (05-2-7008)  
 (FM 5-71-2) (FM 101-5-2) (FM 1-02)  
 (FM 5-34)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 (Circle)  
**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The unit is performing tactical operations. The unit receives a new mission that requires the preparation of an OPORD. The unit may or may not be linked to a task force (TF) or part of a tactical operations center (TOC). This task should not be trained in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The OPORD follows the intent of the commander, is understandable, and contains all of the information necessary to accomplish the mission. The development and issuance of the OPORD follows the one-third, two-thirds rule.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The element leader is given a mission from a higher headquarters (HQ). The element leader must prepare and present an OPORD to subordinate elements.</p> <p>* 2. The element leader addresses the situation.</p> <p>a. Briefed the element on the enemy forces.</p> <p>(1) Included important terrain characteristics and the significance to the unit and mission (observation and fields of fire, avenues of approach, key terrain, obstacles and movement, and cover and concealment [OAKOC]).</p> <p>(2) Included advantages and disadvantages to the enemy and friendly maneuver and engineer operations.</p> <p>(3) Included light data and expected weather and the impact they can have on the operation.</p> <p>b. Briefed the enemy composition, disposition, and strength two levels down.</p> <p><b>NOTE: If a company level unit is preparing the OPORD, the leader issuing the order would brief the enemy paragraph to cover the enemy squad level.</b></p> <p>(1) Focused on the enemy the element will fight, adjacent enemy units in the area of operations, and those units that could reinforce an enemy attack or defense.</p> <p>(2) Briefed the type of enemy unit; how it is equipped; and its designation, location, size, and strength.</p> <p><b>NOTE: When briefing enemy strengths, use specific numbers.</b></p> <p>(3) Briefed the pertinent and current enemy activities.</p> <p>(4) Briefed the known and templated enemy locations and activities.</p> <p>c. Briefed the enemy capabilities.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>(1) Briefed their combat capabilities (range and orientation of direct/indirect fires; counterattack forces; reserves; nuclear, biological, and chemical [NBC]; and ability to reposition).</p> <p>(2) Briefed their mobility, countermobility, and survivability capabilities.</p> <p><b>NOTE: This includes amount, type, location, expected employment of breaching assets, tactical and protective obstacles, and scatterable mines and the expected fortification for vehicles and infantry.</b></p> <p>d. Briefed the enemy intentions.</p> <p>(1) Included the most probable course of enemy action and the most dangerous course of action.</p> <p>(2) Included the probable enemy reaction to an attack or defense and the expected employment of mobility, countermobility, and survivability assets.</p> <p>(3) Included critical enemy events that the element should look for during an engagement.</p> <p><b>NOTE: A sand table, map(s), sketches, or other visual aids should be used to brief when possible.</b></p> <p>e. Briefed the element on friendly forces.</p> <p>(1) Briefed the mission of higher HQ.</p> <p>(a) Included the mission and intent of the commanders two levels up.</p> <p>(b) Included the TF mission, the TF commander's intent, and the scheme of maneuver/concept of the operation.</p> <p><b>NOTE: The friendly forces briefing should be complete enough that the element understands the indirect-fire plan and maneuver plans of the supported unit.</b></p> <p>(c) Included the scheme of engineer operations (SOEO) to support the maneuver unit scheme of maneuver.</p> <p>(2) Briefed the element on adjacent units.</p> <p>(a) Identified the maneuver missions/events/forces of adjacent units as they affect a supported unit and an engineer element mission, and included specifics of adjacent engineer units, if appropriate.</p> <p>(b) Identified units on the flanks, to the front, and, possibly, the rear.</p> <p>(3) Briefed the element on attachments and detachments and specified when they became effective.</p> <p><b>NOTE: Do not include this subparagraph if the attached/detached units are clear in the task organization briefed in the beginning of the OPORD. If the attachment(s) are from/to the engineer element, it should be included in the brief.</b></p> <p>* 3. The element leader addresses the mission.</p> <p>a. Presented a clear concise statement of the element mission.</p> <p>b. Included who, what, when, where, and why.</p> <p>* 4. The element leader addresses the execution.</p> <p>a. Briefed the intent of the element leader.</p> <p>(1) Presented a clear, concise statement of what the force must do to succeed, with respect to the enemy and the terrain, to the desired end state.</p> <p>(2) Provided a link between the mission and the concept of the operation by stating key tasks that, with the mission, are the basis for subordinates to exercise an initiative when unanticipated opportunities arise or when the original concept no longer applies.</p> <p>b. Briefed the concept of the operation.</p> <p>(1) Briefed concisely and was understandable.</p>		



TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>(2) Described the employment of subordinate elements, the integration of other elements or systems within the operation, and other aspects of the operation that the element leader considered appropriate to clarify the concept and unity of effort.</p> <p><b>NOTE: Depending on the operation, the following subparagraphs may be required within the concept of the operation.</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Maneuver.</li> <li>2. Fires.</li> <li>3. Engineer.</li> <li>4. Air Defense.</li> </ol> <p>c. Tasked to subordinate units.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Listed specific tasks and purposes to subunits under control of the element.</li> <li>(2) Briefed the subunits in the same order as the task organization.</li> <li>(3) Briefed missions/tasks common to two or more subunits in the coordinating instructions.</li> </ol> <p>d. Instructed element(s) on reporting requirements, tasks, and instructions for coordination common to two or more subunits within the element.</p> <p><b>NOTE: Do not include standing operating procedure (SOP) items unless required for emphasis or they are a change from the normal SOP.</b></p> <p><b>As a minimum, include:</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Reference to obstacle-execution or survivability matrixes.</li> <li>2. Commander's critical-information requirements (CCIR).</li> <li>3. Operational exposure guidance (OEG).</li> <li>4. Mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) status level.</li> <li>5. Air defense warning and weapons control status.</li> <li>6. Directed coordination between subunits or adjacent units.</li> <li>7. Sleep plan.</li> <li>8. Priorities of work.</li> <li>9. Lane marking system.</li> <li>10. Obstacle restrictions, belts, or zones that can have an effect.</li> <li>11. Rehearsals.</li> <li>12. Rules of engagement (ROE).</li> <li>13. Environmental considerations.</li> <li>14. Instructions on consolidation and reorganization.               <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Briefed the time or condition in which the order became effective; the CCIR; the priority intelligence requirements (PIR); the friendly force information requirements (FFIR); risk reduction control measures specific to the operation; the ROE; and the environmental considerations.</li> <li>(2) Issued the coordinating instructions subparagraph as the last paragraph within the execution paragraph.</li> </ol> </li> </ol> <p>* 5. The element leader addresses service support.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Briefed the combat service support (CSS) plan for the before, during, and after operations.</li> <li>b. Designated primary and backup channels for logistical support for all subunits.</li> <li>c. Identified and briefed the type of resupply/logistics package (LOGPAC) to be used and locations of resupply points and times.</li> </ol> <p><b>NOTE: If operational graphics are provided to subunits, a CSS brief is not needed if it provides the same information that would be given in the briefing.</b></p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>d. Briefed material and service issues.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Outlined the allocations of command-regulated materials.</li> <li>(2) Stated the services available to the elements through the higher HQ or supported unit.</li> <li>(3) Identified any special allowances/plans made for sustaining special engineer equipment or forces.</li> </ul> <p>e. Briefed supply issues.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Listed the basic loads the element will maintain.</li> <li>(2) Listed the method of obtaining supplies if different from the support concept. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) Class I. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Ration cycle.</li> <li>2. Basic load the element will maintain (days of supply).</li> </ul> </li> <li>(b) Class III. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Refueling times and locations.</li> <li>2. Location of emergency Class III.</li> </ul> </li> <li>(c) Class IV. Allocation, location, quantity, and type of barrier materials available.</li> <li>(d) Class V. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Allocation of basic-load small arms.</li> <li>2. Allocation of basic demolitions.</li> <li>3. Type of mine resupply to be used.</li> <li>4. Location, type, and amount of emergency.</li> <li>5. Reload plans for mechanical mine dispensing systems.</li> <li>6. Any additional special purpose munitions (if used must specify purpose, priority allocation and restrictions).</li> </ul> </li> <li>(e) Class VIII. Availability and location of medical resupplies.</li> <li>(f) Class IX. Allocation and location of critical repair parts.</li> <li>(g) Other classes of supply as necessary.</li> </ul> </li> </ul> <p>f. Briefed maintenance issues.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Briefed the location of maintenance and recovery support.</li> <li>(2) Identified the maintenance priorities by vehicle, unit, or a combination of both.</li> <li>(3) Identified the authority for controlled substitution.</li> </ul> <p>g. Briefed the medical evacuation.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Identified the wounded in action medical evacuation plan, to include primary and alternate pick up zones.</li> <li>(2) Identified locations to transfer casualties if not by medical evacuation (MEDEVAC).</li> <li>(3) Identified evacuation plans for NBC contaminated soldiers and equipment.</li> </ul> <p>h. Briefed the personnel support.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Enemy prisoners of war (EPWs) handling.</li> <li>(2) Mail.</li> <li>(3) Religious services.</li> <li>(4) Graves registration.</li> </ul> <p>i. Briefed civilian and military personnel, and identified engineer supplies, services, or equipment provided by the host nation (HN).</p> <p>* 6. The element leader addresses command and signal.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Briefed the command. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Identified key leader locations during each phase of the operation.</li> <li>(2) Briefed the location of the command and control (C2) node during each phase of the operation.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
(3) Briefed the succession of command that supports the continuity of command during battle. b. Briefed signal. (1) Briefed communications/signal peculiarities for the operation (specific code words). (2) Briefed visual/audio signals critical to the battle or for emergency use. (3) Briefed the signal operation instructions (SOI) index and when radio silence is in effect. (4) Briefed the method for communications and priority, frequency-modulated (FM) nets that the element leader wants the subunits to use to simplify C2.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5		TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title
052-238-4508	Prepare a Diving-Mission Operation Order (OPORD)
071-326-5626	Prepare an Oral Operation Order

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title
05-1-6000	Identify Geospatial Support Requirements
05-1-6001	Request a Standard Geospatial Product
05-1-6002	Request Nonstandard Geospatial Products
05-2-6007	Identify Terrain Information Requirements
05-4-1372	Disseminate Terrain Information Product
05-4-1376	Perform a Geospatial Collection Effort
05-6-0088	Coordinate Geospatial Operations

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** Battalion Headquarters  
Company Headquarters  
S1 Section  
S2 Section  
S3 Section  
S4 Section  
Division Engineer Section  
Communications Section  
Battalion Maintenance Section  
Assault and Barrier Platoon Headquarters  
Survivability Section  
Mobility and Countermobility Section  
Combat Medical Section  
Three Brigade Engineer Sections  
Unit Ministry Section  
Food Services Section  
Command Section  
Maintenance Section  
Assault and Obstacle Platoon  
Food Service Section  
Unit Ministry Team  
Equipment Platoon Headquarters  
Combat Medic Section  
S2 and S3 Section  
Maintenance Platoon Headquarters  
Headquarters and Headquarters Company Maintenance Section  
The Army Maintenance Management System and Prescribed Load List Section  
Three Company Maintenance Teams  
Recovery Section  
Support Platoon Headquarters  
Transportation Section  
Unit Maintenance Section  
Direct-Support Maintenance Section  
Direct-Support Maintenance Supply Section  
Construction Platoon Headquarters  
Two General Construction Sections  
Dump Truck Section  
Treatment Team  
Ambulance Team  
Combat Medic Team  
Direct Support Maintenance Supply Section  
Two Engineer Platoons  
Six Engineer Squads  
Equipment Section

**TASK:** Establish and Operate a Single-Channel Voice Radio Net (11-3-0214.05-T01A)  
(FM 24-18) (FM 24-1) (FM 24-19)  
(FM 24-33)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The element is tactically deployed and must establish the communications network. Digital units have performed functionality checks, and systems are operational. The operators have been briefed and issued extracts from the signal operation instructions (SOI), the signal supplemental instructions

(SSI), the numerical cipher, the authenticated system, the operations codes, and the brevity lists. Situational hazards exist, such as nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) conditions; opposing forces (OPFOR); electronic warfare (EW); and directional-finding ability. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The operators establish and enter a radio net no later than the time prescribed in the operation order (OPORD) or the operation plan (OPLAN). Digital units send and receive reports using frequency-modulated (FM) or digital means. The net is not compromised. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Radio operators install a radio set for operation.               <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Secured radios in the mount.</li> <li>b. Connected audio accessories.</li> <li>c. Installed antennas.</li> <li>d. Performed before-operation, preventive-maintenance checks and services (PMCS).</li> <li>e. Performed radio operational checks.</li> </ol> </li> <li>2. Radio operators make initial entry into the nets.               <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Obtained appropriate call signs, suffixes, and frequencies from the SOI or SSI.</li> <li>b. Entered a radio net.</li> <li>c. Authenticated when challenged by the net control station (NCS).</li> </ol> </li> <li>3. Radio operators recognize frequency interference.               <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Recognized jamming or interference.</li> <li>b. Determined if the interference was internal or external.</li> <li>c. Determined if the interference was intentional or unintentional.</li> </ol> </li> <li>4. Radio operators initiate prescribed electronic counter-countermeasures (ECCM).               <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Continued to operate.</li> <li>b. Increased the transmit power.</li> <li>c. Tuned the receiver for max signal.</li> <li>d. Relocated the antenna.</li> <li>e. Requested a change of frequency.</li> <li>f. Reported suspected jamming to the immediate supervisor.</li> <li>g. Submitted meaconing, intrusion, jamming, and interference (MIJI) feeder reports.</li> </ol> </li> <li>5. Radio operators employ preventive ECCM and radio procedures.               <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Used communications security (COMSEC) equipment (secure), if available (transmission security [TSEC]/KY-38 or TSEC/KY-57).</li> <li>b. Loaded the appropriate key variables using KYK-13 or KOI-15.</li> <li>c. Operated only approved radiotelephone procedures as required by the SOI/SSI.</li> <li>d. Encrypted and decrypted grid coordinates using the SOI/SSI (not necessary in secure voice operation).</li> <li>e. Ensured that the length was not more than 20 seconds per transmission and that the number of transmissions was at a minimum.</li> <li>f. Operated on the lowest power setting required to communicate with desired stations.</li> <li>g. Employed the correct call signs and frequencies.</li> <li>h. Observed periods of radio-listening silence.</li> <li>i. Complied with net discipline.</li> </ol> </li> </ol>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title
43-2-0001.05-T01A	Conduct Unit Level Maintenance Operations

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

- ELEMENTS:** Battalion  
 Battalion Headquarters  
 Company Headquarters  
 S1 Section  
 S2 Section  
 S3 Section  
 S4 Section  
 Division Engineer Section  
 Communications Section  
 Battalion Maintenance Section  
 Assault and Barrier Platoon Headquarters  
 Survivability Section  
 Mobility and Countermobility Section  
 Combat Medical Section  
 Three Brigade Engineer Sections  
 Unit Ministry Section  
 Food Services Section  
 Section  
 Command Section  
 Maintenance Section  
 Assault and Obstacle Platoon  
 Food Service Section  
 Unit Ministry Team  
 Equipment Platoon Headquarters  
 Combat Medic Section  
 S2 and S3 Section  
 Maintenance Platoon Headquarters  
 Headquarters and Headquarters Company Maintenance Section  
 The Army Maintenance Management System and Prescribed Load List Section  
 Three Company Maintenance Teams  
 Recovery Section  
 Support Platoon Headquarters  
 Transportation Section  
 Unit Maintenance Section  
 Direct-Support Maintenance Section  
 Direct-Support Maintenance Supply Section  
 Construction Platoon Headquarters  
 Two General Construction Sections  
 Dump Truck Section  
 Treatment Team  
 Ambulance Team  
 Combat Medic Team  
 Direct Support Maintenance Supply Section  
 Two Engineer Platoons  
 Six Engineer Squads  
 Equipment Section

**TASK:** Install, Operate, and Maintain a Single-Channel, Ground and Airborne Radio System (SINCGARS) Frequency Hopping (FH) Net (11-5-1102.05-T01A)

(FM 24-19) (FM 20-3) (FM 24-18)  
 (FM 24-33) (FM 24-35)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)  
**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The team has been briefed and given extracts from the signal operation instructions (SOI) and the signal supplemental instructions (SSI), the appropriate loading devices with keys, a radio net diagram, maps, and grid coordinates. Subtasks 1 through 4 are done in the motor pool or staging area before going to the field location. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The SINCGARS radio sets are operational according to the tactical standing operating procedure (TACSOP) and the operation plan (OPLAN) or operation order (OPORD). The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The supervisor checks all radios for completeness and operability.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensured that the vehicular and manpack systems were assembled correctly.</li> </ul> <p><b>WARNING: HIGH VOLTAGES EXIST AT CONNECTOR J1 ON THE MOUNTING ADAPTER. ENSURE THAT J1 IS COVERED OR CAPPED WHEN NOT IN USE.</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>b. Ensured that the operator logged the amp hours (manpack system only).</li> <li>c. Ensured that preventive-maintenance checks and services (PMCS) were completed.</li> </ul> <p>* 2. The supervisor selects the site.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Selected primary and alternate locations within the general site.</li> <li>b. Established and maintained camouflage discipline.</li> <li>c. Ensured that the location provided effective use of the terrain in an electronic warfare (EW) environment.</li> <li>d. Ensured that the location avoided interference from power lines and other friendly sources of frequency interference.</li> </ul> <p>3. Net members perform pre-mission checks for a SINCGARS FH cold-start net opening.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Performed before-operation PMCS.</li> <li>b. Loaded the transmission security key (TSK) using MX-10579 or MS-18290 (nonintegrated communications security [non-ICOM] only).</li> <li>c. Loaded the hop set using MX-18290 (integrated communications security [ICOM] only).</li> <li>d. Loaded the traffic encryption key (TEK) using KYK-13.</li> </ul> <p>4. The net control station (NCS) performs pre-mission checks for the SINCGARS FH cold-start net opening.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Performed preoperational PMCS.</li> <li>b. Loaded the TSK and the hop set using MX-10579 or MX18290 (non-ICOM only).</li> <li>c. Loaded the hop set using MX-18290 (ICOM only).</li> <li>d. Loaded the TEK using KYK-13.</li> <li>e. Loaded the FH sync-time according to the SOI/SSI.</li> <li>f. Loaded the cue frequency.</li> <li>g. Directed the alternate NCS to load the cue frequency, as required.</li> <li>h. Changed the net identification according to the SOI/SSI.</li> </ul> <p>5. The NCS opens the net.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Issued the net call in the secure mode on the MAN channel.</li> <li>b. Issued and sent the electronic countercountermeasures [ECCM] electronic remote fill (ERF) instructions.</li> <li>c. Set the channel switch to the hop set channel and issued the net call.</li> <li>d. Opened the net.</li> </ul>		



TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>e. Reset the channel switch to MAN and called the missing net members.  f. Repeated the cold start.  g. Set the FCTN switch to SQ ON.</p> <p>6. Net members enter the net.  a. Responded in the correct sequence to the net call.  b. Stored the ERF, set the channel switch to the hop set channel, reset the channel switch to MAN, and set the FCTN switch to SQ ON.  c. Responded in sequence to the NCS call.  d. Reset the channel switch to MAN and the FCTN switch to LO if the member missed the ERF or heard no communications on the hop set channel.  e. Responded in sequence to the NCS call.</p> <p>7. Net members perform the late net entry (LNE), cue, and ERF method.  a. Performed pre-mission checks for an FH cold start.  b. Loaded the cue frequency according to the SOI/SSI.  c. Initiated the cue call.  d. Reported into the net.  e. Switched to the MAN channel and conducted the cold-start net opening.</p> <p>8. Net members use proper radio procedures.  a. Kept the length and the number of transmissions to a minimum.  b. Used the lowest power setting required to communicate.  c. Used authorized call signs and frequencies.  d. Observed periods of radio-listening silence.  e. Operated on a random schedule.  f. Adhered to net discipline.</p> <p>9. Team members recognize different types of interference.  a. Checked the RT signal (SIG) display when it was not transmitting.  <b>NOTE: If the display was constantly or intermittently higher than 1, then the members disconnected the antenna to determine if the interference was internal or external.</b>  b. Initiated the ECCM for external symptoms.</p> <p>10. Team members initiate ECCM actions.  a. Continued to operate.  b. Did not disclose the effectiveness of the jamming in the clear.  c. Reduced the transmission speed.  d. Increased the transmitter power.  e. Relocated the antenna.  f. Prepared and forwarded a meaconing, intrusion, jamming, and interference (MIJI) feeder report to the supervisor in the United States message text format (USMTF).</p> <p>11. Team members extend the range of the radio station.  a. Inspected the OE-254 for serviceability.  b. Installed the OE-254 antenna using the team method.  c. Accomplished the transaction from the whip antenna to the OE-254 without unnecessary interruption of service.</p> <p>12. The retransmission team establishes a retransmission site.  a. Installed and connected the OE-254 antennas.  b. Performed preoperational PMCS.  c. Loaded the CMD NET MAN frequency in radio C.  d. Loaded the CMD NET MAN and cue frequencies in radio D.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>e. Loaded the TSK and the TEK into both radios (non-ICOM only).                      f. Loaded the hop set and the TEK into both radios (ICOM only).                      g. Cued the LNE using radio D.                      h. Stored the ERF into both radios.                      i. Changed radio D to RTS MAN and cue frequencies and TRS net ID.                      j. Set the FCTN switches of radios C and D to RXMT.</p> <p>13. Team members initiate the net radio interface (NRI) call.                      a. Called the NRI operator on the NRI hop set channel, or initiated a cue call on the net control interface (NCI) cue channel, as required.                      b. Switched to NRI MAN channel.                      c. Established communications on the NRI hop set channel.                      d. Identified the telephone subscriber by call sign or telephone number.</p> <p>14. Team members maintain the SINGGARS radio net.                      a. Performed PMCS, as required.                      b. Performed fault isolation, as required.                      c. Performed user-level maintenance, as required.                      d. Evacuated the faulty equipment, as required.                      e. Completed the necessary entries in the maintenance record.                      f. Reported all uncorrected deficiencies to the immediate supervisor.</p> <p>15. The NCS closes the net.                      a. Called the net and issued closedown instructions.                      b. Acknowledged the net members.                      c. Received acknowledgement in the correct sequence.                      d. Performed after-operation PMCS.</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
05-3-5230	Perform Preventive Maintenance on Building Systems

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

- ELEMENTS:** Company Headquarters  
 Mobility and Countermobility Section  
 Equipment Platoon Headquarters  
 Maintenance Platoon Headquarters  
 Headquarters and Headquarters Company Maintenance Section  
 Three Company Maintenance Teams  
 Support Platoon Headquarters  
 Construction Platoon Headquarters  
 Two General Construction Sections  
 Treatment Team  
 Two Engineer Platoons

**TASK:** Maintain Platoon Strength (12-3-0001.05-T01A)  
 (FM 12-6) (DA FORM 1155) (DA FORM 1156)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)  
**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** Casualties have occurred and replacements are arriving. A lull in the battle has occurred. The digital units have performed functionality checks, and systems are operational. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** A personnel status report (PSR), which accounts for all platoon personnel, is provided daily or as required. The digital units send and receive reports and orders using frequency-modulated (FM) or digital means. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Element members take immediate action.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Performed first aid on wounded soldiers.</li> <li>b. Requested medical aid, as needed.</li> </ol> </li> <li>* 2. Element leaders report the personnel status of the squad.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Accounted for all assigned or attached personnel.</li> <li>b. Prepared Department of the Army (DA) Form 1156 (Casualty Feeder Report) for killed or wounded soldiers (the body is under United States [US] control).</li> <li>c. Prepared DA Form 1155 (Witness Statement on Individual) for captured or missing soldiers (the body is not under US control).</li> <li>d. Forwarded reports and completed forms to the company command post (CP).</li> </ol> </li> <li>* 3. The element leader or platoon sergeant processes strength information.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Recorded the situation report (SITREP) and other personnel information.</li> <li>b. Directed cross leveling to fill critical position openings caused by casualties.</li> <li>c. Consolidated squad personnel reports.</li> <li>d. Collected DA Forms 1155 and 1156.</li> <li>e. Updated the battle roster and the strength-accountability system of the platoon.</li> <li>f. Determined critical replacement requirements.</li> <li>g. Prepared the strength report.</li> </ol> </li> </ol>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 4. The element leader or platoon sergeant processes replacements.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Briefed replacements on the mission, tactical situation, platoon policies and procedures, specific duties, and site or platoon orientation.</li> <li>b. Entered the names of soldiers onto the platoon accountability system or battle roster.</li> <li>c. Inspected soldiers for combat critical clothing and equipment.</li> <li>d. Arranged for the issue of missing required items of combat critical clothing and equipment.</li> <li>e. Implemented the buddy system.</li> <li>f. Arranged for the movement of soldiers to assignments.</li> </ul> <p>* 5. The element leader or platoon sergeant reports the personnel status.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Forwarded completed DA Forms 1155 and 1156.</li> <li>b. Transmitted the strength report and other requested personnel information.</li> </ul>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

## CHAPTER 6

### External Evaluation

6-1. General. An external evaluation is used to assess the ability of the unit to perform its mission. Units may modify this evaluation based on the METT-TC and other considerations as deemed appropriate by the commander. Selected T&EOs from Chapter 5 that involve the total unit and employ a realistic OPFOR and the MILES are used for the evaluation. At the completion of the evaluation, the commander can identify the unit strengths and weaknesses. These strengths and weaknesses are the basis for future training and resource allocations.

6-2. Preparing the Evaluation. The commander must standardize evaluation procedures to accurately measure unit capabilities. Table 6-1 is a sample evaluation scenario. Evaluation scenarios contain the appropriate tasks necessary to develop and execute the evaluation. Figure 4-1 is a graphic representation of the scenario. Selective tailoring is required because it is not possible to evaluate every task. Procedures for developing the evaluation are discussed below.

**Table 6-1. Sample Evaluation Scenario**

Event	Action	Proposed Time Frame	Estimated Time Allotted
1	Conduct Preevaluation Operations	Before start time	
2	Conduct Troop-Leading Procedures		
3	Issue a Road March Order	Day 1 - 0200 hours	2 hours
4	Conduct a Tactical Road March	0400 hours	5 hours
5	Occupy an AA	0900 hours	3 hours
<b>Module 1</b>			
6	Receive a WO	1200 hours	2 hours
7	Support Combat Operations (Mobility)		
8	Conduct Unit Support Operations		
9	Perform Unit Maintenance Operations		
10	Conduct Administrative Operations		
11	Conduct Intelligence Operations		
<b>Module 2</b>			
12	Conduct Unit Support Operations	Day 2 - 1400 hours	
13	Receive a WO		
14	Support Combat Operations (Countermobility)		
15	Perform Unit Maintenance Operations		
16	Move to an AAR Site and Conduct an AAR		
17	ENDEX		

- a. Identify the missions to be evaluated for each echelon from Figure 2-2. Record the selected missions on DA Form 7506 (Unit Proficiency/Evaluation Worksheet).
- b. List each mission on a separate DA Form 7502 (Task Summary Sheet).
- c. Select the tasks for the evaluation of every mission. List the selected tasks on the task summary sheet, which is used for recording the results of the evaluation.
- d. Compile the selected tasks in the order that they logically occur in the detailed scenario as shown in the sample in Table 6-1. Group the selected tasks in parts for continuous operations. The parts can be interrupted at logical points to assess the MILES casualties and to conduct in-process AARs.

6-3. Resourcing and Planning. Adequate training ammunition, equipment, and supplies must be forecasted and requisitioned. Table 4-3 is a consolidated list of the support requirements for this sample evaluation. It is based on experience with the scenario in Table 6-1. The evaluating HQ must prepare its own consolidated support requirements.

6-4. Selecting and Training Observers/Controllers. A successful evaluation depends heavily on selecting O/Cs with the proper experience, training them to fulfill their responsibilities, and supervising them throughout the evaluation.

a. The following are minimum rank and experience requirements for O/Cs:

- The company O/C will be an officer with company command experience.
- Platoon or section O/Cs will be a lieutenant or an NCO with platoon or section experience.
- The recorder will be an officer or an NCO at the evaluation control HQ who receives "kill" information or results and time data from the O/Cs.

b. The O/Cs must have a thorough knowledge of the unit mission, organization, equipment, and doctrine. They must understand the overall operation of the unit and how it is integrated into and supports the force protection operations. Team members must have a working knowledge of the common individual and collective tasks in areas such as local-defense convoy procedures, communications, and NBC operations. One member of the team must have detailed expertise in NBC and local-defense common task areas. The O/Cs should be equal in grade to the soldier in charge of the element they are evaluating and should have previous experience in the position being evaluated. All team members must be able to make objective evaluations, function effectively as team members, and state their findings in reports and briefings.

c. O/C training focuses on providing O/Cs with a general understanding of the overall evaluation and providing each O/C with a detailed understanding of specific duties and responsibilities and building a spirit of teamwork. The O/C training includes—

- (1) The overall evaluation design, general scenario, master events list, and specific evaluation purposes and objectives.
- (2) The unit METL and its linkage to the T&EOs and other materials contained in this MTP.
- (3) The O/C team composition and general duties and responsibilities of each team member.
- (4) The detailed responsibilities of individual team members with special emphasis on the master events list items that are their responsibility. These include—
  - A review of written instructions and materials contained in O/C folders.
  - A detailed reconnaissance of the area used for the evaluation.
  - The O/C communications and command and control (C2) systems.
  - Safety procedures.
  - Evaluation data collection OPLAN and procedures.
  - AAR procedures and techniques.

(5) A talk-through of the entire evaluation. This includes war-gaming all items of the master events list in order of occurrence and reviewing each team member's responsibilities and anticipated problems.

d. The senior O/C supervises the operation of the team. He provides the team leadership, focuses his efforts on ensuring that the O/Cs fulfill their responsibilities and adhere to the evaluation plan, resolves problems, synchronizes the efforts of the team members, ensures close coordination among team members, holds periodic team coordination meetings, plans and orchestrates the unit AAR, and conducts specific evaluation team AARs.

6-5. Selecting and Training Opposing Forces. The OPFOR support for an external evaluation of the unit is limited to two squads of dismounted infantry and two to five individuals who serve as enemy agents. Although OPFOR support is only used for some tasks, proper training and employment of this force is important to ensure a proper assessment of the unit capabilities.

a. The OPFOR commander should be a company grade officer or senior NCO who is well-trained in OPFOR tactics and operations. In addition to the duties and responsibilities in leading various OPFOR elements, the OPFOR commander serves as a part-time member of the O/C team. In order to fulfill O/C responsibilities, the OPFOR commander must participate in O/C planning and training activities and must be present during AARs.

b. OPFOR elements are trained, organized, and equipped to operate in a manner that depicts threat forces as realistically as possible. The training includes—

- Threat tactics and rules of engagement.
- OPFOR missions and responsibilities.
- OPFOR tasks and standards.
- Threat weapons and equipment, if available.
- C2.
- Safety.

6-6. Conducting the Evaluation. The senior O/C has overall responsibility for conducting the evaluation. He orchestrates the overall evaluation and the support provided by the various individuals and elements that are specially selected and trained to fulfill designated functions and responsibilities. O/Cs must be free to observe, report, and record the actions of the unit.

a. The HQ two echelons above the unit being evaluated should select and train the control element for the evaluation. They issue orders, receive reports, provide feeder information, and control the OPFOR.

b. All exercise participants and supporting personnel must ensure that every facet of the evaluation is conducted in a safe manner. Personnel observing unsafe conditions must take prompt action to halt them and advise their superiors of the situation.

6-7. Recording External Evaluation Information. The senior O/C is responsible for implementing the evaluation scoring system. Although the final evaluation is developed by the senior O/C, the full team participates in this process. Their reports reflect the overall ability of the combat engineer unit to accomplish its wartime missions.

a. The evaluation scoring system is based on an evaluation of the unit performance of each mission-essential task and any other collective task contained in the overall evaluation plan. Use the following four steps for the evaluation:

**Step 1.** Identify the MTP T&EOs that correspond to each of the evaluation plan tasks.

**Step 2.** Use T&EO standards to evaluate the unit performance of the tasks. Do this for each evaluation-plan task.

**Step 3.** Record on the T&EO a GO for each performance measure performed to standard and a NO-GO for each performance measure not performed to standard.

**Step 4.** Record the overall unit capability to perform the task by using the GO/NO-GO information recorded on each T&EO. Use the following definitions as guidance in making this determination:

- **GO.** The unit successfully accomplished the task or performance measure to standard.
- **NO-GO.** The unit did not accomplish the task or performance measure to standard.

b. Use DA Forms 7503 (Environmental Data Sheet), 7504 (Personnel and Equipment Loss Report), and 7505 (Unit Data Sheet) to collect the evaluation information. These reports assist the team in recording the information concerning the unit capability to perform its wartime mission according to the established standards. This information will assist the senior O/C to determine the final overall unit rating.

(1) DA Form 7503 is used to record information concerning weather and terrain conditions present during the evaluation period.

(2) DA Form 7504 is used to record information concerning the element personnel and equipment losses during OPFOR engagements.

(3) DA Form 7505 is used to record personnel and equipment status.

6-8. Preparing After-Action Reviews. AARs provide direct feedback to unit members by involving them in the diagnosis process and by enabling them to discover for themselves what happened during the evaluation. In this way, participants identify errors and seek solutions that increase the value of the training and reinforce learning.

a. The senior O/C is responsible for the AAR process. He coordinates the entire AAR program from the initial planning of the evaluation through the after-action phases.

b. Key steps in the AAR process are—

(1) **Planning.** Planning for AARs is initiated in the exercise preparation activities long before the start of the action evaluation. AARs are integrated into the general scenario at logical break points and into the detailed evaluation scenario that is developed subsequently. Qualified O/Cs are selected and trained in the AAR process as part of O/C training. This phase also includes the identification of potential AAR sites and the requisition of equipment and supplies needed to conduct the AAR.

(2) **Preparation.** AAR preparation starts with the beginning of the actual evaluation. In addition to observing the unit performing its critical tasks, this phase includes the review of the training objectives, orders, and doctrine. Final AAR site selection is completed and times and attendance are established. AAR information is gathered from applicable O/Cs and unit personnel. The AAR is organized and rehearsed.



(3) Conduct. AARs are conducted at logical breakpoints in the exercise and at the end of the evaluation. When AAR participants have assembled, the AAR begins with the senior O/C introducing the session with a statement of the AAR purpose, the establishment of the AAR ground rules and procedures, and a restatement of the training and evaluation objectives. A successful AAR follows these guidelines:

- (a) AARs are not critiques but professional discussions of training events.
- (b) The senior O/C guides the discussion in a manner to ensure that participants openly discuss the lessons.
- (c) Dialogue is encouraged among O/Cs and unit personnel.
- (d) All individuals who participated in the evaluation should be present for the AAR. As a minimum, every unit or element that participates in the exercise is represented.
- (e) Participants discuss not only what happened, but also why it happened and how it could have been done better.
- (f) Participants review the sequence of events associated with hazards and the risk assessment made before the exercise. As a minimum, the review should address hazards that presented themselves (but were not identified) and each incident of fratricide or near fratricide and how it could be avoided in the future.
- (g) Events not directly related to major events are not examined.
- (h) Participants do not offer self-serving excuses for inappropriate actions.
- (i) The AAR end result is that soldiers and leaders, through discovery learning, gain a better understanding of their individual and collective strengths and weaknesses and become more proficient in training for and performing their critical tasks.

**NOTE: Reference materials for conducting an AAR are Training Circulars (TCs) 25-6 and 25-20 and FM 7-1.**

**This page intentionally left blank.**

**APPENDIX A - SAMPLE OPERATION ORDER**

For use of the OPORD, refer to the exercise outlined in Chapter 4 and to Figure A-1.

<b>OPERATION ORDER</b>	
(classification) FOR TRAINING PURPOSES ONLY	
Operation Order _____ 20_____	Copy ___ of ___ copies
Task Organization:	
1. SITUATION.	
<p>a. Enemy Forces. Contact with the enemy has been broken. The enemy has withdrawn deep to the rear. It is being reinforced and is preparing to counterattack within 24 hours. The enemy is expected to use nonpersistent nerve agents. Enemy air is expected to be active in the area. The latest intelligence summary (INTSUM) indicates that the enemy may have a company-size strong point in the brigade sector. Enemy units occupying the combat outpost are half strength. Counterattacking forces are expected to be full strength.</p>	
<p>b. Friendly Forces. 5th Division attacks to secure Objective Richmond and then assists passage of the exploitation force (24th Division). This operation will rapidly penetrate the main defensive belt to draw the 10th Independent Tank Regiment (ITR) south and fix it in a zone.</p>	
<p>(1) Missions of units on left and right flanks, as required.</p>	
<p>(2) Supporting engineer unit missions, as required.</p>	
<p>(3) Supporting fires. 4th Battalion is in direct support.</p>	
2. MISSION. The 25th Brigade conducts a passage of lines and attacks to secure Objective Richmond. On order, the 25th Brigade continues movement forward of Phase Line (PL) Green.	
3. EXECUTION.	
<p>a. Concept of the Operation. See the overlay developed by the trainer.</p>	
<p>(1) Maneuver. The 25th Brigade departs AA NK 243567 and conducts a passage of lines through the elements of 3rd Division. It conducts a penetration with two task forces (TFs), with one TF following as the brigade reserve. TF A will be the main effort and attack along Axis Oak. TF B attacks along Axis Pine and is the supporting attack. On order, TF C (trailing along Axis Oak) becomes the main effort and continues the attack to Objective Richmond. The intent is to gain contact with the enemy and locate and fix the main body of the enemy so that the division can conduct envelopments to destroy it. It is necessary to destroy enemy combat outposts. We must quickly reorganize and continue movement until we find the main body. The TF that makes initial contact will attempt to fight through and destroy the enemy. If they cannot, they will provide a base of fire for maneuver by the remainder of the brigade. Movement will continue to PL Green if no contact is gained and past PL Green on order.</p>	
<p>(2) Fire support. The priority of fires is to TF A initially and to the TF in contact once contact is made.</p>	

**Figure A-1. Sample OPORD**

- (3) Mines, obstacles, and fortifications. Critical check points and identified obstacles shown on the obstacles overlay.
- b. Subunit missions, as required.
- c. Engineer. The priority of support is to the two lead TFs. On order, conduct breaching operations in support of the TF in contact. Be prepared to support a hasty defense on order.
- d. Coordinating instructions.
  - (1) Report all enemy contact.
  - (2) Report all enemy obstacles.
  - (3) Report the crossing of PLs.
  - (4) Additional information, as required.
- 4. SERVICE AND SUPPORT. Per the division SOP.
- 5. COMMAND AND SIGNAL.
  - a. Command.
  - b. Signal.
    - (1) Current signal operation instructions (SOI).
    - (2) Radio-listening silence until initial contact with the enemy.

**Figure A-1. Sample OPORD (continued)**

## APPENDIX B - THREAT ANALYSIS

B-1. The US will remain globally engaged in the future, and US forces will be called upon to execute missions across the full spectrum of warfare. This may involve peacekeeping and peace enforcement in stability operations and support operations (SOSO) to small-scale contingencies (SSCs) to major contingency operations (MCOs). In some instances, these operations may be conducted simultaneously and within the same theater of operations. Many crises will start regionally, but due to an increasingly globally interconnected economy and greater access to new, evolutionary and revolutionary technologies could rapidly and unexpectedly expand to much more significant proportions unless they are quickly contained and resolved. To succeed, future US forces will have to face information operations (IO), likely terrorist attacks, sophisticated ambushes, and a threat that strikes in unconventional and unexpected ways. These forces will have to deal with the key and complex variables of the operational environment, must be prepared to address a full spectrum of military threats, and may encounter enemy methods of operation that focus on opportunity and asymmetrical end states.

B-2. The most likely operational environments in which US forces may operate will involve short-notice, early-entry operations against increasingly sophisticated opponents who are studying US operations and adapting. To respond to these threats, US forces will deploy and consist of a campaign-quality, modular force with a joint and expeditionary mind-set that is able to adapt to unforeseen circumstances which will occur in the future. Additionally, the uncertainty as to where US forces will deploy, the probability of a very austere operational environment, and the requirement to fight on arrival throughout the battlespace, pose an entirely different requirement—the fundamental distinction of expeditionary operations.

B-3. These operations may involve more than one country, combatant, or type of combatant. Transnational and nonstate elements, including corporations, terrorist organizations, religious movements, and organized crime, will increasingly complicate US operations. Criminal organizations, drug traffickers, and terrorist groups will expand their global reach, often in cooperation with states and other transnational groups that are seeking to achieve greater effect from their limited capabilities. Emerging cultural, religious, ethnic, political, and economic realities can complicate the future operational environment. Situations will be more unpredictable and extremely fluid, and the range of operational settings more complex.

B-4. US forces may operate in all operational environments and terrain sets—urban becoming more likely. Potential enemies will exploit social, cultural, ethnic, religious, and economic diversities and terrain, weather, and their core capabilities in either a conventional or asymmetric manner to obtain a tactical advantage to offset US technological and range advantages. Operations in complex terrain (difficult movement/maneuver, reduced range/visibility, and ease of threat concealment) and urban environments alter the conventional nature of combat. Even as technology advances, weather will continue to have a significant impact on operations, degrading the ability to employ manned and unmanned air platforms, often for long periods of time. Similarly, soldiers may have to contend with the effects of high altitudes, cold or hot temperatures, or humidity, all which degrade performance.

B-5. The operational environment will play an increasingly important role in the employment of US forces. This environment will likely encompass complex terrain—deserts, rolling woodlands, jungles, and urban areas comprised of subterranean infrastructure, shantytowns, and skyscraper canyons. The infrastructure in likely areas of conflict will be generally austere, directly affecting US means to respond with military forces or humanitarian aid.

B-6. Communications networks will often be poorly or incompletely developed, medical care will be lacking and disease endemic, and roads and bridges may not support military operations without considerable engineering effort. Additionally, the enemy may use the media in IO against US forces. This may involve attempts at eroding host nation or world public opinion by questioning the effectiveness of US forces deployed in their country. Depending on the effectiveness of the IO, US forces may experience a sway in the host nation opinion in favor of enemy forces.

B-7. US forces can expect to operate in intermixed populations of combatants and noncombatants. While conducting operations within this environment, US forces may be required to prevent harassment attacks against civilian populations and nonplatform assets. Cultural and ethnic fighting may require US forces to prevent attacks on religious sites, government and public buildings, and the host nation petroleum, water, or electrical supply stations.

B-8. Initial operational tempo will be important to the threat to achieve objectives and set conditions for entry denial operations to prevent US forces from establishing a foothold in the region. Once US forces arrive in the area of responsibility (AOR), the threat may seek to prolong the conflict and avoid decisive battle to preserve its military capability. It then may change the nature of the conflict by transitioning its tactical/operational forces while continuing with its strategic offensive actions aimed at such critical intangible factors like the will to fight, public support, and our coalition. This is designed to cause the US to lose the will to continue and to terminate the conflict.

B-9. When US forces attain entrance into the area, most operations against the US will be force-oriented (focused at our universally perceived strategic center of gravity—mass US/coalition casualties and the resultant effect on our national resolve). The threat to US forces will include, but are not limited to, small arms and automatic individual/crew-served weapons, antitank (AT) weapons to include AT-guided missiles (ATGMs), medium caliber cannons (20-75 millimeter), handheld high-explosive AT (HEAT) weapons, and landmines. The land mine threat will include conventional AT mines, antipersonnel (AP) landmines, AT/AP scatterable mines, off-route/side-attack mines, top-attack/wide area munitions, improvised explosive devices (IEDs), booby traps, explosive obstacles, and UXO.

B-10. The enemy will conduct well-planned and sophisticated ambushes. Intelligence, surveillance, and reconnaissance (ISR) and attack structures will be formed to destroy dominant combat systems or to achieve mass casualties—not always linked to maneuver or ground objectives.

B-11. Adversary C2 systems will use a mix of available communication infrastructure, tactical military communications, and off-the-shelf technology. Even with these communication means the adversary will sacrifice some degree of synchronization to conduct dispersed attacks.

B-12. Adversaries will seek cover and concealment in complex terrain and urban environments to offset the US operating advantage of standoff and to negate technological overmatch. Mechanized and armored units will be widely dispersed, forming and conducting dispersed operations as opportunities present themselves or are created. Threat maneuver will occur during periods of reduced exposure to US ISR technologies. Extensive internal and external attacks against IO and systems will be conducted as a component of the threat strategic offensive. There will be significant threat capability upgrades to support camouflage, concealment, and deception at all echelons and throughout all BOSs. Use of commercial, space-based ISR systems by threat forces will support precision targeting and increased situational awareness. The threat will use terrorism to deny sanctuary and disrupt force projection operations.

B-13. Threat nations maintain the capability to conduct more traditional military operations and will do so when an operational advantage is perceived. US forces will rarely face an enemy who is predictably echeloned in depth and attempts defeat with actions based purely on mass and momentum.

B-14. Within the complexities of this environment, adversaries will attempt to force units into rapid and continuous transitions between types of tactical operations to create windows of vulnerability. Noncontiguous enemy actions within the tactical battlespace will force rapid changes in organization for combat. The enemy will be difficult to template as it adapts and attempts to create conditions for which US forces are not properly prepared for either in organization or planning. Battle will be more or less continuous. Future enemies will probably have somewhat less advanced systems; systems that US forces discounted because of range limitations or age. In complex terrain and urban settings, these systems (such as mortars and rocket-propelled grenades [RPGs]) will again find effective uses and become factors to contend with.

B-15. Over the past several decades, antagonist forces have increasingly learned to rely on tactics, techniques, and procedures (TTPs) that circumvent or undermine opponent strengths while exploiting its weaknesses—methods that differ significantly from the expected method of operations. Such an approach, commonly referred to as "asymmetric," not only relies on an appreciation of the adversary vulnerabilities, but also takes into account the full range of the party social, political, and material resources. In particular, an asymmetric approach seeks to exploit the so-called "home-field advantage" by using the indigenous population and its environment against the enemy—hence the term indigenous asymmetric threat. Characteristically, asymmetric combatants will exploit complex terrain, particularly highly populated urban terrain, for concealment and geospatial and political advantage, exploiting the indigenous environment and its inhabitants for surprise, escape routes, and shielding, while also negating a conventionally oriented adversary strength in numbers, equipment, and firepower. Frequently employing innovative, nontraditional procedures and weapons, asymmetric opponents generally seek a major psychological impact, such as shock or confusion, and always look for results disproportionate to the effort invested. Always presume that an indigenous opponent would consistently use the US restrictive rules of engagement against the US.

**NOTE: This projected threat environment is based on the Capstone System Threat Assessment Report (STAR) for the Future Combat System (U), dated 24 January 2003. This STAR was approved by HQ, DA on 24 January 2003 and validated by the Defense Intelligence Agency (DIA) on 24 January 2003 and the Future Engineer Force White Paper, Version 1.8, 24 February 2004.**

**This page intentionally left blank.**



**APPENDIX C - METRIC CONVERSION CHART**

This appendix complies with current Army directives, which state that the metric system will be incorporated into all new publications. Table C-1 is a metric conversion chart.

**Table C-1. Metric Conversion Chart**

<b>US Units</b>	<b>Multiplied By</b>	<b>Equals Metric Units</b>
<b>Length</b>		
Feet	0.30480	Meters
Inches	2.54000	Centimeters
Inches	0.02540	Meters
Inches	25.40010	Millimeters
Miles (statute)	1.60930	Kilometers
Miles per hour	0.04470	Meters per second
Yards	0.91400	Meters
<b>Volume</b>		
Cubic feet	0.02830	Cubic meters
Cubic yards	0.76460	Cubic meters
<b>Weight</b>		
Pounds	453.59000	Grams
Pounds	0.45359	Kilograms
<b>Metric Units</b>	<b>Multiplied By</b>	<b>Equals US Units</b>
<b>Length</b>		
Centimeters	0.39370	Inches
Meters per second	2.23700	Miles per hour
Millimeters	0.03937	Inches
Kilometers	0.62137	Miles (statute)
Meters	3.28080	Feet
Meters	39.37000	Inches
Meters	1.09360	Yards
<b>Volume</b>		
Cubic meters	35.31440	Cubic feet
Cubic meters	1.30790	Cubic yards
<b>Weight</b>		
Kilograms	2.20460	Pounds

**This page intentionally left blank.**

**GLOSSARY****1SG**

first sergeant

**5 Ss and T**

search, silence, segregate, speed, safeguard, and tag

**AA**

avenue of approach; assembly area; antiaircraft; anchor assembly

**AAR**

after-action review; after-action report

**ABCS**

Army Battle Command System

**ACE**

ammunition, casualties, and equipment; air combat element (NATO); analysis and control element; aviation combat element (USMC); armored combat earthmover

**ADA**

air defense artillery

**ADC**

area damage control

**AFJI**

Air Force Joint Instruction

**AFJPAM**

Air Force joint pamphlet

**AFPAM**

Air Force pamphlet

**AFTTP**

Air Force technical training publication

**AHD**

antihandling device

**AKO**

Army Knowledge Online

**AN/PSS-12**

hand-held, portable mine-detecting set

**AO**

area of operations

**AOR**

area of responsibility

**AP**  
antipersonnel

**APC**  
armored personnel carrier

**APOBS**  
Antipersonnel Obstacle-Breaching System

**AR**  
Army regulation

**ARTEP**  
Army Training and Evaluation Program

**ASAS**  
All-Source Analysis System

**AT**  
antiterrorism; antitank

**ATGM**  
antitank guided missile

**ATTN**  
attention

**ATWESS**  
antitank weapon effects signature simulator; Antitank Weapon Effects Simulator System

**AVLB**  
armored-vehicle-launched bridge

**BCT**  
basic combat training; brigade combat team; battle coordination team

**BF**  
battle fatigue; board feet

**BFV**  
Bradley fighting vehicle

**BIT**  
built-in test

**BOM**  
bill of materials

**BOMREP**  
bombing report

**BOS**  
battlefield operating system

**BP**  
battle position; building pedestal (single story only); baseplate (single story and double story)

<b>C2</b>	command and control
<b>C4</b>	composition C4; military plastic explosive
<b>CAS</b>	casualty; close air support
<b>CATS</b>	combined arms training strategy
<b>CCD</b>	command and control data
<b>CCIR</b>	commander's critical-information requirement
<b>CCT</b>	combat-control team
<b>CDM</b>	chemical downwind message
<b>CFZ</b>	critical friendly zone
<b>CHS</b>	combat health support
<b>CMD</b>	command; cruise missile defense
<b>COA</b>	course of action
<b>COMSEC</b>	communications security
<b>CONEX</b>	container express
<b>COP</b>	common operational picture
<b>CP</b>	command post; checkpoint
<b>CS</b>	combat support; Costa Rica; o-chlorobenzylidene malononitrile
<b>CSS</b>	combat service support

- DA**  
Department of the Army
- DC**  
Dental Corps; District of Columbia; direct current
- DCU**  
dispenser control unit; digital control unit
- DD**  
Department of Defense
- DEUCE**  
deployable universal combat earthmover
- DIA**  
Defense Intelligence Agency; diameter
- DRS**  
direct religious support; Digital Reconnaissance System
- DTG**  
date-time group
- DTSS**  
Digital Topographic Support System
- DZ**  
drop zone
- DZST**  
drop zone support team
- EA**  
each; engagement area; environmental assessment
- EBA**  
engineer battlefield assessment
- ECCM**  
electronic countercountermeasures
- ECM**  
electronic countermeasures
- EEFI**  
essential elements of friendly information
- ENDEX**  
end of exercise
- engr**  
engineer
- EOD**  
explosive ordnance disposal

<b>EPM</b>	external power module; electronic protection measure
<b>EPW</b>	enemy prisoner of war
<b>ERF</b>	electronic remote fill
<b>EW</b>	electronic warfare
<b>FBCB2</b>	Force XXI Battle Command Brigade and Below
<b>FCS</b>	Future Combat System
<b>FCTN</b>	function
<b>FEC</b>	fires and effects coordinator
<b>FFIR</b>	friendly force information requirements
<b>FH</b>	field hospital; frequency hopping
<b>FIST</b>	fire support team
<b>FLOT</b>	forward line of own troops
<b>FM</b>	field manual; frequency modulated; frequency modulation
<b>FMFM</b>	fleet Marine force manual
<b>FO</b>	forward observer
<b>FPF</b>	final protective fire
<b>FPL</b>	final protective line
<b>FRAGO</b>	fragmentary order

<b>FS</b>	fire support; foresight; Fort Sill
<b>FST</b>	field sanitation team; fire support team
<b>FTX</b>	field training exercise
<b>GRREG</b>	graves registration
<b>HE</b>	high explosive
<b>HEAT</b>	high-explosive antitank
<b>HMEE</b>	high-mobility engineer excavator
<b>HN</b>	host nation
<b>HQ</b>	headquarters
<b>HTTP</b>	hypertext transfer protocol
<b>IAW</b>	in accordance with
<b>ICOM</b>	imbedded communications; Intercommunications System; integrated communications security
<b>ID</b>	identification; infantry division; inside diameter
<b>IED</b>	imitative electronic deception; improvised explosive device
<b>incl</b>	inclosure; including
<b>INTSUM</b>	intelligence summary
<b>IO</b>	information objectives; information operations; intelligence oversight; international organization
<b>IPB</b>	intelligence preparation of the battlefield; intelligence preparation of the battlespace
<b>IR</b>	infrared; intelligence requirements



**ISR**  
Individual School Requirement; Individual Soldier's Record; intelligence, surveillance, and reconnaissance

**ITR**  
independent tank regiment

**KIA**  
killed in action

**LCE**  
load-carrying equipment

**LD**  
line of departure

**LNE**  
late net entry

**LOGPAC**  
logistics package; logistical package

**LRA**  
local reproduction authorized

**LZ**  
landing zone

**man**  
manual

**MANSCEN**  
Maneuver Support Center

**MBT**  
main battle tank

**MCB**  
mine-clearing blade

**MCO**  
movement-control office; major contingency operations; Marine Corps order

**MCR**  
mine-clearing roller

**MCRP**  
Marine Corps reference publication

**MCWP**  
Marine Corp warfighting publication

**MDI**  
modernized demolition initiator

**MEDEVAC**

medical evacuation

**METL**

mission-essential task list

**METT-TC**

mission, enemy, terrain, troops, time available, and civilian considerations

**MHE**

materials-handling equipment

**MICLIC**

mine-clearing line charge

**MIJI**

meaconing, intrusion, jamming, and interference

**mil**

military

**MILES**

Multiple Integrated Laser Engagement System

**MLC**

military load classification; military load class

**mm**

millimeter(s)

**MO**

Missouri; monthly

**MOPMS**

Modular-Pack Mine System

**MOPP**

mission-oriented protective posture

**MOPP2**

mission-oriented protective posture Level 2 (mask carried/worn, protective suit and boots worn, and gloves carried)

**MOPP4**

mission-oriented protective posture Level 4 (mask, protective suit, boots, and gloves worn)

**MORTREP**

mortar bombing report

**MOS**

military occupational specialty; minimum operating strip

**MP**

military police

- MRC**  
major regional conflict/contingency; motorized rifle company
- MRL**  
multiple rocket launcher
- MSD**  
minimum safe distance; movement support detachment
- MSR**  
main supply route
- MSRT**  
mobile subscriber radiotelephone terminal
- MTF**  
medical-treatment facility
- MTOE**  
modified table(s) of organization and equipment; modification table of organization and equipment
- MTP**  
mission training plan; MOS training plan
- NAI**  
named area of interest
- NATO**  
North Atlantic Treaty Organization
- NBC**  
nuclear, biological, and chemical
- NBC 1 Report**  
Observer's Initial Report. This report is used by the observing unit to give basic, initial, and follow-up data about an NBC attack. This report is sent by platoons and companies to the battalion headquarters or by designated observers to the division NBC Center (NBCC).
- NBC 4 Report**  
Monitoring and Survey Report. This report is used to report NBC hazards detected by a unit through monitoring, survey, or reconnaissance. This report is prepared and submitted by company-level organizations.
- NBC 5 Report**  
Actual Contaminated Areas Report. Once the NBC reports are posted on the situation map, the division prepares an NBC 5 report showing the contaminated area. The preferred method of dissemination is by overlay.
- NBCC**  
Nuclear, Biological, and Chemical Center
- NCI**  
net control interface
- NCO**  
noncommissioned officer

**NCOIC**

noncommissioned officer in charge

**NCS**

net control station

**NET**

new equipment training; net exposure time

**NLT**

not later than

**No**

number

**non-ICOM**

nonintegrated communications security

**NRI**

net radio interface

**NSN**

national stock number

**NTTP**

Navy Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures

**NVD**

night vision device

**NWP**

Navel warfare publication

**O/C**

observer/controller

**OAKOC**

observation and fields of fire, avenues of approach, key terrain, obstacles and movement, and cover and concealment

**OBJ**

objective

**OBSTINTEL**

obstacle intelligence

**OEG**

operation exposure guide; operational-exposure guidance

**OIC**

officer in charge

**OP**

observation post; operational procedure

**OPCON**

operational control

**OPFOR**

opposing forces

**OPLAN**

operation plan

**OPNAVINST**

Chief of Naval Operations Instruction

**OPORD**

operations order

**OPSEC**

operations security

**ORP**

objective rally point; electronic protection measures

**P**

needs practice; pass; passed; barometric pressure; mean radius of curvature

**pam**

pamphlet

**parapet**

A wall, rampart, or elevation of earth or stone to protect soldiers.

**PCC**

precombat check

**PCI**

photo coverage indexes; precombat inspection

**PDDE**

power-driven decontamination equipment

**PDF**

principle direction of fire

**PIR**

priority intelligence requirements

**PL**

phase line; plastic limit; Poland

**PMCS**

preventive-maintenance checks and services

**POL**

petroleum, oils, and lubricants

**POS/NAV**

position/navigation

**PSG**

platoon sergeant

**PSR**

personnel status report

**PVNTMED**

preventive medicine

**PZ**

pickup zone

**R&S**

reconnaissance and security; reconnaissance and surveillance

**RATELO**

radiotelephone operator

**RC**

rapid cure; Reserve Component

**RCU**

remote-control unit

**release point**

A well-defined point on a route at which the elements composing a column return under the authority of their respective commanders. Each element continues its movement toward its own appropriate destination.

**RES**

radiation exposure status

**RFL**

restrictive-fire line

**ROE**

rules of engagement

**ROI**

rules of interaction

**RP**

release point; rally point; reference point

**RPG**

rocket-propelled grenade

**RT**

radius of target; receiver/transmitter

**RTS**

remote transfer switch

**RXMT**

retransmit

- S1**  
Adjutant (US Army)
- S2**  
Intelligence Officer (US Army)
- S3**  
Operations and Training Officer (US Army)
- S4**  
Supply Officer (US Army)
- SA**  
semiannually; situational awareness
- SALUTE**  
size, activity, location, unit, time, and equipment
- SANDI**  
stop, assess, note, draw back, and inform
- SATRAN**  
satellite transmission
- SAW**  
squad automatic weapon
- SB**  
supply bulletin; switchboard
- SBF**  
support by fire
- SCATMINE**  
scatterable mine
- SCATMINREC**  
scatterable-minefield record
- SCATMINWARN**  
scatterable-minefield warning
- SCPE**  
simplified collective-protection equipment
- SEE**  
small-emplacement excavator
- SHELREP**  
shelling report
- SHORAD**  
shore-range air defense

**SHTU**

simplified handheld terminal unit

**SIG**

signal

**SINCGARS**

Single-Channel, Ground and Airborne Radio System

**SITMAP**

situation map

**SITREP**

situation report

**situation report (SITREP)**

A report giving the situation in the area of the reporting unit or formation.

**SM**

soldier's manual

**SOEO**

scheme of engineer operations

**SOFA**

Status of Forces Agreement

**SOI**

signal operation instructions

**SOP**

standing operating procedure

**SOSO**

stability operations and support operations

**SP**

start point

**SPOTREP**

spot report

**SSC**

small-scale contingency; surveillance support center

**SSI**

standing signal instructions; signal supplemental instructions

**SSN**

social security number

**STANAG**

Standardization Agreement



**STAR**

scheduled theater airlift route; sensitive target approval and review; standard attribute reference; standard terminal arrival route; surface-to-air recovery; system threat assessment report

**STB**

supertropical bleach

**STP**

soldier training publication

**STRAC**

Standards in Training Commission

**STX**

situational training exercise

**T**

trained; slab thickness; deck thickness; crown thickness; geodetic azimuth; grid azimuth; slope distance; telescope above station; time; tracked

**T&EO**

training and evaluation outline

**TACAIR**

tactical air

**TACSOP**

tactical standing operating procedure

**TAI**

targeted area of interest; tactical area of interest

**TC**

technical coordinator; training circular; track commander; tank commander

**TEK**

traffic encryption key

**TEWT**

tactical exercise without troops

**TF**

task force; total float

**TG**

trainer's guide

**TM**

team; technical manual; trademark

**TNT**

trinitrotoluene

**TOC**

tactical operations center

**TOE**

table(s) of organization and equipment

**TRADOC**

United States Army Training and Doctrine Command

**TRP**

target reference point; traffic regulation plan

**TRS**

tactical reconnaissance squadron

**TSEC**

transmission security

**TSK**

transmission security key

**TSOP**

tactical standing operating procedure

**TTP**

tactics, techniques, and procedures

**U**

unclassified; up; untrained; unlocked

**UAV**

unmanned aerial vehicle

**US**

United States

**USMC**

United States Marine Corps

**USMTF**

United States message text format

**UXO**

unexploded ordnance

**Vol**

Volume

**w/**

with

**WAM**

wide-area munition; wide area mine

**WCS**

weapon control status; weapon control station

**WLGH**

weapon-launched grappling hook

**WO**

warrant officer; warning order

**WWW**

world wide web

**XO**

executive officer

**This page intentionally left blank.**

## REFERENCES

### Required Publications

Required publications are sources that users must read in order to understand or to comply with this publication.

#### Army Regulations

AR 190-8	Enemy Prisoners of War, Retained Personnel, Civilian Internees, and Other Detainees. OPNAVINST 3461.6; AFJI 31-304; MCO 3461.1. 1 October 1997
AR 200-1	Environmental Protection and Enhancement. 21 February 1997
AR 380-5	Department of the Army Information Security Program. 29 September 2000
AR 385-10	The Army Safety Program. 29 February 2000
AR 40-5	Preventive Medicine. 15 October 1990
AR 530-1	Operations Security (OPSEC). 3 March 1995

#### Army Training and Evaluation Program

ARTEP 5-026-34-MTP	Mission Training Plan for the Headquarters Company, Engineer Combat Battalion (Light). 22 January 2005
ARTEP 5-027-10-MTP	Mission Training Plan for the Engineer Platoon, Engineer Company, Engineer Combat Battalion (Light) (revised, to be published within 6 months).
ARTEP 5-027-35-MTP	Mission Training Plan for the Engineer Company, Engineer Combat Battalion (Light) (revised, to be published within 6 months).
ARTEP 5-500-68-MTP	Mission Training Plan for the Engineer Staff (revised, to be published within 6 months).
ARTEP 5-DRILL	Engineer Drills. 29 November 2004
ARTEP 7-8-DRILL	Battle Drills for the Infantry Rifle Platoon and Squad. 25 June 2002

#### Department of Army Forms

DA FORM 1155	Witness Statement on Individual
DA FORM 1156	Casualty Feeder Report
DA FORM 1248	Road Reconnaissance Report
DA FORM 1249	Bridge Reconnaissance Report
DA FORM 1250	Tunnel Reconnaissance Report
DA FORM 1251	Ford Reconnaissance Report
DA FORM 1252	Ferry Reconnaissance Report
DA FORM 1355	Minefield Record
DA FORM 1355-1-R	Hasty Protective Row Minefield Record (LRA)
DA FORM 1711-R	Engineer Reconnaissance Report
DA FORM 2028	Recommended Changes to Publications and Blank Forms
DA FORM 2203-R	Demolition Reconnaissance Record (LRA)
DA FORM 5517-R	Standard Range Cards (LRA)
DA FORM 7502	Task Summary Sheet
DA FORM 7503	Environmental Data Sheet
DA FORM 7504	Personnel and Equipment Loss Report
DA FORM 7505	Unit Data Sheet
DA FORM 7506	Unit Proficiency/Evaluation Worksheet

DA FORM 7507

ARTEP Mission Training Plan User Feedback

**Department of Defense Publications**

DD FORM 2745

Enemy Prisoner of War (EPW) Capture Tag. 1 May 1996

**Field Manuals**

FM 101-5-2

U.S. Army Report and Message Formats. 29 June 1999

FM 1-02

Operational Terms and Graphics. MCRP 5-12A. 21 September 2004

FM 10-27-1

Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures for Quartermaster General Support Supply Operations. 20 April 1993

FM 10-27-2

Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures for Quartermaster Direct Support Supply and Field Service Operations. 18 June 1991

FM 10-64

Mortuary Affairs Operations. 16 February 1999

FM 12-6

Personnel Doctrine. 9 September 1994

FM 20-3

Camouflage, Concealment, and Decoys. 30 August 1999

FM 20-32

Mine/Countermine Operations. 29 May 1998

FM 21-10

Field Hygiene and Sanitation. 21 June 2000

FM 21-16

Unexploded Ordnance (UXO) Procedures. FMFM 13-8-1. 30 August 1994

FM 21-75

Combat Skills of the Soldier. 3 August 1984

FM 22-51

Leaders' Manual for Combat Stress Control. 29 September 1994

FM 24-1

Signal Support in the Airland Battle. 15 October 1990

FM 24-18

Tactical Single-Channel Radio Communications Techniques. 30 September 1987

FM 24-19

Radio Operator's Handbook. 24 May 1991

FM 24-33

Communications Techniques: Electronic Counter-Countermeasures. 17 July 1990

FM 24-35

Signal Operation Instructions "The SOI." 26 October 1990

FM 3-0

Operations. 14 June 2001

FM 3-100.4

Environmental Considerations in Military Operations. MCRP 4-11B. 15 June 2000

FM 3-11

Multiservice Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures for Nuclear, Biological, and Chemical Defense Operations. MCWP 3-37.1; NWP 3-11; AFTTP (I) 3-2.42. 10 March 2003

FM 3-11.11

Flame, Riot Control Agents and Herbicide Operations. MCRP 3-3.7.2. 19 August 1996

FM 3-11.4

Multiservice Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures for Nuclear, Biological, and Chemical (NBC) Protection. MCWP 3-37.2; NTTP 3-11.27; AFTTP (I) 3-2.46. 2 June 2003

FM 3-19.30

Physical Security (Formerly FM 19-30). 8 January 2001

FM 3-19.40

Military Police Internment/Resettlement Operations (Formerly FM 19-40). 1 August 2001

FM 3-20.98

Reconnaissance Platoon. 2 December 2002

FM 3-21.38

Pathfinder Operations. 1 October 2002

FM 3-21.71

Mechanized Infantry Platoon and Squad (Bradley). 20 August 2002

FM 3-3

Chemical and Biological Contamination Avoidance. FMFM 11-17. 16 November 1992

FM 3-34

Engineer Operations. 2 January 2004

FM 3-34.2

Combined-Arms Breaching Operations. 31 August 2000

FM 3-34.230

Topographic Operations. 3 August 2000

FM 34-2-1 Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures for Reconnaissance and Surveillance and Intelligence Support to Counterreconnaissance. 19 June 1991

FM 34-45 Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures for Electronic Attack. 9 June 2000

FM 34-60 Counterintelligence. 3 October 1995

FM 3-5 NBC Decontamination. MCWP 3-37.3. 28 July 2000

FM 3-50 Smoke Operations. 4 December 1990

FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team (Formerly FM 71-1). 9 December 2002

FM 4-20.41 Aerial Delivery Distribution in the Theater of Operations. 29 August 2003

FM 4-25.12 Unit Field Sanitation Team (FM 21-10-1). 25 January 2002

FM 44-100 US Army Air and Missile Defense Operations. 15 June 2000

FM 44-64 SHORAD Battalion and Battery Operations. 5 June 1997

FM 44-8 Combined Arms for the Air Defense. 1 June 1999

FM 44-80 Visual Aircraft Recognition. 30 September 1996

FM 5-0 Army Planning and Orders Production. 20 January 2005

FM 5-10 Combat Engineer Platoon. 3 October 1995

FM 5-100-15 Corps Engineer Operations. 6 June 1995

FM 5-102 Countermobility. 14 March 1985

FM 5-103 Survivability. 10 June 1985

FM 5-170 Engineer Reconnaissance. 5 May 1998

FM 5-250 Explosives and Demolitions (Reprinted w/Basic Incl C1). 30 July 1998

FM 5-34 Engineer Field Data. 30 August 1999

FM 5-415 Fire-Fighting Operations. 9 February 1999

FM 5-430-00-1 Planning and Design of Roads, Airfields, and Heliports in the Theater of Operations - Road Design. AFPAM 32-8013, VOL 1. 26 August 1994

FM 5-430-00-2 Planning and Design of Roads, Airfields, and Heliports in the Theater of Operations - Airfield and Heliport Design. AFJPAM 32-8013, VOL II. 29 September 1994

FM 5-436 Paving and Surfacing Operations. 28 April 2000

FM 55-30 Army Motor Transport Units and Operations. 27 June 1997

FM 5-71-2 Armored Task-Force Engineer Combat Operations. 28 June 1996

FM 5-71-3 Brigade Engineer Combat Operations (Armored) (Reprinted w/Basic Incl C1). 3 October 1995

FM 7-0 Training the Force. 22 October 2002

FM 7-1 Battle Focused Training. 15 September 2003

FM 7-10 The Infantry Rifle Company. 14 December 1990

FM 7-7 The Mechanized Infantry Platoon and Squad (APC). 15 March 1985

FM 7-8 Infantry Rifle Platoon and Squad. 22 April 1992

FM 7-92 The Infantry Reconnaissance Platoon and Squad (Airborne, Air Assault, Light Infantry). 23 December 1992

FM 8-10-6 Medical Evacuation in a Theater of Operations, Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures. 14 April 2000

FM 8-51 Combat Stress Control in a Theater of Operations Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures. 29 September 1994

FM 90-13 River Crossing Operations. MCWP 3-17.1. 26 January 1998

FM 90-7 Combined Arms Obstacle Integration. 29 September 1994

**Other Product Types**

STANAG 2036 Land Mine Laying, Marking, Recording and Reporting Procedures. 28 January 1999

STANAG 2123 (ENGR) Obstacle Folder (With Amendments). 30 November 1984

TRADOC PAM 11-9 Blueprint of the Battlefield. 27 April 1990

**Soldier Training Publications**

STP 5-12B1-SM MOS 12B, Combat Engineer, Skill Level 1, Soldier's Manual. 2 December 2002

STP 5-12B24-SM-TG MOS 12B, Combat Engineer, Skill Levels 2/3/4, Soldier's Manual and Trainer's Guide. 28 March 2003

**Technical Manuals**

TM 11-5805-262-12 Operator's and Unit Maintenance Manual for Switchboards, Telephone, Manual, SB-22/PT (NSN 5805-00-257-3602) and SB-22A/PT (580500-715-6171) (Including Tone Signaling Adapter, TA-977/PT [5805-01-040-9653]). 15 June 1990

TM 11-5805-294-12 Operator's and Organizational Maintenance Manual for Manual Telephone Switchboard, SB-993/GT (NSN 5805-00-708-2202). 8 September 1983

TM 750-244-2 Procedures for Destruction of Electronics Materiel to Prevent Enemy Use (Electronics Command). 14 March 1972

TM 750-244-3 Procedures for Destruction of Equipment to Prevent Enemy Use (Mobility Equipment Command). 23 September 1969

TM 750-244-6 Procedures for Destruction of Tank-Automotive Equipment to Prevent Enemy Use (US Army Tank-Automotive Command). 3 October 1972

TM 750-244-7 Procedures for Destruction of Equipment in Federal Supply Classifications 1000, 1005, 1010, 1015, 1020, 1025, 1030, 1055, 1090 and 1095 to Prevent Enemy Use (Reprinted w/Basic Incl C1). 18 June 1970

TM 9-1300-214 Military Explosives (Reprinted w/Basic Incl C1-4). 20 September 1984

TM 9-1345-209-10 Operator's Manual for Modular Pack Mine System (MOPMS) Consisting of Dispenser and Mine, Ground: M131 Control, Remote, Land Mine System: M71 and Dispenser and Mine, Ground, Training: M136 (Reprinted w/Basic Incl C1-3). 31 March 1992

TM 9-1375-213-12 Operator's and Unit Maintenance Manual (Including Repair Parts and Special Tools List): Demolition Materials (Reprinted w/Basic Incl C1-18). 30 March 1973

**Training Circulars**

TC 24-20 Tactical Wire and Cable Techniques. 3 October 1988

TC 25-20 A Leader's Guide to After Action Reviews. 30 September 1993

TC 25-6 Force-on-Force Collective Training Using the Tactical Engagement Simulation Training System. 3 October 1995



### **Related Publications**

Related publications are sources of additional information. They are not required in order to understand this publication.

#### **Army Training and Evaluation Program**

ARTEP 5-337-35-MTP      Mission Training Plan for the Engineer Company, Engineer Battalion (Mechanized) (revised, to be published within 6 months).

**This page intentionally left blank.**

**ARTEP 5-026-11-MTP**  
**17 MAY 2005**

By Order of the Secretary of the Army:

PETER J. SCHOOMAKER  
General, United States Army  
Chief of Staff

Official:



SANDRA R. RILEY  
Administrative Assistant to the  
Secretary of the Army  
0511603

DISTRIBUTION:

*Active Army, Army National Guard, and US Army Reserve:* Not to be distributed. Electronic media only.

